Lesson One

Text: Big Business
Grammar: The Infinitive (contd). Complex Subject.
For-Complexes.

Big Business

Danny was standing on Manhattan Bridge.[1] Suddenly he noticed a still burning cigarette-end on the sidewalk[2] and rushed to save it. A few deep puffs and Danny sent little blue clouds of smoke into the mild air of the early morning.

While enjoying the smoke he thought over his present situation. What's the use of it all, he said to himself; here I am a young man looking for a job of some kind or other—but not the ghost of a chance[3] of getting one.

And I am certainly no fool! I am good at anything, I don't mind what I do—and still—no luck ... I must smoke dog-ends[4] thrown away by others ... Oh boy![5] what does a man do to become a partner of Rockefeller or Vanderbilt?[6] ... I am quite sure they were not very particular about the way in which they made their money—and I shouldn't be either!

... And still, there is only eight dollars and fifty cents in the torn pocket of my trousers. Eight dollars and fifty cents! The devil knows how much longer I shall be able to make both ends meet on eight fifty! A week? A fortnight? A month? Where, for Heaven's sake, could I pick up a job?

Damn it all! Now it is beginning to rain cats and dogs[7] on top of all, and I have a hole in my shoes. A hole? It's holes I have, nothing but holes and no shoes around them ... Where can I hide from the rain? I'll go into the Post Office for a while.

By the time he reached the Post Office he was nearly wet through. Now he stood in the main hall of the post office, watching the people hurrying busily this way and that, and then picked up a letter somebody seemed to have left behind on one of the many writing desks. He read the first few lines, hardly knowing what exactly he was reading; then something struck him. He read again, and this time he gave a low, long whistle of surprise. In no time[8] he was out in the street again, looked stealthily back, and hiding in a doorway started to learn by heart the short note.

"Dear Friend", it said. "Yesterday, shortly before I left I made up my mind to get rid of my old clothes. I am well on my way[9] to San Francisco[10] by now, but I just remembered something terrible.

The night before I left I happened to meet Mr. Burbridge at the Savoy.[11] He

paid off an old debt. He gave me a one thousand dollar bill, and I put it into the inside pocket of the blue worsted suit I was wearing. But I have sold that suit along with the other old things. Do please go at once to Black, the old clothes dealer, at 3, Pineapple Street, Brooklyn,[12] may be he has not resold the suit yet..."

One thousand dollars! whispered Danny, almost beside himself with excitement. That sum might be the making of me ... Damn it, I am going to risk my last eight dollars!

*** * ***

Black & Son, second hand gents' clothiers,[13] had their shop full of customers when Danny entered. Old man Black, his sleeves rolled up, was wiping the sweat off his face, and after giving instructions to his employees who were busy carrying clothes about the shop, hurried towards Danny to serve him.

"What can I do for you, sir?"

"Have you got anything in tweed?" asked Danny with seeming indifference.

"Tweed, sir? Certainly, sir, the very latest ... My assistant will attend to you. John, run and bring the tweed suit we bought from Mr. Rockefeller the other day!"

"Now I come to think of it,"[14] said Danny who seemed to be changing his mind, "I think I would rather have something in worsted."

"Just my own taste, sir! Worsted is always the smartest wear for a gentleman."

"Well—I think I'd like to have something in navy blue—"

"I can let you have a suit like that, sir. Something quite exceptional," exclaimed Mr. Black. "I say, John, leave the tweed, bring the blue worsted one... Yes, the one we have from Mr. Gould—it will be just the right size." And then Mr. Black turned to another customer.

"The blue lounge suit!"[15] cried the attendant to a small boy. "Run, Ralph, be sharp! Get us the navy worsted lounge suit!"

The boy hurried off and a second later Danny was trying on a jacket that hung loosely from his narrow shoulders.

"Fits you like a glove, sir!" exclaimed the attendant in admiration. "A suit made to measure by a first-class tailor couldn't fit you better — "

Carefully and yet stealthily Danny passed his hand over the pockets of the jacket, his heart almost stopped beating, he had to clear his throat. Then he asked for the price, and without bargaining he paid the price of seven and a half dollars, and a quarter of an hour later he sat in Columbus Park[16] with a large parcel in his hands. He couldn't help feeling excited.

Hurriedly he opened the parcel, took out the navy blue jacket in the right inside pocket of which he found a black leather wallet, opened it and began to count the money with shaking hands.

"Eleven thousand three hundred dollars!" he stammered. "Eleven—

thousand—three—hundred—dollars! Danny, old boy, that was big business, indeed!"...

* * *

When Mr. Black closed his shop long after nine p.m., his managing clerk said to him with a satisfied smile:

"Well, sir, that was excellent business again today, wasn't it? ... We are getting rid of all our old things. We are doing very good business in those cheap suits!"

"Fine," said Mr. Black smiling. "Did you manage to write those letters?"

"Certainly, Mr. Black. Five hundred!"

"All right! My son will deal with that. Tomorrow morning he is going to 'lose' them again in the post offices, the subway and in the telephone boxes ... We shall sell out everything in a couple of days. A marvelous idea, those one thousand dollar letters!"

Mr. Black was searching about the shop for something.

"Ralph!" he called, "bring me my jacket!"

"Your jacket, sir?"

"Yes, I hung it here over the chair. The blue jacket!"

"Oh, that one ..," stammered the boy and opened his eyes wide, "that one was sold this afternoon, sir!"

NOTES

1. **Manhattan Bridge:** a bridge across the East River in New York City
2. **sidewalk** *(Am. E):* pavement
3. **not the ghost of a chance:** no chance at all
4. **dog-end** *(sl)*: cigarette-end
5. **Oh boy!** *(sl):* an exclamation of surprise, wonder, etc.
6. **Rockefeller, Vanderbilt:** American capitalists, millionaires
7. **rain cats and dogs** *(colloq):* rain heavily
8. **in no time:** in a very short period of time *(very emphatic)*
9. **I am well on my way to ...:** I have covered the greater part of the distance to ...
10. **San Francisco:** a city on the coast of central California
11. **Savoy:** a fashionable hotel in New York
12. **Brooklyn:** a borough (district) in New York City. The other boroughs are: the Bronx, Manhattan, Queens, Richmond.
13. **Black & Son, second hand gents' clothiers:** магазин фирмы "Блэк и сын" по продаже поношенной мужской одежды
14. **Now I come to think of it:** поразмыслив; *зд.* нет, пожалуй ...
15. **lounge suit:** a suit of clothes of the kind usually worn during the day (contrasted with formal dress, evening dress, etc.) пиджачный костюм
16. **Columbus Park:** a small park in Manhattan.

VOCABULARY

burn (burned, burnt) 1. *vt* жечь, сжигать; обжигать to burn a letter (a house, wood, coal, meat; one's hand, etc.) 2. *vi* гореть, пылать Dry wood burns well. Her face was burning with shame.

rush *vi* спешить, мчаться; бросаться; делать что-л. поспешно He rushed to catch the bus; to rush **into (out of)** the room; to rush **through** a book (one's work, etc.); rush *n* 1. спешка, поспешность to do one's work, etc. in a rush 2. наплыв (пассажиров, заказов и т. п.) a rush of passengers (orders, work, business, etc.) **Phr.** rush hour(s) час(ы) "пик" (час(ы) наплыва пассажиров, покупателей и т. п.) to be caught in the rush hour; Buses are usually overcrowded during rush hours.

save *vt* 1. спасать to save a person (smb's life, one's reputation, a situation, etc.); to save smb **from** ruin (death, etc.) 2. беречь, экономить to save money (time, energy, etc.); It will save you two days if you travel there by air. He saved up enough to buy a colour TV set. 3. избавлять to save smb the trouble (necessity) **of** doing smth; (un)safe *a* (не)безопасный, (не)надежный a safe place (subject for a conversation, question, etc.); It is not safe to drive fast in a big town. **Phr.** be on the safe side на всякий случай; безопасности ради Even on bright days he carried an umbrella to be on the safe side. safety *n* безопасность At last he was in safety.

mild *a* мягкий, умеренный a mild climate (remark, joke, person, etc.) **Phr.** put it mildly мягко выражаясь, мягко говоря

use *n* 1. польза, смысл It's no use going there. What's the use of talking to him? **Phr.** be of (great, much, little, etc.) use to smb/smth приносить (большую, малую и т. п.) пользу кому-л/чему-л 2. употребление, применение, использование The uses of atomic energy for peace purposes are very wide. **Phr.** make use **of** smth (smb's advice, information, a situation, etc.) использовать, воспользоваться чем-л (чьим-л советом, информацией, положением и т. п.); useful *a* полезный useful advice (information, etc.); useless *a* бесполезный a useless argument (attempt, etc.)

certain *a* 1. уверенный He was certain that she would come. I am not certain whether I can do it. I was not certain **about** the time (the arrangement, etc.) They are certain to come. uncertain *a* неуверенный **Phr.** for certain наверняка I know for certain. 2. какой-то, некоторый a certain person (difficulty, etc.); for certain reasons; under certain conditions; to a certain degree, etc. 3. определенный (обусловленный, намеченный) They were to meet at a certain hour. (un)certainty *n* (не)уверенность He could not say with certainty when he would finish the work. certainly *adv* конечно Certainly he will come.

particular *a* 1. особенный, особый a particular day (book, reason, interest, situation, etc.) 2. разборчивый, привередливый, щепетильный to be

particular **about** one's clothes (food, etc.); Mind your table manners, the people there are very particular. **Phr. in** particular в частности; в особенности, особенно He did not mean anybody **in** particular when he said it.

tear (tore, torn) *vt* разорвать, рвать to tear one's dress (a letter, etc.) **Phr.** tear smth **in/into/to** (small) pieces разорвать на (мелкие) кусочки; tear smth **in** half (two, three, etc. parts) разорвать пополам (на две, три и т.п. части)

pick up 1. поднимать, подбирать to pick up a pencil (a book, a hand-kerchief; passengers, etc.) 2. *{coiloq)* приобретать, находить, "подцепить" to pick up an accent (manners, words, an expression, friends, a job, etc.)

nearly *adu* почти, чуть не It's nearly time to start. She nearly went mad when she heard it.

risk *vt* рисковать to risk one's life (one's health, money, one's reputation, etc.); to risk doing smth рисковать, отважиться, решиться что-л сделать; risk *n* риск to do smth at one's own risk; at the risk of one's life, health, etc.; He decided to take the risk. **Phr.** run the risk **of** doing smth рисковать, подвергаться риску, опасности Don't go out in such a rain, you are running the risk **of** catching cold; risky *a* рискованный, опасный a risky job (step, etc.)

employ *vt* держать на службе, предоставлять работу How many people does this office employ? She was employed at the Post Office. employee *n* служащий, работник The firm has about 1,000 employees. employer *n* предприниматель; работодатель, employment *n* служба, работа; занятость All people in our country have employment, unemployment *n* безработица Unemployment is one of many problems in capitalist countries, unemployed *a* безработный The number of unemployed in Great Britain reached one million in the first quarter of 1972.

serve *vt* 1. служить (родине, народу; в армии и т. п.) to serve one's country (one's people, etc.); He served in the Army (for) two years. 2. обслуживать (покупателя и т. п.) to serve a customer (a client, etc.) 3. подавать на стол (обед и т. п.) to serve dinner (tea, etc.); service *n* служба, обслуживание to take smb **into** one's service; to be **in** smb's service; bus (train, etc.) service; The service at the hotel was good. **Phr.** do smb a service оказать кому-л услугу. a self-service shop магазин самообслуживания

indifference *n* равнодушие, безразличие He took the news with indifference. indifferent *a* равнодушный, безразличный to be indifferent to smb/smth; an indifferent look (stare, etc.)

attend *vt* уделять внимание, заниматься чем-л to attend to one's work (one's business, one's lessons, customers, patients, smb's orders, etc.) He does not attend **to** his work properly. The doctor had some more patients to attend **to.** Your order will be attended **to** immediately.

taste *(lit.* & *fig.) n* вкус The dish has a pleasant taste. She has good (poor, etc.) taste **in** books (clothes, etc.). The joke was **in** bad taste. The apple is bitter **to** the taste. **Phr. in** smb's taste в чьем-л вкусе; **to** smb's taste по чьему-л вкусу. tasty *a* вкусный (о еде); tasteless *a* безвкусный; taste 1. *vt* пробовать

(на вкус) to taste an apple (a dish, etc.) 2. *vi* иметь вкус The fruit tastes good (sweet, bitter, etc.)

size *n* размер, величина; номер (перчаток, пальто и т. п.); to be of a large (small, etc.) size; to be large (small, different, etc.) in size; What size shoe (dress, etc.) do you wear? I take size six in shoes.

sharp *a (lit. & fig.)* острый, резкий, сильный, проницательный a sharp knife (wind, noise, remark, criticism, fight, look, child, etc.); sharp mind (eyes, etc.); **Phr.** be sharp = be quick; sharp *adv* точно He came at three (o'clock) sharp. sharply *adv* резко She spoke very sharply to him.

loose *a* 1. свободный, просторный, широкий (об одежде) a loose coat (jacket, etc.) 2. свободный, неточный, слишком общий a loose translation 3. не (плотно) прикрепленный, несвязанный, шатающийся a loose window (tooth, etc.)

fit *vt* годиться, быть впору (об одежде); подходить, соответствовать The coat does not fit you, it is too loose. He fitted the description (role, etc.). **Phr.** fit like a glove сидеть как влитой (об одежде); (un)fit *a* (не)годный, (не)пригодный, (не)подходящий He is fit for the job. The house was no longer fit to live in.

shake (shook, shaken) 1. *vt (lit. & fig.)* трясти, качать, потрясти to shake one's head (smb's hand, a tree, etc.); He shook me by the shoulder. She was shaken by (at, with) the news **Phr.** shake hands with smb пожать руку кому-л, поздороваться за руку с кем-л 2. *vi* дрожать, трястись Her voice shook when she began to speak. He was shaking with fright (cold, laughter, etc.)

manage *vt* 1. суметь, удаваться (что-л сделать) How did you manage to get the book? 2. справляться с (кем-л, чем-л) to manage a child (a horse, a job, etc.). manager *n* заведующий, управляющий, management *n* управление, заведование; администрация

satisfy *vt* удовлетворять to satisfy a customer (smb's needs, one's hunger, etc.); His answer did not satisfy them. to be (dis)satisfied with smb/smth быть (не)удовлетворенным кем-л, чем-л. dis(satisfaction) *n* (не)удовлетворение He expressed (dis)satisfaction with the results. (un)satisfactory *a* (не)удовлетворительный an (un)satisfactory answer (report, etc.); (un)satisfactory results (progress, etc.)

deal (dealt) *vt* 1. рассматривать, касаться; иметь дело (с кем-л, чем-л) The book deals **with** modern art. He is easy to deal **with.** 2. торговать (чем-л) The firm deals in turbines.

WORD COMBINATIONS

make both ends meet сводить концы с концами
for smb's sake == for the sake of smb ради кого-л
for the sake of smth ради чего-л
on top of all (everything) ко всему, в довершение ко всему

for a while в течение некоторого времени, на время
to be (get) wet through промокнуть насквозь
in no time мгновенно, моментально, необыкновенно быстро
shortly before незадолго до
get rid of smb/smth избавляться, отделываться от кого-л, чего-л
be beside oneself with excitement (joy, anger, etc.) быть вне себя от волнения (радости, злости и т. п.)
be the making of smb содействовать успеху кого-л; обеспечить успех кому-л
the other day на днях, недавно
would rather (do smth) охотнее, лучше (сделать что-л)
try on примерять (об одежде, обуви, и т. д.)
made to measure (order) сделанный на заказ (об одежде)
clear one's throat откашляться
I (he, etc.) can't help doing smth я (он и т. п.) не могу (может) удержаться от чего-л

EXERCISES ON THE TEXT

Ex. 1. **Answer the following questions:**

1. Why did Danny rush to save the still burning cigarette-end? 2. What were Danny's thoughts as he stood on Manhattan bridge enjoying his smoke? 3. What were his problems? 4. Why did Danny go into the post office? 5. What letter did he find on one of the desks? 6. What made Danny take the decision to risk his last money? 7. What did Danny mean when he said that a thousand dollars might be the making of him? 8. What sort of shop was Black & Son? 9. Why was there such a rush of customers at the shop? 10. Why didn't Danny go straight for the navy blue worsted suit mentioned in the letter? 11. How did Danny happen to buy Mr. Black's own jacket?

Ex. 2. **Find in the text the English for:**

1. обдумывать свое положение; 2. искать работу; 3. не иметь ни малейшей надежды; 4. быть неразборчивым (в средствах); 5. сводить концы с концами; 6. проливной дождь; 7. в довершение всех бед; 8. ничего кроме; 9. укрыться от дождя; 10. подобрать оставленное кем-то письмо; 11. первые несколько строчек; 12. привлечь внимание; 13. в мгновение ока; 14. оглянуться украдкой; 15. учить наизусть; 16. незадолго до отъезда; 17. уплатить старый долг; 18. покупатели; 19. давать указания; 20. поспешить навстречу; 21. напускное равнодушие; 22. изменить решение; 23. быть как раз по размеру; 24. висеть мешком (о пиджаке); 25. узкие плечи; 26. костюм сшитый на заказ; 27. первоклассный портной; 28. провести рукой

по карманам; 29. спросить о цене; 30. уплатить, не торгуясь; 31. кожаный бумажник; 32. считать деньги дрожащими руками; 33. довольная улыбка; 34. бойко торговать чем-л.

Ex. 3. **Give the four forms of the following verbs:**

burn, enjoy, throw, pick, tear, hurry, leave, strike, pay, wear, sell, wipe, attend, bring, buy, let, try, hang, beat, feel, find, shake, say, lose, fit, deal, catch.

Ex. 4. **Answer the following questions using "would rather" or "would rather not". Give your reasons.**

1. Will you have fruit or ice-cream for dessert? 2. Would you like to go to the Caucasus or to the Crimea in summer? 3. Which would you like better—to watch a sports program or a musical comedy? 4. Will you be joining in the game? 5. Will you be calling him up before you leave? 6. Which would you like better—to read a novel or a detective story?

Ex. 5. **Translate the following sentences using "would rather" or "would rather not".**

1. Я бы **охотнее** выпил чашку крепкого чая сейчас. 2. В «часы-пик» он **скорее** пойдет пешком, чем поедет на автобусе. 3. Он сказал, что **предпочел** бы не участвовать в дискуссии. 4. Мне бы **не хотелось** остаться здесь одному. 5. Я не буду писать письма, я **лучше** пошлю им телеграмму. 6. Она сказала, что **предпочла** бы заняться этим вопросом в другое время. 7. Я бы **скорее** умер, чем согласился сделать это. 8. Что бы вы **предпочли** на обед — мясо или рыбу?

Ex. 6. **Paraphrase the following sentences using a construction with the gerund.**

Model I: It's **useless** to argue with him. He won't listen to reason.
It's **no use arguing** with him. He won't listen to reason.

1. It's useless to remind him of his promises, he never keeps them anyway. 2. It's useless to look at such expensive things if we can't afford them at the moment. 3. It's useless to begin the work now, there is too little time left. 4. It was useless to try to make him listen. 5. It's useless to hide the truth from her, she is sure to find it out sooner or later.

Model II: Why invite them to the party? They won't come anyway.
What's the use of inviting them to the party?

They won't come anyway.

1. Why employ him for the job? He is hardly fit for it. 2. Why turn to her for help? She can't do anything. 3. Why send them a telegram? It will never reach them in time. 4. Why try on the suit if it's not your size? 5. Why spend so much money on something you'll never need? 6. Why argue if everything is clear?

Ex. 7. **Translate the following sentences using "can't (couldn't) help doing".**

1. Он не мог удержаться от смеха, когда услышал эту новость. 2. Она не могла удержаться от слез, когда узнала о своем провале. 3. Он говорил так уверенно, что мы не могли не поверить ему. 4. Я не мог не сказать им всей правды. 5. Трудно не волноваться на экзамене. 6 Трудно было не согласиться с ним. 7. Ребенок выглядел таким обиженным, что мне невольно стало жаль его.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBS

Ex. 8. *Study the following phrases; a) recall the sentences in which they are used in the text and b) use them in sentences of your own.*

look **for;** be good **at** smth/doing smth; be particular **about;** pick **up;** leave behind; **for** a while; be wet **through;** know/learn **by** heart; shortly **before;** get rid **of;** be **on** one's way **to** some place; pay **off; along with** smth/smb; roll **up** (the sleeves, the trouser legs, etc.); **in** tweed; **in** navy blue; **with** indifference; attend **to** smb/smth; turn **to** smb; try **on;** hang **from** (smb's shoulders, the ceiling, etc); **in** admiration; made **to** measure; ask **for** smth/smb; long **after/before** 9 p.m.; do business **in** smth; sell **out;** search **(about)** a place **for** smth

Ex. 9. *A. Fill in the blanks with prepositions or adverbs.*

1. You won't find him ... town; he's well ... his way ... the Far East, and as far as I know he's going to stay out there ... quite a while. 2. I'll be paying you ... as soon as I get money ... home. 3. I've got lots ... things to attend ... today. 4. ... our way home we were caught ... the rain and before long were wet ... .5. He seems to have made excellent use ... your advice. 6. Don't rush ... the book, you can pick ... a lot of useful information if you read it ... attention. 7. She doesn't seem to be satisfied ... the arrangement. 8. I'd rather have a coat made ... measure even if it's more than I can afford just now. 9. The conductor stood by waiting while she was searching her bag and pockets ... the ticket. 10. She tried to get rid ... the unpleasant thought, but it kept coming ... 11. I don't think you have a chance ...

getting a job ... this office if you aren't much good ... typing. 12. You are not expected to know all the telephones ... heart. 13. He's yet too young to know how to deal ... a situation like that. 14. She tried ... several coats before she found one ... her taste. 15. We've arranged ... a taxi to pick us tomorrow ... three o'clock. 16. I saw her tear the letter ... small pieces and throw them ... the fire. 17. The remark was ... bad taste, and he immediately felt ashamed ... what he had said. 18. I'm not free to discuss the matter ... anybody yet, and you ... particular. 19. The coat had been sent ... the dry cleaner's ... ... some other things. 20. He seems to have changed lately, he's no longer as indifferent ... criticism as he used to be. 21. I was surprised ... the certainty ... which he spoke. Where had he picked ... all that information and why was he so sure ... his facts? 22. Do you happen to know what size she takes ... gloves? I want to give her something nice ... her birthday. 23. They made every effort to save the picture ... ruin. 24. The apples though still green, are sweet ... the taste. 25. Will you ring ... the station and find ... when the train is coming in; I'm not certain ... the time. 26. They'll be coming ... Thursday, I know it ... certain. 27. Make ... the quarrel ... him, ...my sake, if not ... your own. 28. This failure was the making ... him.

B. MY FIRST SUIT

My grandmother who was very particular ... what I wore took me one day ... a small second hand tailor shop. A little man rushed ... her to serve us.

"What can I do ... you?"

"Have you got some good second-hand suits?" she asked.

"I got some second-hand suits she asks me. Like new they are hardly used!"

"I want a suit ... my grandson here," my grandmother said. "**Do** you mind if we look ...?"

We searched ... the shop ... a while until she saw something she liked. "Try this one ...," she said ... me.

"But, lady, ... all the suits I have got ... my shop you pick out the best, just ... my taste. I was thinking ... keeping it ... myself." He reached ... the suit and handed the jacket ... me. I put it ... . It hung a little loosely ... my shoulders, but the sleeves were all right.

"It fits him like a glove," said the tailor ... admiration. "A suit made ... measure couldn't fit him better."

"How much?" asked my grandmother.

"Twelve fifty. But only ... you."

I stood ... front ... the mirror. The shoulders were broad and I looked older, which was exactly what I wanted. I was beside myself ... joy but tried not to look too pleased. Grandmother was looking ... me ... satisfaction.

Ex. 10. *Give the English for the following phrases, using the preposition "in" in*

its different meanings. Use the phrases in sentences of your own.

I. а) жить в столице (Ленинграде, пригороде, новом районе); служить в армии; здание в центре города; в доме (квартире); торшер в углу; стол посредине; сидеть в кресле; деньги в кошельке; документы в бумажнике;

б) на севере (юге, востоке, западе); шум на улице; памятник на площади; дети на фотографии; деревья на картине; облака на небе;

в) в газете (заголовке, статье, книге, письме, телеграмме); в пьесе; играть роль в фильме; искать слово в словаре;

г) в литературе (искусстве, науке, истории); в жизни; в действительности;

д) в лагере (больнице, парламенте, тюрьме); лежать в постели.

II. на солнце; в дождь (бурю, снегопад, туман); в теплую (жаркую, холодную, дождливую, любую) погоду; попасть под дождь; в темноте; при свете уличного фонаря; на открытом воздухе.

III. а) сделать работу за неделю; перевести статью за полчаса;

б) поезд прибывает через пять минут; встретиться через два дня (год, неделю, сутки);

в) утром, вечером, днем, ночью;

г) в XX веке; в наши дни; в октябре; летом; в 1971 году; в будущем;

д) вначале; в конце концов.

IV. а) в костюме (пальто, шляпе, новых туфлях);

б) платье из шерсти (шелка, нейлона); картина, написанная маслом (акварелью); письмо, написанное карандашом (чернилами); заглавие крупными буквами;

в) девушка в голубом; женщина в черном; врач в белом; свитер ярких тонов; разные по цвету (размеру, форме).

V. а) находиться в опасности (безопасности); в бедности (нужде, затруднении); быть в панике (ужасе, страхе);

б) слушать молча; смотреть с восхищением (удивлением).

VI. говорить по-английски (по-французски, по-немецки); говорить шёпотом (громким голосом).

MISCELLANEOUS PHRASES

прибыть в город (страну, порт); находиться в городе (за городом); попасть в часы пик»; вдали; стоять на чьем-либо пути; принять участие в чем-либо; проявлять интерес к чему-либо; верить во что-либо; торговать чем-либо; помнить (держать в голове); шептать на ухо; посмотреть в лицо; держать экзамен по математике; провалиться по географии; в присутствии кого-либо; в чье-то отсутствие; на чьем-либо месте; в подобной ситуации; делать работу в спешке; быть твердым в своем решении; в общем; в частности.

EXERCISES IN LEXICOLOGY

Ex. 11. *Recast the following using verbs with the prefix* "re-". *Make other necessary changes.*

Model: He had to **write** the exercise **again.**
He had to **rewrite** the exercise.

1. The secretary **read** the letter a **second time.** 2. To our disappointment the job had to be **done over again.** 3. The girl seems to have liked the book so much that she **read** it **over** three times at least. 4. As the man **told** the story **again,** he added a few details. 5. We felt very much in debt to the old man for his kindness and understanding and wondered how we could **pay** him **back.** 6. My friend went away promising to **join** us **again** later in the evening. 7. In a few moments the sun **appeared again** from behind the clouds. 8. She **arranged** the flowers on the table **in a different way.**

Ex. 12. *Recast the following using verbs instead of the nouns in bold type. Make all necessary changes.*

1. He thought to himself that he should have taken the **risk.** 2. They all made a **rush** for the bus. 3. I don't like this fruit, it has a bitter **taste.** 4. He had made excel lent use of the material and his article on the subject was a pleasure to read. 5. No **mention** was ever made of that particular incident. 6. A careful **search** of the room had been made but nothing was found. 7. He had his **measure** taken for a new suit of clothes. 8. What was the **end** of the story? 9. He said it in a **whisper** and I didn't catch the exact words. 10. The coat was a perfect **fit.** 11. The man gave us an indifferent **stare.**

Ex. 13.*Answer the following questions, expressing disagreement with the speaker and using in a) words opposite in meaning to those given in bold type, in b) antonyms with the appropriate negative prefix (un-, dis-).*

a) 1. Did she accept the invitation? 2. Did you manage to **catch** the last bus yesterday? 3. I hear your team **lost** the game. Is that **right?** 4. Should I take part in the climb? Won't it **do harm** to my heart? 5. Did you **manage** to finish the work in time? 6. How did she take the news? Did she take it **badly?** 7. Is the fellow easy to deal with? 8. Is a journey along those roads **risky?**
b) 1. Do you think it **reasonable** to spend money on things you can't afford? 2. Was he **certain** about the time and place of the meeting? 3. Was he **satisfied** with the arrangement? 4. Is the food at the place **fit** to eat?

Ex. 14. *Give English equivalents for the Russian words.*

1. a) For some reason or other he failed to give a (прямой) answer to the Question, b) When they heard the bell they rose and passed (прямо) into the hall. 2. a) It was a rather (продолжительный) visit, b) He had waited (долго) for this chance. 3. a) Shopping is always a (тяжелая) job for me. b) We never expected him to take the refusal so (тяжело). 4. a) Have you any (близкие) relatives in Moscow? b) I'll be needing you, stay somewhere (близко). 5. a) They started off (поздно), b) They couldn't even think of going there at such a (поздний) hour.

Ex. 15. *Complete the following choosing the right word in the brackets. Translate the sentences into Russian.*

1. a) He seems to be working ... . b) She was beside herself with excitement and could ... say a word. (hard, hardly) 2. a) Why not walk there? He lives quite ... . b) He ... broke his leg when he fell down the steps, (near, nearly) 3. a) What are you doing here so...? b) What have you been doing with yourself ...? (late, lately) 4. a) They left ... before our arrival, b) She wears her hair .... (short, shortly) 5. a) He is said to be a promising engineer. He is ... spoken of. b) Hold your head ..., you have nothing to be ashamed of. (high, highly) 6. a) She was ... touched by their kind attention, b) He went ... into the subject, (deep, deeply) 7. a) He opened his eyes ... when I told him about it. b) This method is ... used in indushy; .(wide, widely) 8. a) The lecture began at eleven o'clock ... . b) "Don't disturb me any more," he said ... . (sharp, sharply).

Ex. 16. **Give words of the same root in Russian. Compare the meaning.**

situation, chance, partner, surprise, risk, instructions, service, satisfaction, manager, business

Ex. 17. **Give the meaning of the words in bold type, note the effect of the adverbial particle. Say which phrase is used literally and which has a figurative meaning. Give your own examples.**

1. a) The boy **hurried off** and a second later Danny was trying on a blue jacket, b) He was told to **hurry up** if he didn't want to be left behind. 2. a) She paid the money, **picked up** the parcel and disappeared through the door. b) He seems to **have picked up** the wrong accent, rather difficult to get rid of now. c) There were so many tasty things on the table! After some careful thinking the boy **picked out** a big red apple. d) Nobody knew how he happened to be **picked out** for the job 3. a) She **came up** and smiled, b) The problem is sure to **come up** sooner or later. 4. a) The boy **tore off** a piece of paper but it was too small to

wrap the book. b) She **tore out** a sheet from her notebook and sat down to write a hurried note. c) He **tore up** the letter without reading it. 5. a) He seems to have **paid off** his debts at last. b) He was warned that if he didn't **pay up** by a certain day he would be getting into trouble. 6. a) He broke off the end of the stick. Now it seemed to be the right length, b) They broke off to have tea.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 18. **Fill in the blanks with a suitable word in the correct form. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

to attend; to burn; to deal; to fit (2); fit (2); loose; to manage (2); mild; particular; to risk; risk; to rush; to satisfy; to save (2); to serve; to shake (2); taste (3)

1. Only an immediate operation could ... the patient from almost certain death. 2. My answer didn't seem to ... him as he ... his head and turned to my neighbour with the same question. 3. Be careful with the fire or you might ... yourself. 4. The food ... at the place was awful to the ..., and, as somebody said, not ... to eat. We decided to write to the management about it. 5. He shouted a hurried good-bye and ... past to catch the bus. 6. The part of the main hero was very much to his ... and he believed himself exceptionally lucky to have been chosen for it. Of course there were people who said he did not ... the role, but he paid no attention. 7. The secretary promised to ... to the matter at once. 8. He was said to have jumped into the river and ... the boy at the ... of his own life. 9. It was not an exact translation but rather a kind of ... retelling meant to give the audience a general idea of the article. 10. It was a great effort, yet he ... to stop the car in time. 11. In the new coat, which ... her like a glove, the girl looked extremely smart. 12. The more important matters were to be ... with first. 13. He refused to take part in the business, saying he couldn't afford to ... either his money or his reputation. 14. She had always appeared to be a very ... person, and I was surprised to see her beside herself with anger. 15. I could see that my friend was badly ... by the news. 16. His education was of the general kind that didn't make him ... for any employment in ... . 17. Everything about the flat seemed to be in excellent ... .

Ex. 19. **Express the following, using words and word combinations from the text. Make all necessary changes.**

to manage; to deal (in); to deal (with); to fit; to pick up (2); use; loose; particular; to be beside oneself (with); in no time; to get rid of; nothing but; on top of all; shortly before; cannot help doing

1. The whole story seemed so funny! We tried our hardest not to laugh but **could do nothing** about it. 2. We wondered what the **good** of the effort was if it didn't bring any results. 3. She had to hurry with the packing, they would be back with the car **very soon.** 4. You needn't have taken it so badly, it was **only** a joke. 5. **To make things worse** he was up to his ears in debt. 6. His mother asked him sharply where he managed to **find** such friends. 7. A seemingly unimportant incident took place **almost immediately before** he left. 8. He seemed to be badly in need of that **very** book, the one that **was about** electronics. 9. The shop **sold** ready-made clothes. 10. She read the letter and **nearly went mad** with joy. 11. She seems to **have learnt** a lot of English during her short stay in the country. 12. The suit **was no good for** him, it was too **big,** and I advised him to try on another. 13. She did her best **to drive away** the feeling that she was being followed, but it was hopeless. 14. She couldn't tell how long she would be able to **live on** the money left.

Ex. 20. **Speak on the following topics. Use the words and phrases given below.**

1. Danny

unemployed; young; thin; hungry; narrow-shouldered; to be no fool; to be good at anything; not to mind what one does; to be prepared to do anything; to think over one's present situation; not to be particular about smth; to make money; to have no luck; to look for a job of some kind or other; to be disappointed; to fail to find a job; to see no way out; to be in a difficult (hopeless) situation; to be unable to make both ends meet; torn pocket (trousers, coat, etc.); to have holes in one's socks (shoes); to wonder how long a person can manage on $8.50; to rush to save the still burning cigarette end; to smoke dog-ends thrown away by others

2. Danny Comes Upon the Letter

to begin to rain cats and dogs; to be caught in the rain; on top of all; to be wet through; to hide from the rain; for a while; the main hall; to look around; to watch the people hurrying busily this way and that; to pay no attention (to); to pick up a letter; to leave behind; the first few lines; to catch one's breath; to make an effort; to hide one's joy; to leave in a hurry; to be afraid that ...; to look stealthily back; to be on the safe side; to hide in a doorway; to learn by heart

3. The Letter

to be meant for a friend; to happen; shortly before; to make up one's mind; to get rid of one's old clothes; suddenly to remember; well on one's way to; to happen

to meet smb; to pay off an old debt; the inside pocket; to sell along with; to mention the address; to be fooled by the letter; to believe every word of the letter; beside oneself with excitement; to imagine; to be the making of smb; to hope to buy smth cheap; to take a decision

4. Danny Decides to Try His Luck

to go straight to; second hand gents' clothiers; first come, first served; full of customers; the owner; to have a busy time; to deal with the rush of customers; to give instructions (to); to attend to things personally; employees; to hurry to serve a customer; "What can I do for you, sir?"; with seeming indifference; not to attract attention to oneself; to ask for smth in tweed (worsted); would rather; to smb's taste; to be the smartest wear (for); to fit like a glove; to be full of admiration (for); to follow the owner's instructions

5. The Bargain Jacket

a lounge suit; to try on; to hang loosely; to fit smb badly; to pass one's hand stealthily over smth; to be on the safe side; to catch one's breath; to make an effort to hide one's excitement; to clear one's throat; to be unable to speak; to ask for the price; to pay up without bargaining; to hurry away; to hold the parcel close to oneself; cannot help feeling excited; black leather wallet; to count the money with shaking hands; to stammer; to be the making of smb; to imagine; a bright future; big business; to be in luck

6. Mr. Black's Way of Doing Business

to own; a second-hand shop; to deal (in); to make (much, little) money; to work out a plan; not to be particular (about); a bright idea; to get rid of old things; to fool the customers; to be no fool; to play a trick (on); to be highly pleased with oneself; to have a rush of customers; to deal (with); to write 1,000 dollar letters; to send one's son to 'lose' the letters; to sell out everything; to be satisfied with; to employ a new method in one's work

7. The Fatal Mistake

an employee; to work for smb; from morning till night; to be rushed off one's feet; to be afraid of losing one's job; to know the owner to be a hard man; to deal with; to be tired; hungry; to hear the cry "Ralph, be sharp!"; to be eager to please; to sell smth by mistake; to discover the awful truth; to be frightened; to be badly shaken; to be terribly upset; to have to return the money to the owner; to pay a heavy price

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

The Infinitive (continued)

Complex Subject

*I. with the verbs "to seem", "to appear"**

Ex. 21. *Study the following chart, translate the sentences into Russian.*

e	seems appears	**to read** a lot (His knowledge is/was surprising). **to be reading** something funny. (Look at him. He is smiling all the time. As he read he was smiling all the time). **to have read** the letter already (He looks/looked sad). **to have been reading** since morning (for a whole day, etc.). **to be given** information regularly. **to have been told** the news.
	seemed appeared	

Ex. 22. *Fill in the blanks using the correct form of the infinitive, translate the sentences into Russian.*

1. He seems ... books tor a whole hour (to choose). 2. He didn't answer at once. He seemed ... his Unoai. (J.O clear). 3. You always seem ... your things all around the place (to leave). 4. She looks sad. She appears ... the news (to learn). 5. She didn't seem ... at me but at somebody behind (to look). 6. She heard the remark, but she didn't appear ... (to hurt). 7. He appears ... the same suit the whole year (to wear). 8. She didn't seem ... in the problem (to interest). 9. He seems ... with his new job (to fail). 10. The letter doesn't seem ... him (to reach). 11. They seem ... this method for years (to use). 12. Why did he rush away so suddenly? He seems ... some business to attend to (to have).

Ex. 23. *Paraphrase the following sentences using a complex subject according to the model*

M o d e l: (a) It seems (appears) that she knows everything about it.
She seems (appears) to know everything about it.
(b) He apparently* did not know it.
He didn't seem (appear) to know it.

1. He was apparently enjoying the concert. 2. It seemed that he had lost interest in the subject. 3. Apparently he was particular about his food. 4. It seemed that the house hadn't been lived in for a long time. 5. It seemed that she had never

* to seem/to appear – казаться, представляться, по-видимому
* apparently – по-видимому

tasted this fruit. 6. It appeared that they were hardly able to make both ends meet. 7. It doesn't seem that customers are served here properly. 8. It seems that he has been collecting stamps since he was a boy. 9. He was silent for a moment. It seemed that he was searching his memory. 10. It appears that he is not fit for the job. 11. It seems that you have been working hard lately. 12. Apparently they didn't notice us. 13. It seemed that she had managed the job well enough. 14. It seemed that they were all talking at once. 15. It seemed that there was no risk in asking him the question. 16. It appeared that he had been approached on the subject. 17. It seemed that the job was risky.

Ex. 24. *Translate the following sentences using a complex subject with the verbs "to seem" or "to appear".*

1. Все, казалось, было в полном порядке. 2. Кажется, ее брат копит деньги на автомашину. 3. Похоже на то, что они использовали эти сведения. 4. Он долго молчал. По-видимому он был потрясен новостью. 5. Похоже на то, что этот факт уже был упомянут. 6. Она, кажется, очень привередлива в еде. 7. Его родители, по-видимому, живут здесь давно. 8. Кажется, она посещала все лекции. 9. У нее, по-видимому, хороший вкус. 10. Вероятно, преподаватель был неудовлетворен ее ответом. 11. Мне кажется, что я где-то уже слышал это имя. 12. По-видимому, этот костюм был сделан на заказ. Он очень хорошо сидит на нем. 13. Я что-то не помню вас. 14. Кажется, она перемерила десять костюмов, и ни один, по-видимому, не годится ей. 15. Похоже на то, что он опять не сдал экзамен. 16. Казалось, в доме никого не было. 17. Врач не сразу ответил. Казалось, он подыскивал нужные слова.

Ex. 25. *Answer the following questions according to the model.*

M o d e l I. Does this coat fit you?
(a) It seems (appears) to. It seems (appears) to fit me very well.
(b) It doesn't seem (appear) to. It doesn't seem to fit me at all.

1. Does he remember her? 2. Was he satisfied with your report? 3. Have you heard of him before? 4. Was there any risk in giving him this job? 5. Is he easy to deal with? 6. Did I upset your plans? 7. Does she know[7] how to deal with the situation? 8. Is he particular about what he wears? 9. He wasn't easy to deal with, was he?

M o d e l II. Why don't people want to work with him?
(to be hard to deal with)
He seems (appears) to be hard to deal with.

1. Why wasn't he listening attentively to what the speaker was saying? (not to be

interested in the subject) 2. Why did she buy a blue dress? (to be her colour) 3. Why did he fail in history? (not to attend the lectures) 4. Why does she look so pale? (not to be well) 5. Why didn't he buy the picture? (not to be in his taste) 6. Why did they raise this question? (to be mentioned by somebody)

*II. with the verb "to happen"**

Ex. 26. *Paraphrase the following sentences using a complex subject with the verb "to happen".*

Model: (a) It so happened that I was out when he called.
I happened to be out when he called.
(b) We were there by chance. We happened to be there.

1. It so happened that I took the wrong turning. 2. Do you, by any chance, know where I can find him? 3. It so happened that I had no money on me. 4. We were quite by chance picked up by a passing car. 5. It so happened that they missed the five o'clock train. 6. Do you, by any chance, know where such things are sold? 7. It so happened that they picked the wrong person for the job. 8. It so happened that the book dealt with a problem that interested me very much.

Ex. 27. **Translate the following sentences using a complex subject with the verb "to happen".**

1. Вы, случайно, не знаете причину его отсутствия? 2. Нам уже случалось иметь дело с такими людьми. 3. Мы случайно встретились с ним незадолго до его болезни. 4. Случилось так, что они остановились в той же гостинице. 5. Если вы случайно встретите его, скажите ему, что он мне очень нужен. 6. Случилось так, что мы попали под дождь и промокли до нитки. 7. Однажды нам довелось попасть в метро в часы пик. Мы с трудом выбрались.

*III. with the verb "to turn out"**

Ex. 28. *Complete the following sentences using a complex subject with the verb "to turn out" (make use of the list in tne right-hand column).*

M o d e l: They picked him for the job but he ...
but he turned out to be quite unfit for it.

---

* to happen – (случайно) оказываться; случайно (происходить)
*to turn out – оказываться (оказаться)
The verb “to prove” (оказываться) is also used on the same pattern.

1. The parcel was wrapped in what I thought to be a newspaper, but when I opened it, it .... 2. They had been looking forward to the party but when it came, it ... . 3. The parents were against their marriage but the man .... 4. They employed him for the job and he ... . 5. At first nobody liked him but he ... . 6. She bought me the coat not being sure of the size, but it... . 7. I couldn't get him on the telephone, it ... . 8. I didn't expect much from the film but it .... 9. He had always been proud of the picture but it .... 10. We took what we thought the shortest way, but it ... .

to be exactly my size, to be the best clerk they had ever had, to be an ideal husband for their daughter, to be dull and un-interesting, to be out of order, to be the longer, to be a page from a magazine, to be worthless, to be a nice person, to be quite thrilling

I. Ex. 29. **Translate the following sentences using a complex subject with the verb "to turn out".**

l. Все думали, что он просто простудился, а болезнь оказалась серьезной. 2. Деревня, где мы решили провести отпуск, оказалась тихим и милым уголком. 3. Он поехал на юг, но климат оказался вредным для его здоровья. 4. Книга оказалась такой интересной, что я прочел ее в один день. 5. Гостиница, где мы остановились, оказалась очень комфортабельной. 6. Мои новые соседи оказались очень приятными людьми. 7. Язык книги оказался трудным, и он не смог прочитать ее. 8. Его подход к решению проблемы оказался более простым. 9. Его ответ оказался правильным.

*IV. with the phrases "to be sure (certain)", to be (un)likely"**

Ex. 30. *Paraphrase the following sentences using a complex subject with the phrase "to be sure/certain", "to be (un)likely".*

M o d e l: (a) He surely (certainly) will go hunting.
He is sure to go hunting.
(b) It is not very likely that he will come in time.
He is not likely (is unlikely) to come in time.

1. It was not likely that he would take the risk. 2. Is it likely that t will rain today? 3. The firm has a new rush of orders. It is certain that the management will employ more people to do the work. 4. Surely a washing machine in the house will save a lot of time and effort. 5. It's likely that the mild climate of

* to be sure/certain – наверняка, обязательно,несомненно, непременно;
to be (un)likely – (не)вероятно, (не)похоже на то, что …

Estonia will do him a lot of good. 6. Surely he is easy to deal with. 7. It was unlikely that this wet weather would keep long. 8. It's certain that they have made use of this information. 9. Surely the teacher will be satisfied with your report. 10. It's most unlikely that you will find her in at this hour.

Ex. 31. *Answer the following questions using a complex subject according to the model, make use of the suggestions in brackets. Give your reasons.*

M o d e l: Do you think Peter will come in time? (to be sure to)
He is sure to. Peter is sure to come in time. Don't you know Peter? He is so punctual.

1. Do you think the weather will change for the better? (to be unlikely) 2. Do you think she knows him well enough to turn to him for help? (not to seem; to happen) 3. Do you think the management will employ more people to do the work? (to be likely) 4. Do you think she is saving money for a vacation at the sea side? (to be certain) 5. Do you suppose she has seen the doctor already? (to seem) 6. Do you believe size 48 will fit him? (to be likely) 7. Do you think he is hard to deal with? (to appear) 8. Do you believe he will come to pick us up in his car? (to be likely)

Ex. 32. *Translate the following sentences using a complex subject.*

1. Если вы не поторопитесь, вы, наверняка, попадете в часы пик. 2. Вряд ли разумный человек пойдет на такой риск. 3. Он, наверняка, знает, как вести себя в подобных ситуациях. 4. Вероятно, старший инженер уйдет с этой работы. Он не находит ее достаточно интересной. 5. Вряд ли вы ее застанете дома в это время. 6. Докладчик, наверняка, использует эти факты в своем выступлении. 7. Наверняка, пальто будет ей впору. 8. Она придает большое значение одежде. Вряд ли она будет покупать готовые вещи. 9. Вы, непременно, найдете там новых друзей.

*V. with the verbs "to make, to tell, to order, to allow"**

Ex. 33. *Paraphrase the following sentences using a complex subject according to the model.*

M o d e l: They **made him understand** that his behaviour was not too nice.
He was made to understand that his behaviour was not too nice.

1. They **made him fill up a** form. 2. The teacher **ordered the children to leave**

* The verbs “to let”, “to force” (заставлять, принуждать) and “to induce” (заставлять, убеждать) are used on the same pattern.

the boy alone. 3. They never **allowed us to play** noisy games. 4. They **told us to follow** the instructions carefully. 5. I never had a minute to myself. Mother always **made me look after** the younger brothers and sisters. 6. They **will allow us to leave** as soon as we finish our compositions. 7. She **ordered the children to go** to bed. 8. The boatman **told the young people to be very careful** while crossing the lake.

Ex. 34. *Translate the following sentences into English using a complex subject with the verbs "to make, to tell, to order, to allow".*

1. Маленьким детям не разрешается смотреть телевизор после восьми часов. 2. Его нужно заставить заниматься музыкой более серьезно. 3. Нас попросили (нам велели) остаться до конца собрания. 4. Студентам не разрешается курить в классных аудиториях. 5. Им было приказано вернуться немедленно. 6. Ему разрешили просмотреть все книги на полках, и он нашел то, что искал. 7. Ее заставили изменить свое решение.

VI. with the verbs "to know, to believe, to suppose, to expect, to say, to report"[*]

Ex. 35. *Translate the following sentences into Russian. Pay attention to the way the complex subject is translated.*

1. This small town is known to have once been the capital of the country. 2. The storm is reported to be moving South. 3. They are supposed to know these things. 4. She is known to be particular about her looks. 5. The new secretary is expected to save us a lot of trouble. 6. The lakes there are believed to be full of fish. 7. She is said to have once been a beautiful woman. 8. The first performance of Chekhov's "Seagull" («Чайка») is known to have been a failure. 9. It was believed to be a turning point in his career. 10. The delegation is reported to have arrived. 11. She is supposed to deal with such things. 12. He is said to be a great admirer of modern art. 13. The prices in Great Britain are reported to have risen again. 14. He is said to have once risked his life to save somebody. 15. He was not expected to take any risks.

MIXED BAG

Ex. 36. *Translate the following sentences using a complex subject.*

1. Мне не приходилось (не случалось) иметь дело с такими вещами. 2.

[*] The verbs “to consider” (считать, полагать), “to announce” (объявлять), “To find” (находить, полагать) may also be used with the same constructoin.

Дети, кажется, получили большое удовольствие от путешествия. 3. Необходимо заставить всех молодых специалистов посещать эти лекции. 4. Вероятно, самолет прибудет с опозданием. 5. Казалось, он следил за каждым моим движением (шагом). 6. Детям не разрешается играть на мостовой. 7. Проблема оказалась более трудной, чем мы думали. 8. Кажется, они не знают, как справиться с этой проблемой. 9. Вряд ли он будет рисковать. 10. Его придется заставить объяснить свое странное поведение. 11. Случилось так, что мы работали под руководством одного и того же профессора. 12. По-видимому, этот преподаватель работает здесь давно. 13. Отец, казалось, не был удивлен нашим неожиданным приездом. 14. Давайте позвоним ему. Он, наверняка, знает ее точный адрес. 15. Вряд ли профессор будет удовлетворен результатами эксперимента. 16. Они, кажется, помирились. 17. Они, наверняка, примут участие в игре. 18. Дело, казалось, было забыто.

Ex. 37. *Open the brackets using the appropriate form of the Infinitive.*

A few months after Arthur Ainslie had lost his job he came home and found that his wife was giving tea to a round-faced man. They appeared (to have) a good time.

"Good Lord, it's Dicky Soames!" cried Arthur.

Dicky Soames was his wife's cousin who was known (to be) in love with Adela once. But Adela married Arthur and Dicky Soames went to Melbourne to join his — and Adela's — uncle. Arthur and Adela were quite happy, but Arthur still continued hating Dicky though there was no reason for it.

Twice in the past year the Ainslies had got letters from Dicky. And each time, though Arthur knew that the letters were (to hand) to Adela, he tore them to pieces and threw them into the fire without reading them. He did not want Adela (to disturb) by Dicky's letters, so he explained it to himself at the time.

Arthur and Dicky shook hands.

"I hope you have had a nice chat," Arthur said.

Dicky laughed, "Well, it was I who've been talking all the time.

You see, I am here because I have some business (to discuss) with your wife."

Adela looked at her husband. "Uncle Tom is dead," she explained, "and Dicky has come into money." Then she turned to her cousin: "Tell Arthur the rest."

Dicky for some reason or other seemed (to be uncomfortable). He cleared his throat several times before he said: "Uncle Tom left Adela 5,000."

"But that is marvellous!" Arthur said. "You don't know what that means to us. How kind of Uncle Tom (to think) of us."

Arthur was too delighted (to notice) that Dicky looked still more uncomfortable, but now he noticed it at last. "Why, what's the matter?" he asked.

"Well, you see," Dicky said, "when Uncle Tom got paralyzed he began to get funny. He was very angry with Adela that she had never answered the two letters I wrote to her for him. You know how particular old people are about such things. He said he expected his letter (to answer), and changed his will, leaving Adela's part to hospitals. Shortly before his death I spoke to him again saying that the will needed (to rewrite), but he said he was too weak (to trouble) with such matters or (to tell) what to do and he did not want the will (to change)."

Dicky stopped and gave Arthur a look that made him (to feel) quite weak. "It's strange about those two letters. I've often wondered what happened to them."

Arthur's face was as white as paper. Adela faced Dicky: "They were sure (to lose) in the post," and she took her husband's ice-cold hand. At that moment Arthur realized that she knew everything.

(after "Lost in the Post" by Austin Philips)

For-Complexes

Ex. 38. **Study the following chart, translate the sentences into Russian.**

Subject	1. It is necessary **for you to go through** a special test if you want to work in this laboratory. 2. It's almost time **for the party to start**. 3. It's all very well **for you to laugh** but I was really frightened.
Predicative	1. The best thing is **for you to move** to the South. 2. The question is not **for you to decide**.
Object ***Attribute***	1. I am waiting **for you to say** something on the subject. 2. There is no need **for you to leave** so early.
Adverbial modifier of purpose	***1. He repeated it*** *twice for everybody to understand him****.*** ***2. He opened the doors of the*** *car for us to get in****.***
Adverbial modifier of result	1. The weather was too cold **for the children to go out**. 2. The article is easy enough **for you to translate it** without a dictionary.

Ex. 39. *Practise the following according to the model, watch the change in meaning.*

M o d e l: There was nothing to do there. (I)
There was nothing **for me to do there.**

1. I think it will be dangerous **to go** to the Crimea in this old car. (we) 2. He has reached the age when it is necessary **to think** of the future. (he) 3. The idea was not clear enough **to understand** (the young people). 4. My advice is **to keep**

away from colds, (you) 5. There was nothing **to argue about** (they). 6. It was a reasonable remark **to make.** (she) 7. The best thing is to send them a telegram. (I) 8. It was an expensive present **to buy.** (she) 9. There was no reason **to get worried.** (I) 10. Here's an example **to follow.** (everybody)

Ex. 40. **Paraphrase the following sentences using f or-complexes.**

1. We remained at the station and waited **till the storm passed.** 2. He stepped aside **so that I might pass.** 3. Here is a book **that you will always keep on your writing-desk.** 4. The best thing **that you can do** is to employ a real specialist to do the job. 5. The climb was too dangerous. **We could not risk our lives.** 6. This is a matter **that you must attend to** personally. 7. The only thing **that he could do** was to burn the old rubbish. 8. There was too little time left. **I couldn't think over the situation.** I had to take steps. 9. That day there was no business **that I had to attend to.** 10. The streets were too busy. **We couldn't drive fast.** 11. We are sorry. **You are leaving the seaside too soon.** 12. A woman **should be always dressed** in good taste. It's important. 13. The task is that **customers should be served well.** 14. We stopped the bus **so that the tourists might get on.** 15. He held the door open **to let her come in.** 16. I stood there waiting **when the door would open.**

Ex. 41. **Translate the following sentences using for-complexes.**

1. Задача слишком сложна, чтобы вам справиться с ней одному. 2. У него очень хорошая память. Ему достаточно только раз упомянуть слово, и он запомнит его на всю жизнь. 3. Он попросил, чтобы ему выслали книги почтой. 4. Им необходимо отдохнуть, чтобы быть в хорошей форме на соревнованиях. 5. Тебе хорошо говорить, что я справлюсь с этой работой, а я не очень в этом уверен. 6. Поездка слишком интересная, чтобы нам ее упускать. 7. Они ждали, когда им подадут обед. 8. Для них было обычным делом подвозить людей, идущих на ярмарку. 9. Тебе нет необходимости работать так много и рисковать здоровьем.

Ex. 42. **Test Translation.**

1. В нашей стране гарантируется полная занятость, у нас нет безработицы. 2. Вы читали книгу Джона Рида “Десять дней, которые потрясли мир”? Если нет, то советую прочитать ее. Она вам обязательно понравится. 3. Не спешите прочитать эту книгу. Ее надо читать очень внимательно. Из нее можно почерпнуть много полезного. 4. Этим летом на озере Байкал ожидается большой наплыв туристов. 5. Мы заметили, что вдали горел костер и поспешили туда, к людям, согреться. 6. Он, кажется, сделал все возможное, чтобы спасти положение. 7. Задание было довольно трудным,

и мы не ожидали, что он так быстро справится с ним. 8. Советую вам обратиться к секретарю. Он скажет, кто именно занимается этими вопросами. 9. Вы не будете возражать, если я задержу этот журнал еще на два-три дня? Я нашел в нем массу полезных сведений. 10. К сожалению нам не удалось побывать на выставке его работ. Она закрылась за два дня до нашего приезда. 11, Казалось, он был чем-то расстроен. Вероятно, результаты опыта оказались неудовлетворительными. 12. Трудно сказать, почему он безразлично отнесся к нашему приглашению. 13. Разве ты не видишь, что костюм не твоего размера? Он тебе совсем не годится, слишком велик. 14. Экономьте свое время! Пользуйтесь услугами магазинов самообслуживания.

SPEECH EXERCISES

Ex. 43. *Retell in narrative form.*

CARRIE IS LOOKING FOR WORK

An office boy approached Carrie: "Who is it you'd like to see?" he asked.
"I want to see the manager," she said.
"Sit down," and he pointed to a chair against the wall. After a short time a gentleman cane in from the street.
"Mr. McManus," called the office boy, "this young woman wants to see you."
The short gentleman turned towards Carrie: "How do you do."
"How do you do."
"What can I do for you. Miss?" he asked.
"I want to know if I can get a position."
"As what?"
"As nothing in particular."
"Are you a stenographer or a typist?"
"No, sir."
"Well, we haven't anything here,"he said. "We employ only experienced help."*
Carrie began to step backward toward the door when something in her face attracted him.
"Have you tried the big department stores?"
She said she had not.
"Well, try the department stores. They often need clerks."
"Thank you. Good bye," said Carrie and went away.
(after "Sister Carrie" by Th. Dreiser)

Ex. 44. *Answer the following questions. Sum up your answers.*

* квалифицированные работники

1. Making a Fire is Art

1. Why isn't it allowed to burn camp fires in town? 2. Where is it safe to make a fire? 3. What wood is best for a fire? What wood burns better: dry or green wood? 4. How many matches do you strike to make a fire? Do you happen to know how many matches a regular tourist is expected to use? 5. How do you put out a fire? Do you throw sand or water on it? 6. Why is it dangerous to leave a burning fire in the forest? 7. What are the dangers of cooking on a campfire? 8. What dinner tastes better: the one cooked on a campfire or the one cooked at home on a gas or electric stove?

2. A Visit to the Tailor's (Dress-Maker's)

1. Would you rather have a ready-made or a tailor-made suit of clothes? 2. What is a tailor shop like inside? 3. Why does a tailor always have a measure-tape hanging round his neck? 4. Why does a tailor measure the customer's neck, the chest, the length of the arm, etc.? 5. What is your size? 6. How long does it take your tailor to prepare your suit for the first fitting? 7. What are the mirrors in the fitting room for? 8. How many fittings do you have before the suit is ready? 9. Do you like your clothes to fit you like a glove or do you like them loose? 10. What do you do with the things you no longer wear? How do you get rid of them?

3. What's Your Taste In Clothes?

1. What is good (bad, poor) taste in clothes? 2. What is your idea of a smartly-dressed man (woman)? 3. Are you very particular about your clothes? 4. What size suit (shoes, gloves, etc.) do you wear? 5. What are your favourite colours? 6. What colour is best for an everyday suit (a formal suit, evening clothes, etc.)? 7. Why must you try things on before buying them? 8. What must you keep in mind when buying a suit of clothes (a new dress, a pair of shoes, etc.)? 9. Would you rather buy a cheap or an expensive coat (suit)? 10. What do the English mean by saying: "We are too poor to buy cheap things"?

4. Caught in the Rush Hour

1. What is the rush hour? 2. Why are there rush hours in big cities? 3. Have you ever been caught in the rush hour? 4. What is it like? How does it feel to find yourself moving slowly along with the crowd a) out of (into) the metro? b) along the underground passage? 5. Can you do anything or do you feel quite helpless and paralyzed in your movements? 6. What are the Do's and the Don't's of the rush hour?

Ex. 45. *Read the following article. Answer the questions, using the vocabulary*

of the lesson. Discuss the employment situation in Great Britain.

STAN LOOKS FOR A JOB AND GETS ADVICE

Stan and Iris were spending the last day of Stan's holidays painting the house. Another two doors and they would be through.

They broke off to have tea. There was no hurry, those two doors would not take long.

Iris switched on the radio for the six o'clock news and they heard the local news which came before it.

Stan enjoyed the cake Iris had made early that morning, and was taking a second cup of tea when the news reader started to read off the unemployment figures. Sixty there, 120 here and 300 at Blank's factory.

Stan, who up to that moment was only half listening, nearly upset his cup with shock. Blank's electronics factory was being closed.

I'll let Stan continue the story.

"I couldn't believe my ears. I was too shocked to hear the rest of the news properly.

"It brought my holiday to a sudden end. I couldn't keep my mind on house-painting any more. I managed to put a bit of paint on those doors, but it was a poor job."

Then followed the sad business of interviews with Ministry of Labour officials,* trying to arrange new jobs.

"Electronics engineer," the Ministry man repeated as Stan told him his job. "Nothing in that, I'm afraid. Got any other ideas?"

"I was wondering," said my friend Stan, "if you could get me a job as music teacher in local schools. I've a degree** in music."

The Ministry man looked at him in surprise and quickly said: "At your age it's unreasonable to think of becoming a teacher. You must accept the fact that you are a factory worker and are likely to remain one."

Questions

1. How did Stan and Iris spend the last day of Stan's holidays? 2. How did they manage with the job of house-painting? 3. Why did they decide to paint the house themselves? 4. Why was there no need for them to rush with the work? 5. How did Stan happen to learn about the employment situation in their part of the country? 6. What did he learn from the news broadcast? 7. How many people were known to be employed at Blank's electronics factory? 8. Why did Stan make such a poor job of the remaining doors? 9. What government organisation was expected to deal with the problem of finding employment for the redundant

---

* работники министерства труда в Англии

** диплом об окончании высшего учебного заведения

factory workers? 10. Could the Ministry man promise Stan employment as an electronics engineer any time in the near future? 11. What idea did Stan have about settling his problem? 12. Why did the Ministry official refuse to discuss it? 13. What are Stan's prospects for the future?

Ex. 46. *Read. the following, answer the questions, retell the text in English.*

ДАЖЕ, ЕСЛИ У ТЕБЯ ЕСТЬ ВЫСШЕЕ ОБРАЗОВАНИЕ

В день, когда Вивиан Вил получил диплом об окончании Лондонского политехнического института, будущее представлялось ему довольно безоблачным. Он устраивается на работу, будет трудиться по своей специальности зоолога...
Прошло девять месяцев, но 24-летний Вивиан Вил так и не получил работы. 71 раз он пытался найти ее и 71 раз возвращался ни с чем. Вивиан не проявлял особой привередливости. Работы просто не было.
Трудности, с которыми встретился Вивиан Вил те же, что и у десятков тысяч молодых специалистов, окончивших английские университеты и колледжи, находящихся сегодня в числе безработных. Газеты выбрали Вила лишь потому, что безработица среди выпускников высших учебных заведений является в Англии особенно острой. По крайней мере каждый шестой из закончивших в этом году английские вузы не имеет работы.

Questions

1. How did Vivian Ville picture his future? 2. What career did he dream of? 3. Why couldn't he find employment? 4. What is the situation with university and college graduates in Britain?

Ex. 47. Retell the following in English.

РАДИ РЕКЛАМЫ

В 1921 году, незадолго до постановки оперы «Любовь к трем апельсинам», Сергей Прокофьев, который жил в то время в Чикаго, стал получать почти ежедневно ящик апельсинов. Композитор был крайне удивлен.
Но вот однажды явился к нему тучный американец и сказал:
—Смит, представитель «Калифорниа фрут компани». У нашей фирмы есть для вас выгодное предложение. Надеюсь, наши апельсины пришлись вам по вкусу. Мы согласны выплатить вам 2,000 долларов, если слушателям станет ясно, что апельсины, о которых идет речь в вашей опере, продаются компанией «Калифорниа фрут компани». У меня на родине искусство не является рекламой, а я не торговец деликатесами, — резко ответил

Прокофьев торгашу.

for advertisement's sake; shortly before; "Love of Three Oranges"; to be shown to the public; Chicago; Sergei Prokofiev; almost daily; to be beside oneself with surprise; Smith of the California Fruit Company; to deal (in); to have an interesting business arrangement for smb; to find smth to one's taste; a grocer; a dealer

Ex. 48. *Read and retell the text. Discuss it.*

IMMIGRANT WORKERS IN BRITAIN

If we go into a cafe in London we may well find a Negro sitting alone at a table there. The waiters will not, as in many cafes in America, refuse to serve him. He comes, perhaps, from East Africa or the West Indies. Let us call him Davy.

If we start chatting with Davy he may tell us about himself, about his present situation and about his countrymen. He will tell us that there are about 10,000 coloured people in London, mostly seamen, students and unemployed. And they all can hardly make both ends meet. When they look for a job the Labour Exchanges* either refuse to recommend them or advise them to find jobs in another district.

When he calls at a factory for a job he may be told "all our jobs are taken" — yet a "Hands Wanted" notice** hangs outside the office. There is no use starting an argument about it. Davy has found that only the lowest paid jobs and the heaviest kinds of work are open to him. He had quite a good education, but he had no chance of getting a job in England as a clerk, not even as a bus conductor.

He had great difficulty in getting somewhere to live. He now lives in a room not fit to live in with ten other Negroes; each of them pays twice as much as a white family will pay for the whole room.

Employers say that white workers are very particular who works beside them; landlords*** say that white workers don't like Negroes living in the same building. There is little truth in it. If we call on some Saturday night at a dance hall in the East End attended by young people, Negroes and white, we see that they meet in easy friendliness. They don't seem to mind chatting and dancing with each other at all.

There have, it is true, been some British trade unions who were against the employment not only of coloured men but of German antifascists before and during the war, of Poles and Italians since the war. Not, though, because they

---

* биржа труда

** объявления о найме рабочей силы

*** владелец дома

were coloured or foreigners, but because employers gave the foreign workers lower wages and used it as an excuse to cut the British workers' wages or to get rid of the higher paid workers.

(from "The British Scene" by George Bidwell)

Ex. 49. *Use the following words and phrases in situations.*

1. My First Job

to graduate an institute; to look forward to; to be full of new plans and ideas; to be eager to do smth; to make use of one's knowledge; to turn out; to be different from what one expected; to ask for advice; to be on the safe side; to pick up things quickly; to be satisfied with one's job; to manage; to be determined to do smth well

2. The Employment Situation In Capitalist Countries

an article in the newspaper; to attract attention; the headline; to deal with; poor conditions of life; to raise prices; to cut wages (payment); to keep a family; to be unable to do smth; to make both ends meet; on top of all; an employer; to close a factory; to lose one's job; to join the army of millions of the unemployed

3. At the Shoe Shop

to need a pair of walking shoes; to be no good; worn out shoes; can't do without; a shoe shop; to hurry to serve; an attendant; to try on; a size larger (smaller); the exact size; to receive a new stock of shoes; to satisfy a customer; to like smth particularly; to smb's taste; not to mind paying a little extra; to wear well; it pays to buy an expensive thing; to be satisfied; excellent service

4. Sending a Telegram

the New Year; to send a telegram; to dictate smth over the telephone; either ... or; to go to the Post Office; a rush of customers; would rather; to make use of smth; to save time; to dictate the words; to count smth; to pay by post

5. Fire In the House

to leave a child alone; not to be safe; to pick up a box of matches; to burn the matches; to enjoy the new game; dangerous; to catch fire; to get frightened; to start crying; to attract attention; a neighbour; to catch the smell of smoke; to break the door; to rush in; to burn brightly; to save the child; to call the fire brigade; to put out the fire

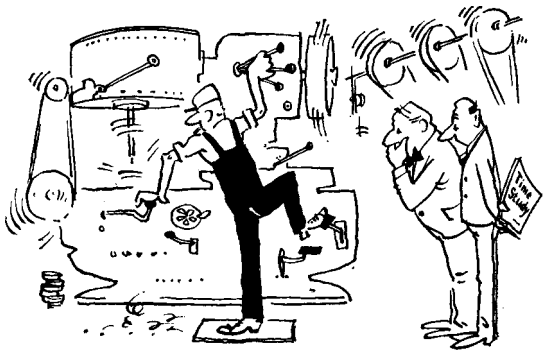
6. Caught In the Rain

to wake up; a bright Sunday morning; not to lose a minute; to pick up one's things; to rush to the station; to reach a place; to change (about the weather); not to expect; to rain cats and dogs; to get wet through; to ruin one's dress; to carry an umbrella about; to be on the safe side

7. How to Do Business

a new product; to appear in (on) the market; to attract buyers; to be in good taste; to sell at reasonable prices; a rush of customers; to have enough to satisfy smb's needs; to receive orders; to reach an agreement; to do excellent business in smth

Ex. 50. *Tell the story of the picture, using the words and phrases given below.*



Boss: Say, couldn't we find a job for the fellow's other leg?

an efficiency engineer; a machine tool; to catch smb's attention; to occur to smb; to be dissatisfied (with); to be idle.

Ex. 51. *Subjects for oral and written composition.*

1. Give a character-sketch of Danny.
2. Write a story of Danny's childhood.
3. Describe Danny's attempts to find a job.
4. Imagine Danny's life after he got the money, giving the story:
a) a realistic end; b) a happy end (Hollywood style).
5. Explain why Danny believed money to be the most important thing in the world.
6. Mr. Black's methods of doing business.
7. Explain the title of the story.
8. Unemployment in capitalist countries.

That's not for us! It's for university graduates.

Lesson Two

Text: The Car That Was (after "The Citadel" by A. J. Cronin[1])
Grammar: The Participle

THE CAR THAT WAS

Christine and Andrew went into the sitting-room. Suddenly there came the loud braying[2] of a Klaxon from outside. Only one motor horn in Aberalaw[3] could sound like that. It belonged to Con Boland.[4]

Hearing the car slow down and pull up at the gate, Christine and Andrew came out to meet the Bolands. The family had arrived in the reconstructed motor car — Con at the wheel in a bowler hat and enormous new gauntlets, with Mary and Terence beside him; the three other children sat close around Mrs. Boland, who had the infant in her arms, in the back, all packed like herrings in a tin.

Suddenly the horn began again: "Krr — krr — krr — krr —" Con had accidentally pushed the button in switching off and now it was stuck. The Klaxon would not stop.

"In the name of God," Con cried, "I'm wastin'[5] juice.[6] What's happened?"

"It's the button, Father," Mary told him calmly. She took it out with her little fingernail. The racket stopped.

"Ah, that's better," Con sighed. "How are ye, Mr. Manson, my boy? How d'you like the old car now? I've had her lengthened a good two feet. Isn't she[7] grand? Mind you, there's still a little trouble with the gearbox, but she never[8] broke down. We didn't quite manage the hill, as ye might say!"

"We only stuck a few minutes, Father," said Mary.

"Ah! Never mind," said Con. "I'11 soon put that right when I repair her again. How are ye, Mrs. Manson? Here we all are to wish ye a merry Christmas[9] and take our tea with ye!"

"Come in. Con," Christine smiled. "I like your gloves!"

"Christmas present from the wife," Con answered admiring the gauntlets. "Ah! What's gone wrong with this door?"

Unable to open the door he threw his long legs over it, climbed out helped the children and wife from the back, looked over the car with care — fondly removing a lump of mud from the windscreen — then tore himself away to follow the others to Vale View.[10]

They had a cheerful tea party. Con was in high spirits, proud of his car. "You'll not recognise her when she has a coat of paint." Mrs. Boland, as was her habit, drank lots of strong black tea. The children began upon the chocolate biscuits and ended with a fight for the last piece of bread. They cleared every plate upon the table with lightning speed.

But Con and his family could not stay long. Outside the light was failing

and Con, worried about his "juice", had doubts which he did not care to express about the functioning of his lamps.

The Bolands were on the point of leaving when Con delivered the invitation: "Come out and see us start."

Again Andrew and Christine stood at the gate while Con packed the car with the children. After a couple of swings[11] the engine obeyed and Con, with a triumphant nod towards them pulled on his gauntlets. Then he raised himself proudly into the driving seat.

At that very moment the car gave out a groan and sank to the ground. The wheels shot outwards, there was the sound of pieces dropping off; then the body of the car came to rest on the street level. In the front was Con clutching the wheel, in the back his wife, clutching the baby.

Andrew and Christine gave out a shriek of laughter. Once they began they could not stop. They laughed till they were weak.

"In the name of God,".Con said, rubbing his head and picking himself up, "she failed me." Seeing that none of the children were hurt that Mrs. Boland remained, pale but undisturbed, in her seat, he looked with sadness at the car lying in pieces. For a moment he seemed at a loss. Then his face brightened. He took Andrew by the arm and pointed with melancholy pride to the bonnet, beneath which the engine still made a few convulsive beats. "See that, Manson! She's still runnin'"

Somehow they dragged the remains into the back yard of Vale View. The Boland family went home on foot.

"What a day!" Andrew exclaimed when they had calmed down at last. "I'll never forget that look on Con's face as long as I live."

NOTES

1. **Cronin, Archibald Johnson,** born in 1896. An English physician and novelist, he was educated at Glasgow University. He was in general practice in South Wales (1921—24), and in London (1926—30). He is the author of "Hatter's Castle" (1931), 'The Stars Look Down" (1937), "The Keys of Kingdom" (1941), "The Green Years" (1944), "Shannon's Way" (1948), "Adventures in Two Worlds" (1952), "The Crusader's Tomb" (1956), "The Northern Light" (1958), "A Song of Sixpence" (1964) and other books.

2. The sound made by Con Boland's motor horn was loud and ugly, very much like the braying of an ass (ослиный рев).

3. **Aberalaw:** an imaginary mining town in South Wales.

4. **Con Boland,** dentist, who was to become Andrew Manson's lifelong friend.

5. Along with a heavy Irish accent Con Boland had a carelessness of speech which the author gives through the exact letter expression of the pronounced words: "ye", for "you", "wastin" for "wasting", "runnin" for

"running".

6. **juice** *(sl):* electric current; *зд.* ток от аккумулятора

7. **she:** the pronoun will often be used when speaking of the moon, a ship, etc.

8. **never:** used for emphasis's sake, a stronger form of not, rather colloquial. E.g. 1) That will never do! Это никуда не годится! 2) Never mind! Не обращай внимания! 3) He never said a word against the plan. Он ни слова не сказал против плана.

9. **Christmas:** also Xmas, a religious holiday; рождество Christmas Eve: Dec.24th; Christmas Day: Dec.25th. There's a custom to make presents at Christmas as well as send Christmas cards wishing a person "A Merry Christmas and a Happy New Year".

10. In England it is a tradition for suburban houses to have names, not numbers. People of high social position have country houses with names, that is why a house with a name seems "better" than a house with a number.

11. The car didn't have a starter and Con Boland would start the engine running with the help of a special handle (заводная ручка).

VOCABULARY

belong *vi* 1. принадлежать (быть собственностью) Everything in our country belongs **to** the people. 2. принадлежать, быть членом (общества, клуба, семьи и т. п.) What sport club do you belong **to?**

close *a* 1. близкий a close friend (relative, contact, etc.) 2. пристальный, тщательный a close look (translation, etc.); close *adv* близко, рядом He sat close to the window. closely *adv* пристально, внимательно, тщательно to read (watch, examine, study, etc.) smth closely

accident *n* 1. несчастный случай, катастрофа, авария He was badly hurt **in** a railway accident. **Phr.** meet **with** (have) an accident попасть в катастрофу, потерпеть аварию 2. случай, случайность I met him quite **by** accident. accidentally *adv* случайно, нечаянно

stick (stuck) 1. *vi (lit. & fig.)* застревать Their car got stuck **in** the mud. The words stuck **in** her throat. 2. *vt* наклеивать, приклеивать You must stick a stamp **on** the letter before you post it. **Phr.** stick **to** the word (friends), one's principles, etc.) быть верным слову (друзьям), придерживаться принципов и т. п.

waste *vt* тратить (попусту, зря) to waste time (money, energy, words, etc.) **on** smb/smth waste *n* пустая трата (времени, денег и т. п.) It's (a) waste of time arguing (to argue) with him.

repair *vt* ремонтировать, чинить to repair a car (a watch, a road, a house, etc.); The car is **under** repair = The car is being repaired. The shop is closed **for** repairs.

wish *vt* 1. желать, хотеть What do you wish to have for your birthday? 2.

(по)желать to wish smb luck (a pleasant journey, a Happy New Year, etc.); wish *n* желание, пожелание

care *n* 1. внимание, осторожность You should do your work **with** care. Take care not to break the glass. 2. забота, попечение, ответственность The children were left **in (under)** our care when their parents went away on a holiday. **Phr.** take care **of** smb/smth (по)заботиться о; присматривать за кем-л/чем-л to take care of one's family (one's children, one's parents, one's/smb's health; the tickets, one's luggage, etc.); care *vt/vi* 1. проявлять интерес, не быть безразличным; быть склонным, хотеть *(чаще употребляется в отриц. и вопр. контексте)* I don't care what they say behind my back. She does not seem to care **about** anything. I don't much care **about** going there now. Would you care to see the new film? 2. любить, нравиться, увлекаться *(чаще употреб. в отриц. контексте)* I don't think she really cares **for** him. He does not care **for** meat.

cheer 1. *vt* приветствовать громкими возгласами; поощрять одобрительными восклицаниями The people cheered the cosmonauts as they drove along the streets. 2. *vt/vi* утешать(ся), ободрять(ся) The,good news cheered everybody. He cheered **up** when he saw us. **Phr.** Cheer up! Не унывай! cheerful *a* веселый, бодрый, жизнерадостный a cheerful person (face, voice, smile, word, etc.); cheerless *a* безрадостный, унылый a cheerless room (place, day, etc.)

habit *n* привычка a good (bad, strange, old, harmful, etc.) habit; There are many things that you do **from** habit. **Phr.** be **in** the habit **of** doing smth иметь обыкновение что-л делать; get **into** the habit **of** doing smth приобрести привычку

clear *vt* 1. очищать, чистить; убирать, прибирать In winter the streets have to be cleared **of** snow. Please clear the table. 2. clear **up** выяснять; распутывать (дело) to clear **up** a matter **with** smb

speed *n* скорость, быстрота He drove the car **at** a speed **of** one hundred kilometres an hour. **Phr. at** full speed полным ходом; на полной скорости; **with** lightning speed с быстротой молнии, молниеносно; speed-limit *n* дозволенная скорость; speed (sped) 1. *vi* спешить, идти поспешно; мчаться (о машине) The car sped past. 2. speed **up** ускорять (работу, производство и т. п.) to speed **up** work (production, etc.)

worry *vt/vi* беспокоить(ся), волновать(ся) What is worrying you? Don't worry **about** such little things. Everything will be all right, don't worry.

doubt *vt* сомневаться (в чем-л, ком-л) We never doubted his word (honesty, knowledge, etc.); doubt *n* сомнение There is no doubt that he can manage the job alone. He is sure to come, there is no doubt **about** it. doubtless *adv* == without doubt He will doubtless help us with the problem.

deliver *vt* 1. доставлять, вручать (почту и т. п.) to deliver letters (parcels, goods, railway tickets, etc.) 2. произносить (торжественно) to deliver a speech (an invitation, etc.); to deliver a lecture (a report, etc.) прочесть лекцию

(доклад и т. п.) delivery *n* поставка, доставка

obey *vt* слушаться, повиноваться, подчиняться to obey smb (smb's orders, smb's instructions, etc.); (dis)obedience *n* (не)послушание, (не)повиновение, (dis)obedient *a* (не)послушный, (не)покорный a (dis)obedient child, etc.; to be (dis)obedient **to** smb

sink (sank, sunk) *vi (lit. & fig-.)* тонуть, идти ко дну; опускаться; погружаться. Wood does not sink in water. The ship was sinking very slowly. She sank **into** an armchair. His voice sank **to** a whisper. Her heart sank.

drop 1. *vi* падать The temperature has dropped. 2. *vt* ронять, обронить; бросать, опускать Be careful not to drop the box. You have dropped your handkerchief. Please drop these letters **in** a letter-box. 3. бросать, прекращать to drop smoking (a habit, a subject; one's friends, etc.) **Phr.** drop **in** (**at** some place) заходить (куда-л)

fail 1. *vt* обманывать ожидания, подводить He'll never fail you. The weather failed us. 2. *vi* ослабевать, терять силы His health (strength, etc.) is beginning to fail. The light was failing 3. *vt* не исполнить, не сделать, забыть He failed to come. Don't fail to write to us.

point *vt* показывать, указывать to point **at** (**to**) smth/smb; to point **out** smb's mistakes (faults, etc.); He pointed **out** that the task was very important, point *n* 1. главное, основное,, суть; смысл the point of a story (a speech, a joke, an argument, etc.); I missed the point of the story. His answer was not **to** the point. There is no point **in** arguing. 2. пункт, вопрос We have got some points to discuss. **Phr.** point of view точка зрения be **on** the point **of** doing smth собираться сделать что-л

run (ran, run) 1. *vi* работать (о механизме, машине) I dropped my watch and it does not run. 2. *vi* ходить, курсировать (о транспорте) Bus 27 does not run here. 3. *vt* вести, управлять, возглавлять to run a factory (a farm, a picture-gallery, etc.) **Phr.** run smb **down** сбить кого-л (машиной); run smb **over** задавить кого-л (машиной); run **into** smb/ smth столкнуться, наскочить, наехать на кого-л/что-л

WORD COMBINATIONS

slow down замедлить ход (темп и т. п.)
pull up (at the door, gate, etc.) остановиться у, подъехать к (подъезду и т.п.)
like herrings in a tin как сельди в бочке
in the name of (smb) от имени (кого-л)
break down сломаться, выйти из строя (о машине, механизме)
put smth right исправить что-л
go wrong быть в неисправности
tear oneself away (from) оторваться (от)
be in high (low) spirits быть в приподнятом (подавленном) настроении
a coat of paint (dust, etc.) слой краски (пыли и т. п.)

be at a loss быть в недоумении, растеряться
on foot пешком

EXERCISES ON THE TEXT

Ex. 1. *Answer the following questions:*

1. How did Christine and Andrew know that the Boland family was coming to pay them a visit? 2. How did the Bolands arrive? 3. What did the Mansons see when they came out to the gate to welcome their friends? 4. How did Con explain their visit? 5. What was the real reason for the visit? 6. What did Con have to say about his car? 7. Why was he so proud of it? 8. Why didn't the Bolands use the doors to get out of the car? 9. How did the party go? 10. Why was Con eager to start home early? 11. Why did he think it best not to express out loud his doubts about the functioning of the car lamps? 12. How did the family prepare for the trip home? 13. What happened just as Con raised himself into the driving seat? 14. Why couldn't Christine and Andrew help laughing when they saw the car falling to pieces before their very eyes? 15. Was anyone hurt in the accident? 16. How were Con's efforts repaid? 17. How did the Bolands reach home that night?

Ex. 2. **Find in the text the English for:**

а) 1. гостиная; 2. с ребенком на руках; 3. как сельди в бочке; 4. пожелать веселого рождества; 5. окинуть взглядом; 6. веселое чаепитие; 7. быть в приподнятом настроении; 8. затеять драку из-за последнего куска хлеба; 9. съесть все до последней крошки; 10. с быстротой молнии; 11. сомнения, которые он не пожелал высказать; 12. торжественно пригласить; 13. победоносно кивнуть; 14. натянуть краги; 15. испустить стон; 16. медленно осесть на землю; 17. истерически захохотать; 18. потирать голову; 19. подняться с земли; 20. взять под руку; 21. отправиться домой пешком;
б) 1. автомобильный сигнал; 2. замедлить ход; 3. подъехать и остановиться у ворот; 4. сидеть за рулем; 5. на заднем сидении; 6. заклинить; 7. выключить мотор; 8. удлинить кузов машины на добрых два фута; 9. мелкие неполадки; 10. коробка передач; 11. выйти из строя; 12. вылезти из машины; 13. ветровое стекло; 14. слой краски; 15. шоферское сидение; 17. кузов машины; 18. капот (двигателя); 19. работать (о двигателе).

Ex. 3. **Give the four forms of the following verbs:**

sit, sink, stick, drag, drink, nod, rise, raise, tie, stop, throw, tear, obey, run, rub, hurt, put, pull

Ex. 4. **Complete the following sentences according to the model.**

Model: 1. There is something wrong with the door, it ... (to open). There **is** something wrong with the door, it **won't open.**
2. There was something wrong with the door it ... (to open). There **was** something wrong with the door it **wouldn't open.**

1. There is something the matter with the car engine, it ... (to run). 2. Give me your pen please, the one I have ... (to write). 3. The child was told not to make a noise, but he ... (to obey). 4. We told him to drop smoking as it was harmful to his health, but he ... (to listen). 5. He was trying hard to build up a fire, but the wood ... (to burn). 6. She wanted to write down on paper what she thought and felt, but the right words ... (to come).

Ex. 5. **Use constructions with "won't" ("wouldn't") instead of words in bold type. Make other necessary changes.**

1. What's gone wrong with the suit-case? I **can't open** it. 2. We asked him to slow down, but he **never listened** to us. 3. We used to be friends at school, but when we happened to meet ten years later he **didn't even recognize** me. 4. She was tired and needed a rest, but she **didn't even want to hear** of it. 5. We wanted to know the reason for his absence, but he **refused to discuss** it. 6. He gave the door another push, but it **didn't open.**

Ex. 6. **Translate the following sentences using "won't" ("wouldn't").**

1. Ему следовало бы серьезно заняться своим здоровьем, но он и **слышать об этом не хочет.** 2. Зная, что ему одному трудно справиться с заданием, мы решили помочь ему. Но он **ни за что не хотел** принять нашу помощь. 3. С ней было бесполезно разговаривать на эту тему, она **упорно молчала.** 4. Эта марка **никак не приклеивается.** Дай, пожалуйста, другую. 5. Я **ни за что не заговорю с** ним первый. 6. Его явно что-то волновало, но он **никак не хотел говорить** в чем дело. 7. От метро до его дома всего лишь пять минут ходу, но он **ни за что не пойдет пешком.** 8. Его несколько раз предупреждали, чтобы он не ездил на такой скорости, но он и **слушать не хотел,** пока не попал в аварию.

Ex. 7. **Translate the following sentences using "once".**

1. Стоит только завести разговор на эту тему, и он будет продолжаться до бесконечности. 2. **Уж если** он принял решение, то ничто не заставит его изменить его. 3. **Стоит вам только** закурить, и вы пропали. 4. **Если вы**

хоть раз не сдержите свое обещание, они больше не будут верить вам. 5. **Стоит вам только** понять это правило, все остальное будет легко. 6. **Стоит вам только** начать читать эту книгу, и вы уже не сможете оторваться, пока не прочитаете ее до конца.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBS

Ex. 8. **Learn the following phrases and a) recall the sentences in which they are used in the text, b) use them in sentences of your own.**

belong **to;** slow **down;** pull **up** (at); arrive/come **in** a car; **at** the wheel; **in** smb's arms; **in** the back/front; have trouble **with;** break **down;** go wrong **with;** climb **out; with** care; tear oneself **away from; in** high spirits; be proud **of;** fight **for;** worry **about; on** the point **of** doing smth; **with** a nod; pull **on** gloves; give **out** a groan (a shriek **of** laughter); sink **to** the ground; **on** street level; pick oneself **up; at** a loss; **with** sadness; take smb **by** the arm; point **to; with** pride; **on** foot; calm **down.**

Ex. 9. **Fill in the blanks with prepositions or adverbs:**

A. 1. We shall continue our way ... foot as soon as the storm calms The roads here are too bad for cars. 2. Say something to cheer her she's ... low spirits today. 3. I called the wrong number ... accident. 4.'You needn't worry ... little things, it's the big things that are important. 5. "You can use my telephone," the secretary told me ... a nod the telephone ... the desk. 6. Something went wrong ... my car the other day, I couldn't get it started. 7. They cleared the road ... the remains ... the broken car so that traffic could move. 8. Pointing ... a comfortable chair he said: "Make yourself at home." 9. He still stuck ... his story which did not change after many repetitions. 10. As she pulled ... the gloves she looked ... the room ... the last time to see if she hadn't left anything ... . 11. The baby calmed ... as soon as he was ... his mother's arms. 12. The doctors had a long and hard fight ... her life. 13. He took the blind man ... the arm and led him ... the street. 14. If you are ... doubt ... the route, have another look ... the map. 15. Of the two bags he usually took ... him ... any trip, one was always packed ... books. 16. Before taking a decision we must clear the matter ... ... them. 17. He no longer seems to care ... football as he once did. 18. She was ... the point ... saying something, but changing her mind remained silent. 19. Standing there ... the middle ... the big hall he felt ... a loss and for a moment did not know how to start his speech. 20. The car was going ... full speed.

B. Barry belonged ... a number ... clubs. He was proud ... his collection ... membership cards and often took them ... ... his wallet ... the day to look ... them. Now after changing his job Barry had 25 pounds a week to spend ... himself. He had left the garage ... Nick's care. He didn't see much point ... going

on working there. Why waste any more years ... a job that gave him nine pounds a week only?
Now ... the wheel ... his new car he was driving ... James' restaurant. He liked driving ... London late ... night when the roads were clear ... traffic and he didn't have to be careful or afraid ... an accident.
He slowed ... and pulled ... ... the curb arriving ... the restaurant. James came hurrying ... to meet him.
Barry climbed ... ... the car. "Come ..., and have a drink," James invited. Barry followed him ... . It was a warm, smoky place that smelt of rich cigars and perfume. One could run into all kinds of famous people there. Barry stared ... each of the women-diners as he walked ... a place ... the bar which James had pointed ....

(after "Jack Would Be a Gentleman" by G. Freeman)

Ex. 10. **Give the English for the following phrases, using the preposition "to" in its different meanings. Use the phrases in sentences of your own.**

I. а) поехать в Ленинград (на Дальний Восток, на север, к морю, за город); переехать в другой район; пойти на почту (в магазин); повернуть направо (налево); поспешить (броситься) к кому-л; отвести к врачу; по пути в город; по дороге в институт; поездка в горы; вход в парк;

б) ходить в школу; лечь в больницу; пойти на рынок.

II. повыситься до 20 градусов, упасть до нуля (о температуре); понизиться до шепота (о голосе); считать до десяти; подойти к концу повествования; привести к победе.

III. без двадцати шесть; без четверти пять; по сей день; до конца; от понедельника до субботы; от апреля до сентября; от начала до конца.

IV. а) разговаривать с кем-л; написать письмо другу; крикнуть кому-л; позвонить кому-л; послать письмо (телеграмму) друзьям; слушать кого-л; обратиться к кому-л за помощью;

б) представлять большой интерес (много значить, быть существенным, важным) для кого-л; приключиться с кем-л.

V. быть горьким на вкус (теплым на ощупь, неприятным на слух); радовать глаз; быть по вкусу кому-л.

VI. к чьему-л удивлению (разочарованию, восторгу, удовольствию).

VII. а) быть вежливым (добрым, внимательным, безразличным, холодным, милым) к кому-л; быть благодарным кому-л;

б) описать чью-л внешность кому-л; продиктовать письмо секретарю; объяснить правила уличного движения кому-л; доказать что-то кому-л.

VIII. а) приходиться двоюродным братом кому-л; быть верным другом кому-л; оставаться чужим человеком для кого-л; быть замужем за кем-л; быть женатым на ком-л;

б) быть ассистентом у профессора (секретарем директора).

MISCELLANEOUS PHRASES

принадлежать кому-л; обращать внимание на детали; приносить пользу (вред) делу; говорить по существу; придерживаться принципов; положить конец спорам; привести к хорошим результатам; ожидать с нетерпением приглашения (праздника); показать на вывеску (картину); заняться делом (работой); разбиться на куски; разорвать в клочья; костюм, сделанный на заказ; право на образование (труд); плечом к плечу; лицом к лицу.

EXERCISES IN LEXICOLOGY

Ex. 11. *Recast the following sentences, using nouns with "-ness" instead of the words in bold type. Make all other necessary changes.*

1. I was surprised to see how **calmly** he took the news. 2. She looked at the child **fondly.** 3. There was a **sad** feeling in his heart. 4. The very fact that the situation was **hopeless** seemed to give her new strength. 5. He had ruined his own chances by being **foolish** and **thoughtless.** 6. The accident had happened through his being careless. 7. We strongly doubted that he would remain firm in his decision to make a fresh start. 8. They were kind and friendly, and it touched me greatly.

Ex. 12. *Give words of the same root in Russian- Compare the meaning.*

motor, horn, chocolate, racket, present (n), infant, triumphant, melancholy, reconstruction, convulsive, to pack, to function

Ex. 13. *In the following groups of sentences compare the meaning of the verbs in bold type. Translate the sentences into Russian. Give your own examples.*

1. a) The children were too excited to be **calmed** at once. b) It took us some time to **calm down** after the argument. 2. a) The shops are almost sure to be **closed** at this hour. b) The factory was **closed down. 3.** a) Leave that TV set alone, you'll be **breaking** it. b) The car **broke down** when we were half way between the two cities. 4. a) Don't add any more wood into the fire. It's **burning** brightly enough, b) By the time the fire brigade arrived the house **had burned down.** 5. a) He died **fighting** for his country, b) He **fought down** the anger rising in him and continued speaking in a calm even voice.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 14. *Fill in the blanks with a suitable word in the correct form. Translate the*

sentences into Russian.

accident; to belong; to care (2); care (2); to doubt; doubt (2); to drop (2); to fail; habit (2); to obey; to run; to sink; to speed; speed; speedy; to stick (2); to waste; to wish; to worry (2)

1. We all ... the newly-married couple the best of luck. 2. Orders are given to be .... 3. Five minutes from the end, we were still in ... about the results of the match. 4. He would not ... his time on people who refused to help themselves. 5. The train ... through the night, taking us farther and farther away from home. 6. She didn't really ... what people said about her as long as she felt she was doing the right thmg. 7. When she heard that the plane was reported missing, her heart … . 8. He started up the engine to see if it was ... properly. 9. We all had free use of the bicycle as it didn't seem to ... to anyone in particular. 10. I've always known him to be a truthful person and have no reason to ... his words. 11. Bad ... die hard. 12. He chose his words with … as he didn't feel quite safe on the subject. 13. Though unexpected questions were asked and ... openly expressed, he ... to his story. 14. He had never ... for football or any other of the noisy outdoor games. 15. He had been hoping for a ... decision and was disappointed to learn about another week's wait. 16. The car was picking up ... . 17. It was the runner's bad luck that he met with an .. almost having reached the finish. 18. We hadn't heard from our friend lately and were beginning to get… . 19. If there's no hope of reaching agreement it's always better to ... a subject than waste time arguing. 20. The child had a must upsetting ... of staring at people. 21. The young man was moved to hospital where he would be getting the best of medical ... . 22. She ... over the least thing that goes wrong. 23. He had been given the name in fun, but somehow it ... . 24. That night the temperature ... sharply to five below zero. 25. He believed in his friends, they had never ... him.

Ex. 15. *Paraphrase the following, using words and. word combinations given below. Make all necessary changes.*

to care (2); to drop; to drop in (at); to waste; to obey; to fail (2); to stick (to) (2); to cheer up; to put right; to slow down; to take care of (2); from habit; without doubt (2); in low spirits; at a loss; in the habit (of); no point (in); to go wrong (2).

1. He seemed **to have little liking** for modern jazz. 2. **It was useless** trying to change the arrangement. Everything had been settled weeks ago. 3. Though there was no need to, she continued getting up early **because she had always got up early.** 4. He went away leaving his affairs in terrible disorder; it would take time **to get them arranged satisfactorily.** 5. I'd been watching him closely and noticed his eyes suddenly widen with fright; **clearly** something **unpleasant**

had happened. 6. Approaching the turn the car **started moving slower.** 7. The difficulties **were dealt with** one by one. 8. **It was all the same to him** whether he won or lost the game. 9. His kind words **raised my spirits.** 10. Not every habit is easy **to get rid of.** 11. All his efforts to get them to make up they; quarrel **were useless.** 12. He promised to let me know if things **turned out badly.** 13. She said she would **pay me a short visit** some afternoon. 14. His son **had disappointed** him, he had had such high hopes for the boy. 15. The woman was warned **to keep** to the facts of the accident. 16. He said he would **arrange matters with** the tickets, luggage and all the rest of it. 17. It was **most certainly** the funniest joke I'd ever heard. 18. She **was used to** taking a cup of tea in the afternoon. 19. He **was uncertain** what to do or say. 20. She was so excited at the news that **the right words wouldn't come.** 21. He **wouldn't change a word in** his story. 22. She was **gloomy arid depressed,** not like her usual self at all. 23. Children are expected **to do as they are told.**

Ex. 16. *Speak on the following topics, using the words and expressions given below.*

1. Con Boland Reconstructs the Car

to become too small for the family needs; a bright (wonderful, perfectly, splendid) idea; to come into one's head; to cut the car body in two; to lengthen the car a good two feet; to work day and night; to be in a hurry to finish the job; to hope to give the car a new coat of paint; to have no doubts that ...; to hold the whole family; to run well; to one's own taste; to admire; to be proud of

2. On the Way to Vale View

to decide to pay smb a surprise visit; to pack the car with the children; like herrings in a tin; beside oneself with excitement; to risk it; to be (get) stuck; to have a little trouble with the gearbox; (the engine) not to pull properly; not to break down; to manage the hill; to push from behind; to arrive safely

3. The Bolands Arrive

the loud braying of the horn; to attract attention; to belong to smb; to make a terrible noise; to slow down; to pull up at the gate; to switch off; to push in a button; to get stuck; an awful racket; to put smth right; to be unable to tear oneself away from; would rather; to look over with care; to remove a lump of mud

4. The Tea Party

cheerful; in high spirits; to talk of nothing but ...; to enjoy oneself; to get lots of pleasure out of doing smth; to push; to pull; with lightning speed; to clear every plate; to have a good time; tasty things; to be in the habit of doing smth; to drink lots of strong black tea

5. The Accident

to have doubts; the functioning of the lamps; to have no time to waste; to use the handle to start the engine; after a couple of swings; to obey; to raise oneself into the driving seat; to pull on one's gauntlets; to give a triumphant nod; smth unexpected; to happen; to sink to the ground with a groan; to shoot outwards; to drop off; to fall to pieces; to come to rest on street level; to come as a surprise to smb; to make a very funny picture; in the front (back); to clutch

6. After the Accident

to pick oneself up; to rub one's head; to be at a loss; to fail to understand the reason for smth; to be worried about; to be all right; to remain 'm one's seats; pale, but undisturbed; to hold the baby in one's arms; to cheer up; to brighten; to take smb by the arm; to believe that one's efforts have not been wasted; to point to smth with melancholy pride; (the engine) to be still running; to make a few convulsive beats; to lie in pieces; to be fit for nothing; to know how to deal with the remains; to remove from the road; to drag away; to go home on foot

SPECIAL DIFFICULTIES

Ex. 17. *Translate the following sentences using the verbs "to rise" or "to raise" according to the sense.*

1. Закончив письмо, он **встал** из-за стола и отнес его секретарю печатать. 2. Как только солнце **поднялось**, туристы сразу же отправились в путь. 3. Машина промчалась мимо на большой скорости. **подняв** облако пыли. 4. Во время переговоров были **подняты** серьезные вопросы. 5. Не следует **повышать** голос, с детьми надо разговаривать спокойно.

Ex. 18. Fill in the blanks with "little", "a little", "few", "a few".

1. It was to be only a family affair, so ... people were invited. 2. I have ... doubts but I'd rather not mention them now. 3. I have ... money, I can't let you have any. 4. She got ... letters with New Year's wishes this year, usually she gets many. 5. "Give the door another coat of paint." "I can't, I've too ... paint." 6. I must say I am ... worried about his health. 7. He is a very obedient child, his parents have ... trouble with him. 8. He hardly said more than ... words the whole evening.

Ex. 19. Translate the following using "little", "a little", "few", "a few".

1. У меня есть немного денег, могу одолжить (дать) тебе. 2. En удлинили пальто на несколько сантиметров, и оно теперь выглядит лучше. 3. Она мало изменилась, ее легко узнать. 4. Нам надо обсудить еще несколько пунктов соглашения. 5. Устал? — Да, немного. 6. Мало кто любит рисковать. 7. Он говорит много, а делает мало. 8. Мне в этом доме мало что принадлежит. 9. Он немного знает французский, обратитесь к нему.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

The Participle

Participle I

Ex. 20. *Study the forms of Participle I and the way they are rendered in Russian*

non-perfect*	1. He listened in, **lying** on the sofa. 2. **Arriving** in Leningrad we went sightseeing at once. 3. She went out **closing** the door behind her.	1. Он слушал радио, **лежа** на диване. 2. **Приехав** в Ленинград, мы сразу же отправились осматривать город. 3. Она вышла, **закрыв** за собой дверь.
non-perfect	4. They went along the path **leading** to the river. 5. A crowd of children watched the house **being painted.**	4. Они шли по тропинке, **ведущей** к реке. 5. Толпа детей наблюдала, **как красили** дом.
— t-4 perfect	6. **Having packed** my things I went to call a taxi. 7. **Having been examined**** by the doctor, they were allowed to join the sports club.	6. **Упаковав** вещи, я пошел вызвать такси. **7. После того как их осмотрел** врач, им разрешили вступить в спортивный клуб.

Ex. 21. Give all the possible forms of Participle 1 to the following infinitives:

to put, to open, to strike, to push, to arrive, to hear, to stop, to enter, to finish, to live

* Participle I, non-perfect form, may denote an action simultaneous to that expressed by the finite form of the verb (No 1), closely preceding it (No 2) and following it (No 3).
** Participle I, perfect form, passive, is rather uncommon.

Ex. 22. Give attributive phrases using Participle I and explain them ' according to the model. Translate the phrases into Russian.

Model: (a) a child; to sleep (b) a sleeping child
a sleeping child a child that is sleeping
a fish; to fly a flying fish
a flying fish a fish that can fly (that flies)

1. a woman; to smile 2. children; to laugh 3. a look; to understand; 4. a building; to burn 5. a lamp; to stand 6. a man; to know 7. a ship; to sink 8. indifference; to seem 9. a story; to touch 10. a thought; to disturb 11. interest; to grow 12. light; to blind 13. winter; to come 14. a crowd; to cheer 15. a machine; to add 16. a page; to miss 17. a bus; to pass 18. eyes; to search 19. a remark; to cut 20. a look; to question

Ex. 23. Open the brackets, using the correct form of Participle I. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. She sat in a comfortable armchair (to smoke) a cigarette. 2. (to put) aside the newspaper, she raised her eyes at me. 3. We watched the delegation (to show) into the hall. 4. (to visit) the museum before, I knew my way easily. 5. (to rise), the secretary put down the newspaper. 6. (to stop) before the traffic lights, he saw to his surprise it was almost eight o'clock. 7. (to work) as a taxi-driver for twenty years, he knew every little corner of the town. 8. I felt the car pick up speed, (to look) over at the speedometer, I noticed we were making a hundred. 9. The house (to build) at the corner of the street will be a library.

Ex. 24. *Replace the parts in bold type by Participle I (non-perfect form, active) according to the model.*

M o d e l I She looked down at her son **who was sleeping on the sofa.**
(attribute) She looked down at her son **sleeping on the sofa.**

1. They passed a group of workers **who were repairing the road.** 2. He will leave at 10, just in time to meet the train **that will arrive at 10.30.** 3. It always gives me pleasure to help students **who work hard.** 4. The windows **that face the garden** were open. 5. We drove up to the front door of a tall house **which stood a little back from the road.** 6. Near the dock he ran into a sailor **who was returning from town.** 7. I've received a letter from him **which says** that he is coming next month. 8. He couldn't fall asleep because of the noise **that was coming from the street.** 9. He threw aside the letter **that was lying on top** and picked up the next. 10. She got on the train **that was going to Moscow.**

M o d e l II (adverbial modifier of time) most of all to meet her.	That night **while he was walking down the avenue** he wished most of all to meet her. (While) **Walking down the avenue,** he wished

1. **While she was clearing the table** she thought of the uselessness of such parties. 2. **When I saw** that it was useless to argue with him, I dropped the subject. 3. **He got off at Sverdlov Square,** and walked fast towards the Bolshoi Theatre, 4. **When he arrived at the station,** he didn't find anyone to meet him. 5. **The girl took a sheet of paper** and wrote the first words that came into her head. 6. Then she stopped suddenly, **as she remembered the presence of the children.** 7. **As he pulled up at the house,** he was surprised to see no light in the windows. 8. **While grandfather was enjoying the smoke** he thought over his present situation. 9. **When he saw them,** he stopped to let them catch up with him. 10. **As she entered the garden,** she saw her father repairing the car.

M o d e l III (adverbial modifier of reason)	(1)	**As he was busy,** he refused the invitation. **Being busy,** he refused the invitation.
	(2)	She turned to me for help **because she did not know how to deal with the problem.** She turned to me for help, **not knowing hiw to deal with the problem.**

1. **He saw his mistake** and stopped arguing. 2. **As she was very tired,** she fell asleep the moment her head touched the pillow. 3. **As he was sure** that he was right, he felt calm and undisturbed. 4. She stopped, **she didn't know which way to follow.** 5. He decided to change his job, **because he was not fit for it.**

M o d e 1 IV (adverbial modifier of manner or attending circumstances)	He went out and **closed the door behind him.** He went out **closing the door behind him.**

1. "I would rather start for the station immediately," she said and **looked up at the clock.** 2. He sat by the open window and **watched the people** passing by. 3. She answered all my questions calmly and **tried to look indifferent.** 4. They stood on the doorstep and **watched the car as it drove away.** 5. He entered the room, he **whistled gaily.** 6. He stood before the house where he grew as a child and **thought of many things.** 7. She lay on the sofa and **listened to the radio.** 8. He smoked all the time and **usually lighted a fresh cigarette from the end of the last.**

Ex. 25. *Paraphrase the parts in bold type, using Participle I (perfect form, active*[*]*)*

1. **After they had repaired the car,** they drove on, though it was past midnight. 2. **When I packed all my things,** I still had enough time to write a few letters. 3. They were old friends, **they had been at school together.** 4. For an hour or so he watched a lovely film that he knew by heart, **as he had seen it at least ten times.** 5. When he was told that he would go there by plane, he felt excited, **as he had never travelled by air before.** 6. **When we had reached the top of the mountain,** we sank to the ground, too tired to do anything. 7. **After he had worked at the Institute for five years,** he decided to take a postgraduate course.

Ex. 26. *Paraphrase the parts in bold. type using Participle I (passive form).*

1. The experiment **which is being made in our laboratory** will be very important for our future work. 2. **The letter was written in pencil,** it was difficult to read. 3. They looked at the house **which was being built on the other side of the river.** 4. **As he was not allowed to read,** he mostly spent his time listening to the radio. 5. He asked for additional explanation as **he was not satisfied with the answer.**

Ex. 27. *Translate the following sentences using Participle I in the correct form.*

1. **Дав ему обещание,** я не мог не прийти. 2. **Прослужив в армии два года,** он вернулся взрослым человеком. 3. «Я бы хотела, чтобы меня поняли правильно», сказала она, **улыбаясь.** 4. Она сидела молча, **уставившись на огонь.** 5. Окна, **которые выходили на мост,** были открыты. 6. **Узнав меня,** она крикнула, чтобы я остановился и подождал ее. 7. **Так как он сам был веселым человеком,** он умел подбодрить и других. 8. Чтобы успеть на поезд, **который прибывает в 8 утра,** она должна была встать очень рано. 9. Домик, **который стоял в стороне от дороги,** принадлежал учителю школы. 10. **Он понял свою ошибку** и перестал спорить. 11. **Подходя к дому,** он увидел, как погас свет на первом этаже. 12. Дорога, **которая сейчас ремонтируется,** будет значительно шире после ремонта. 13. **Войдя в комнату,** она сразу заметила какую-то перемену. 14. **Закончив лекцию,** профессор оглядел аудиторию, **ожидая вопросов.** 15. **Подходя к дому,** я вспомнила, что забыла опустить письмо. 16. **Узнав меня,** он подошел к нашей группе и попросил разрешения присоединиться к нам. 17. **Будучи в хорошем расположении духа,** он был весел и разговорчив.

---

[*] The perfect form of Participle I is used only in the function of an adverbial modifier. It's never used as an attribute. It always denotes an action preceding that of a finite verb.

Participle II

Ex. 28. *Study the use of Participle II in the following sentences, state their functions.*[*]

1. ***He seemed*** *frightened.*
2. The boys looked at the *broken* ***window with*** *frightened* ***faces.***
3. Here is a letter *addressed* ***to you.***

Ex. 29. **(a) Compare Participle I and Participle II in the following attributive phrases;**
(b) translate them into Russian;
(c) explain them according to the model.

Model: (1) A **burning** cigarette: a cigarette that is burning;
a burnt letter: a letter that has been burnt.
(2) a **promising** student: a student that is talented and promises to become a good specialist.
a **promised** trip: a trip that has been promised.

1. disturbing silence — disturbed silence; 2. a hurting remark — a hurt look; 3. a sinking ship — a sunk ship; 4. a pleasing smile — a pleased smile; 5. a stopping train — a stopped train; 6. a surprising expression — a surprised expression; 7. a frightening look — a frightened look; 8. an exciting film — an excited child.

Ex. 30. **Paraphrase the parts in bold type using Participle II according to pattern 3 in the chart.**

1. There were a lot of foreign guests at the conference **that was held in May.** 2. The first thing that attracted his attention was a big vase **that was filled with beautiful roses.** 3. We sat down on the ground **that was covered with dry leaves.** 4. I reached for the glass **that was held out to me.** 5. He looked around the coffee-shop **that was packed with people** and moved to the table **that was marked "Reserved".** 6. Entering the station I saw a hurrying man **who was followed by a porter.** 7. They all had to obey the instructions **that were given by the head clerk.** 8. He acted on the plan **that had been worked out a long time ago.** 9. She didn't want to see him for reasons **that had already been mentioned.**

[*] Participle II may also be used in the function of an adverbial modifier of time, reason and concession, e.g.
(1) Pleased with himself, he left the office in high spirits.
(2) When asked, he answered that he didn't know anything about it.
(3) Though frightened, he didn't show it.

Ex. 31. **Translate the following sentences, using Participle II.**

1. У него был очень **испуганный** вид. 2. Эта телеграмма пришла вместе с почтой, **доставленной** утром. 3. Я с трудом нес чемодан, **набитый книгами.** 4. Он ни за что не хотел тратить деньги, **отложенные на поездку.** 5. Метод, **используемый этим рабочим,** был подхвачен всеми. 6. У нее был **взволнованный** вид. 7. Он оглядел сад с **довольной** улыбкой. 8. Подходя к столу, он увидел на нем письмо, **адресованное** ему. 9. Когда я вошел в комнату, он собирал с пола кусочки **разбитой** чашки. 10. **Хорошо одетый** незнакомец сразу привлек наше внимание. 11. Вещи, **которые были уже упакованы,** лежали на полу около дверей. 12. **Сделанный на заказ** костюм сидел на нем очень хорошо.

A Complex Object With Participle II

Ex. 32. **Study the following chart, translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. I usually have	my hair	cut once a month.
2. We shall have	our house	painted in spring.
3. Where did you have	you car	repaired?
4. I want to have	it	done by tomorrow.
5. I've just had	my watch	repaired.
6. He won't have	anything	changed here.

Ex. 33. **Answer the following questions using a complex object with Participle II.**

1. How often do you have your hair cut? 2. When did you last have your hair cut? 3. Where did he have his watch repaired? 4. How often do you have your teeth examined? 5. Where does she have her clothes made? 6. When will they have this job done? 7. When did he have his suit cleaned? 8. Where can I have my coat shortened?

Ex. 34. **Paraphrase the following sentences according to the model, watch the difference in meaning.**

Model: (a) I'll make somebody do this job. I'll have this job done.
(b) She wants to shorten her dress. She wants to have her dress shortened.

1. He wants his dinner to be served at 5. 2. They'll discuss this problem at the

meeting. 3. When does he want to send this telegram? 4. We want to finish this work by the end of the month. 5. The print of the manuscript is too small. He doesn't want to ruin his eyes. 6. I want to do my hair in a new style.

Ex. 35. **Practise the following according to the model.**

Model: My hair has grown long. (to cut)
I must **have** it **cut.**

1. He has a terrible toothache. The tooth has gone too far (to pull out). 2. My watch is five minutes slow (to repair). 3. His suit is already dirty. He mustn't wear it like that (to send it to the cleaner's). 4. There is some trouble with the gearbox (to put it right). 5. We are leaving tomorrow (to pack; all the things). 6. Her teeth are uneven (to straighten). 7. Their house looks ugly (to repaint).

Ex. 36. *Translate the following sentences using a complex object with Participle II.*

1. Когда мы пришли, все ее вещи были упакованы. 2. Вам необходимо подстричься. 3. Вам следует отремонтировать свои часы. Тогда вы, может быть, не будете опаздывать. 4. Ей хочется сшить новое пальто. 5. Мне только что вырвали зуб. 6. У вас что-то серьезное с рукой. Вам надо показать ее врачу. 7. Мы должны рассмотреть этот вопрос в понедельник. 8. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы мои распоряжения выполнялись.

MIXED BAG

Ex. 37. *Open the brackets using the correct form of Participle I or Participle II.*

1. (to read) half the book, he fell asleep. 2. The wind (to come) from the North was bitterly cold. 3. She didn't pay any attention to the (to ring) telephone. 4. (to reach) for the sugar, she upset a cup of coffee. 5. They sat around the fire (to stare) at it in silence. 6. I noticed him give her a (to surprise) look. 7. In the middle of the night he woke up (to shake) with cold. 8. She opened the telegram with (to shake) fingers. 9. He wants to have his luggage (to pick up) on the way to the station. 10. I don't really see what can be done about the (to ruin) picture. 11. The path (to lead) to the house was covered with yellow leaves. 12. He walked out of the room, (to leave) the door open. 13. They were worrying about the child (to leave) alone in the house. 14. (to look) forward to that moment for a long time, he felt no pleasure now that it had arrived. 15. Why not throw away the (to break) sunglasses, we are not likely to repair them. 16. While waiting for a flight at the airport a passenger can have his hair (to cut), his suit (to press), shoes (to shine).

Ex. 38. *Fill in the blanks with Participle II or Participle I in the correct form of the verb in brackets.*

1. ... breakfast they called a taxi to take them to the station (to finish). 2. Everyone turned to the only woman in the room ... on the sofa (to sit). 3. She rose and, ... me to follow her, walked on, ... and .... (to tell, to laugh, to talk). 4. ... me in the postman left the parcel with my next-door neighbours (not to find). 5. "I don't know if I see what you mean," he said with a ... expression (to hurt). 6. ... to the window she threw it open. In the street a .... circus was passing (to cross; to travel). 7. ... the gate he sang an old song ... at times to admire his work (to paint, to stop). 8. We-stopped at-the freshly ... gate (to paint). 9. ... the episode I couldn't help laughing (to remember). 10. You needn't repeat the lesson so well ... by everybody (to remember). 11. "Do you find this film interesting?" he asked ... to her (to turn). 12. We had the roof of our country house ... green (to paint). 13. He walked along the street with his collar ... up, hands in pockets (to turn).

Ex. 39. *Translate the following sentences, using Participle I or Participle II.*

1. Прослушав внимательно его доклад, я понял, какую большую работу он проделал. 2. **Слушая** внимательно все, о чем он говорил, я одновременно наблюдал аудиторию. 3. **Беспокоясь** о его будущем, она думала о том, как помочь ему. 4. Она отвечала на вопросы рассеянно, все время **думая** о случившемся. 5. **Будучи новым человеком**, он пока не задавал вопросы, **боясь попасть впросак** (сделать ошибку). 6. Он посмотрел на **отремонтированную** машину с удовлетворением и гордостью. 7. **Увидев,** что машина замедлила ход, я понял, что они меня подвезут. 8. **Успокоившись,** она начала рассказывать нам о случившемся. 9. Первое, что он увидел, **подходя к дому, —** это **разбитое** окно. 10. **Повинуясь приказу** инструктора, водитель замедлил ход. 11. Мы прислушались к тишине, **изредка нарушаемой** какой-то птицей. 12. **Услышав** ее имя, он тотчас же вспомнил, где они встретились впервые. 13. Его **обиженный** вид рассмешил всех. 14. **Будучи расстроенным,** он нечаянно повернул не в ту сторону. 15. Мне бы хотелось **удлинить** пальто.

Ex. 40. *Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of Participle I or Participle II. Retell the story.*

BUGGING SHOWROOMS

It was reported in the press that certain car dealers have been bugging* their

* to bug – устанавливать подслушивающие устройства

automobile showrooms so that they can hear what people, who have come to buy a car, are saying while the salesman is in the back office, (to make) it easier for the salesman to know what the intentions of the buyers are.

A couple (to leave) alone in the showrooms have been looking at a brown Panda for some time when the salesman comes out of the back office (to say):

"Well, Fanny, how do you like our new Panda?" (to point) at the car.

(to look) at the salesman in great surprise the woman asks: "How did you know my name was Fanny?"

"Your husband McKinley told me."

The husband says: "I never told you her name. And how did you know my name was McKinley (never to meet) me before?"

The salesman says: "Well, honestly, I did not know but I took a wild guess. You look like a Fanny and a McKinley. Now let's talk about the car. You want to have a brown car with brown leather seats."

Fanny says (to look) at the salesman: "You must be a mind reader."

"(to be) in this business for many years I know that certain people like certain colours."

"Let's get out of here," says Fanny (to feel) nervous.

McKinley asks (to turn) to the salesman: "Can I talk to my wife alone?"

"Of course," the salesman answers (to walk) off to the back office and (to leave) the couple alone.

"Let's tell him we'll think it over and be back next Tuesday," McKinley starts (to whisper) to his wife.

(to rush) out of the back office the salesman shouts: "Could you make it Wednesday? I don't work on Tuesday, and I'd hate to lose the sale."

(after "Bugging Showrooms" by Art Buchwald)

Ex. 41. *Test translation.*

1. На стадионах, принадлежащих спортивному обществу «Динамо», часто проводятся международные соревнования. 2. Небрежность шофера часто ведет к аварии. 3. Хотя они начали работать вместе совсем недавно, они уже стали близкими друзьями. 4. Она зашла к подруге на минутку и, как всегда, застряла там на целый час. 5. Если вы хотите отправить письмо авиапочтой, то нужно наклеить еще одну марку. 6. Друзья пришли на вокзал проводить его и пожелать счастливого пути. 7. Он жалел, что не послушался совета отца и не поступил сразу же в институт иностранных языков. Он потерял два года. 8. Раз он обещал позаботиться о багаже, то вам, по-моему, нечего волноваться. 9. Я бы с удовольствием отвез вас на своей машине, но она сейчас в ремонте. Случилось так, что во время тумана мы попали в аварию. 10. Он имел обыкновение насвистывать, играя в шахматы. 11. Он твердо обещал прийти помочь нам упаковать вещи, и мы никак не ожидали, что он подведет нас. 12. Когда ей задали вопрос, она

сначала растерялась, не зная, что ответить. 13. Журналист любезно согласился прочитать нам лекцию о международном положении. 14. Он позвонил на станцию и заказал билеты на поезд с доставкой на дом. 15. Трудно сказать, почему он отказался подчиниться распоряжению. 16. Не теряя ни минуты, он перешел к сути дела. 17. Приближаясь к станции, поезд замедлил ход. 18. Он решил не высказывать своей точки зрения, пока дело не будет выяснено до конца. 19. Он рассказал нам о принятых мерах в общих чертах, не вдаваясь в подробности. 20. Почему вы сомневаетесь в его словах? Разве у вас есть основания не верить ему? 21. Наклеив марку и написав адрес, она спустилась вниз, чтобы бросить письмо в ящик.

SPEECH EXERCISES

Ex. 42. **Retell in narrative form.**

At a quarter to six, Mrs. Alison heard her husband park the car outside the house and immediately went out to speak to him.

"What's the matter, darling?" he asked. "You look upset."

"I've made a terrible mistake, Jim," she said. "Mrs. Johnson rang me up about half an hour ago. We got talking and then without thinking, I asked her and her husband to come and have dinner with us this evening."

"Well, that's nothing to get upset about!" Mr. Alison said. "We are sure to have a pleasant evening. Here, I've bought you the book you wanted."

"Oh, thanks, Jim," said Mrs. Alison. "I'd like the Johnsons to come, but I have just discovered that there's hardly any food in the house. You didn't by any chance remember to buy some steak? I asked you to get some on your way home from work three days ago."

"Steak?" Mr. Alison said. "Good heavens, yes. I remember now. As a matter of fact I did get some. You should have reminded me about it. It's in the boot* of the car. It's been there for the past three days!"

Ex. 43. **Answer the following questions. Sum up your answers.**

1. On Driving

1. Does your family have a car? What model is it? 2. Can you drive? 3. Have you got a driver's license? 4. When did you take a course in driving? 5. Are you a good driver? 6. Why should the driver be attentive when at the wheel? What may happen if he is not? 7. What are filling stations for? What service can you get there? 8. What do you do if you have trouble with your car and do not know what exactly has gone wrong? 9. Have you ever made a long trip by car? How

* багажник

did you like it?

2. The Rule of the Road

1. What are the rules of safety first when crossing the street? 2. What are the traffic lights for? 3. What are underground passages for? 4. Where are the underground passages usually built? 5. What is a one-way road? 6. What side of the road do cars keep to when driving: the right or the left? 7. What countries have left-hand driving?

3. Happy New Year to You!

1. Has January always been the first month of the year? 2. Is the New Year celebrated at the same time the world over? 3. What are the different ways of celebrating the New Year in different countries? 4. Why is New Year usually a big holiday? 5. Why do people often send postcards with their best wishes to each other on New Year's Day? 6. How is New Year celebrated in your family? 7. Why is New Year especially enjoyed by children? 8. Do you usually see the New Year in at home with the family or with your friends at a restaurant?

Ex. 44. **Read the following. Answer the questions, using the vocabulary of the lesson, and retell the passage.**

Traffic in Britain is getting heavier all the time and the roads of most big cities are almost permanently blocked by a slow moving procession of metal cages.* One-way streets and traffic lights have not settled the problem. The motorist driving in crowded towns gets very little pleasure out of it.

Some time ago, a friend of mine who works in a part of the city I do not know very well, invited me to call on him. It took me hours to get there and I drove round and round looking for a place to park my car. At last I parked it in a backstreet. As I was already three quarters of an hour late I hurried off on foot. Walking quickly along the street, I could not help thinking that, nowadays, it is much easier to walk than to drive.

At noon, just as I was leaving my friend's office, it suddenly struck me that I had no idea where I had parked my car. I could hardly go up to a policeman and tell him that I had lost a small green car somewhere! I would simply have to look for it myself. Walking down street after street, I looked over each car closely and was happy to see a small green car just behind an old cart.** But how disappointed I was to discover that though the car was exactly like my own, it belonged to someone else! Feeling quite tired now, I decided to drop the search for a while and went off for lunch. Some time later, I left the restaurant and was

---

* клетка

** тележка

walking down the street. Turning the corner, I nearly jumped for joy: my car was right in front of me — and there was no mistake this time. I could not help smiling as I approached it. Stuck on the windscreen was a little ticket which informed me that the car had been visited by a policeman in my absence. On top of all, I had broken the traffic regulations!

Questions

1. What's happening on the roads of Britain? 2. What is being done in big cities to settle the traffic problem? 3. Why does the motorist nowadays get so little pleasure out of driving? 4. What business brought the author to a part of the city which he did not know any too well? 5. Why did it take the author hours to reach it? 6. How long did it take him to find a parking place for his car? 7. Where did he park it? 8. Why did he hurry to his friend's office? 9. His friend had every reason to worry, didn't he? 10. What could his friend think seeing that his visitor was so late? 11. What idea suddenly struck the author as he was leaving his friend's office? 12. Had the car been removed in his absence? 13. Why couldn't he tell anybody his sad story? 14. How did he know that the car behind the old cart was not his? 15. Why did he decide to drop his search for a while? 16. How did he happen to find his car? 17. What were his feelings when he discovered his car at last? 18. Why was there a ticket stuck on the windscreen? 19. Why did his spirits sink when he saw it? 20. A ticket on the windscreen meant that he would have to put the matter right with the police, didn't it?

Ex. 45. *Read the following, answer the questions, retell the text in English.*

ПУДИНГ НЕ ДЛЯ ВСЕХ

В старой английской.сказке рассказывается, что в ночь на рождество приходит Дед Мороз и приносит всем подарки. Но не все англичане пользуются благосклонностью Санта Клауса (так называют в Англии Деда Мороза).

Среди рождественских рекламных объявлений и советов, заполняющих страницы лондонских газет, нелегко найти объяснение этому. Но не подлежит никакому сомнению, что среди обездоленных безработные, члены их семей, сотни тысяч пенсионеров, инвалидов и бездомных.

Разные люди по-разному нынче встретили рождество. Пятеро молодых искателей приключений Плимутского клуба отправились на вершину самой высокой горы Англии пик Сноудон, поднявшись туда с индейкой и традиционным английским пудингом.

А вот восемь мужчин и женщин из Стивэнджа решили обойтись без индейки. Они провели холодное и голодное рождество, устроив голодовку в центре города, чтобы привлечь внимание к тем миллионам людей,

которые остались на праздник голодными.

Мрачными красками рисует репортер одной из лондонских газет положение в Излингтоне. Большинство из 54 тысяч домов и квартир Излингтона — это трущобы, где люди живут в невероятной бедности и тесноте. Эти люди тоже никогда не празднуют рождество.

Questions

1. What is the old English fairy tale about Father Christmas? 2. Why does Santa Claus ignore the needs of the unemployed, old age pensioners, invalids and the homeless? 3. Why is nothing said about it in the London newspapers? 4. What usually fills the pages of the newspapers at Christmas? 5. How was Christmas celebrated by five young members of the Plymouth Adventurers' Club? 6. What did they take with them to the top of England's highest mountain peak Snowdon? 7. Why did eight men and women from Stevenage decide to do without the traditional Christmas turkey? 8. Why did they hold a hunger strike? 9. What picture did a London reporter give of Islington? 10. Why don't the people living in the slums of Islington ever celebrate Christmas? 11. What is life like for the population of the city slums?

Ex. 46. *Read and retell the following.*

THE DANGER OF LYING IN BED

after Mark Twain

Last year I travelled twenty thousand miles, almost always by rail-me year before, I travelled over twenty-five thousand miles, half bv sea and half by rail; and the year before that I travelled about ten thousand miles by rail. I suppose, if I added all the little journeys here and there, I may say I have travelled sixty thousand miles during the three years I have mentioned, *and never had an accident.*

I would say to myself every morning, "Now, I have managed to keep safe so far, and so there is a greater chance that I shall have an accident this time. I will be wise,* and buy an accident ticket.** Then, when I have my accident, I shall be paid something." But I went to bed that night without one bone broken.

I got tired of that, and started buying accident tickets that lasted a month. I said to myself, "One of them *must* bring me some money."

But I was mistaken. I never got any money. I could read of railway accidents every day — the newspapers were full of them; but somehow they never happened to me. I found that I had spent a lot of money on accident tickets, and had nothing for it. I began to look around for somebody who had

---

* умный

** The idea is this: a person pays a small sum of money and receives a ticket. Then, if he is hurt in an accident, he receives some money.

won money in this way. I found lots of people who had paid the money for a ticket, but not one who had ever had an accident or been paid anything.

I stopped buying accident tickets, and made a study of the problem. The result was very surprising. THE DANGER WAS NOT IN TRAVELLING, BUT IN STAYING AT HOME.

Ex. 47. **Use the following words and phrases in situations.**

1. Safety First

to be in the habit of driving fast; to go at full speed; heavy traffic; not to slow down at the traffic lights; to break the traffic regulations; to run into a car; to strike (against); to meet with an accident; to be badly hurt; to find oneself in hospital.

2. On Packing

to be thinking of making a trip; to have one's suitcases ready; to do the packing; quite a job; to be in the habit of doing smth; to be good at smth; to take care not to leave anything behind; to have doubts; to make a poor job of smth; to have no system; to search about the place for smth; to empty the suit-case; to start over again; a waste of time; to strike smb (of an idea); to work out a system; to make out a list; to stick to smth in future.

3. Do-It-Yourself

to make up one's mind; to have one's room repaired; to be in high spirits; to remove the furniture; to start with the ceiling; to whitewash the ceiling; to throw dirt all over the place; not to like the look of smth; to give smth another coat of paint; to stick the paper to the wall; not to hold' to hang loose; to wonder; to think for a while; to make an effort; to put smth right; to make things still worse; to be upset; a waste of time and energy; to be at a loss; to invite a specialist; to deal with the repairs; to save smb a lot of trouble.

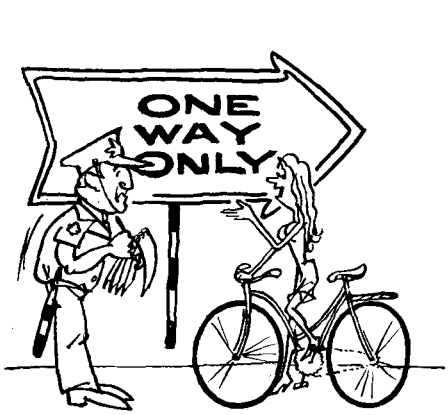
4. An Unexpected Visitor

to stay at home; to look forward to a quiet evening; suddenly; to hear the door bell; to wonder; not to expect anybody; to turn out; to be pleasantly surprised; without wasting a minute; to make coffee; to lay the table; to have a friendly chat; to tell funny stories; to pass quickly (about the time); a cheerful evening.

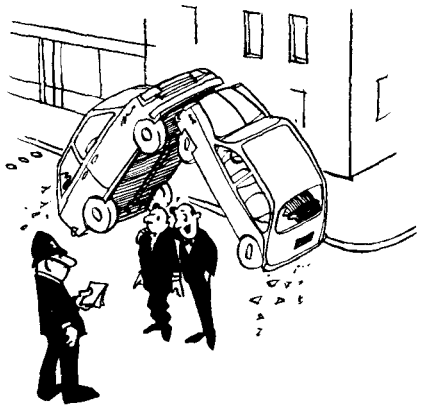
5. Take It Easy

to reach for smth; in the way; to remove a vase; accidentally; *to* drop; to break to pieces; to be very sorry; can't help doing smth; 'to calm smb; not to worry; to pick up smth; to stick the pieces together; to look whole again.

Ex. 48. Tell the story of each of the pictures.



But, officer, I am only going one way!



No... it's not an accident, officer, it's the parking problem. But now we've settled it!

Ex. 49. Subjects for oral and written composition:

1. Retell the story in the person of: a) Andrew Manson; b) Christine; c) Con Boland; d) Mrs. Boland; e) a next door neighbour who happened to see the accident.
2. Give character-sketches of a) Con Boland; b) Mrs. Boland.
3. Give the reasons why Con Boland had decided: a) to reconstruct the car; b) to do the job himself.
4. Give a description of the car after its reconstruction.
5. Describe what Con Boland felt when the car started falling to pieces.
6. Explain why an accident of this kind usually makes people laugh.
7. Tell a story of a similar accident you have seen or read about.
8. The traffic problem in big cities.
9. The dangers of driving fast in big cities.
10. The quickest way to get about town.
11. Public transport services in your town.
12. Describe a trip by car.

Lesson Three

Text: "One Coat of White" by H A. Smith[1]
Grammar: The Subjunctive Mood in Simple Sentences and Complex Sentences with Conditional Clauses

ONE COAT OF WHITE

Everybody knows by this time that we first met Lautisse on shipboard but few people know that in the beginning Betsy[2] and I had no idea who he was.

We were on the *Queen Elizabeth*,[3] coming back from our first trip to Europe. It was on the second day that I ran into him sitting in a quiet corner on deck. He gave me a nasty look. I started to back away mumbling an apology and then his expression changed.

"Wait!" he called out. "You are an American?"

His English was good, and he asked me if I had a moment to help him with a small problem. He wanted to know the name of some United States Senator[4] for the ship's daily crossword puzzle. I sat down and puzzled over the thing. The definition was, "Senator who crosses a river." I thought of Senator Ford, but there were no Fords on the passenger list, and then I got it — Senator Bridges. There was a Miss Ethelyn Bridges on board.

I didn't see him until next day, just before lunch, when he came into the main lounge, caught me by the arm, and whispered "Look!" In his big hand he was holding a man's wallet made of pigskin. "The prize!" he said. "See what I've won! But for you, though, I would have never solved the puzzle. Come and have a cocktail with me."

I went with him to his state-room, and he got out a bottle of .brandy. He introduced himself as Monsieur Roland and kept thanking me for my help with the puzzle. Then he began asking me some questions about myself and my business, and I told him I sold oil-burners.

We sat there talking, and finally he asked me if I could keep a secret, and then he said, "I am Lautisse."

I told Betsy all about it, so after lunch we went up and talked to the ship's librarian, asked him a few innocent questions and then dropped the name of Lautisse. We were greatly impressed by what we heard. We found out that my new friend was probably the world's greatest living painter, that he had given up painting and was heard to say that he would never touch another brush as long as he lived.

Betsy talked me into sending a note to his cabin, asking him around for a drink.

Well, we got to be real friendly. He planned to spend a month in New York, and it was Betsy who suggested that he come up to our place for a weekend.

Lautisse arrived on the noon train Saturday and I met him at the station. We

had promised him that we wouldn't invite any people in and that we wouldn't try to talk art to him. Driving out from the station I asked him if he wanted to do anything in particular, like play croquet or go for a swim or a walk in the woods, and he said that he just wanted to sit and relax. So we sat around all afternoon, and Lautisse looked at a ball game[5] on television for about five minutes, and couldn't understand it, and I took him to my shop and showed him an oil-burner and he couldn't understand that either. Mostly we sat around and talked.

I was up at seven-thirty the next morning and when I was having breakfast I remembered a job I'd been putting off for some time. Our vegetable garden has a white fence which I built with my own hands five years ago.

That garden fence is my pride and joy, and now that it needed a fresh coat of paint, I wanted to do the job. I got out a bucket half full of white paint and a brush. While I was getting things ready, I heard footsteps and there stood Lautisse. I said I had been getting ready to paint the fence but now that he was up, I'd postpone it. He protested. I took up the brush but he seized it from my hand and said, "First, I show you!"

I'm no Tom Sawyer— I wasn't looking for anybody to paint that fence. I let him finish two sides of the post and then interrupted. "I'll take it from here," I said, reaching for the brush. "No, no!" he said, with an impatient wave of the brush. I argued with him but he wouldn't even look up from his work. 1 went back to the Sunday papers but every now and then I'd get up and go out and watch him for a couple of minutes. He spent three hours at it and finished the fence, all four sections of it. You should have seen him when he walked around the house to the terrace where I was sitting — he had paint all over him.

Some time during the afternoon he asked me if we were anywhere near Chappaqua, and I said it was the next town, and he wanted to know if we had ever heard of Gerston, the sculptor. We had heard of him, of course, and Lautisse said he had once known Gerston in Paris, and would it be possible to get in touch with him? I got Gerston on the telephone for him, but he talked in French, and I have no idea what the conversation was about.

He went back to town on the 9.03 that evening and at the station shook my hand and said I was a fine fellow and that he hadn't enjoyed himself so much in years, and that he wanted Betsy and me to come to New York and have dinner with him some night.

We didn't hear anything from him or about him for ten days. Then the New York papers got hold of the story. In the interview which Lautisse gave there were a few lines about the weekend he had spent with Mr. and Mrs. Gregg.

The day after the story appeared a reporter and a photographer from one of the papers arrived at our place. Besides taking pictures of Betsy and me, as well as of the house, they asked for every single detail of the great man's visit, and Betsy told them of course about the garden fence. They took more pictures of the fence, the paint bucket and the brush and the next morning the paper had quite a story. The headline said: LAUTISSE PAINTS AGAIN.

It gave us a sort of funny feeling, all this publicity,[6] but we didn't have much time to think about it. People started arriving in large numbers. They all wanted my garden fence, because it had been painted by the great Lautisse.

"Look, gentlemen," I said. "I'm a businessman, I don't know anything about painting. I mean painting pictures. But I do know a thing or two about painting a fence. A mule could have held a paint brush in his teeth and done almost as good a job on that fence as Lautisse did."

In their turn they asked me if I knew that a single painting by Lautisse was worth as much as a quarter of a million dollars and whether I realized that my garden fence was a genuine Lautisse. I told them I'd make my decision in the next few days.

Those next few days were bedlam. We had to have the telephone disconnected — there were calls from all over the country. At least another dozen art galleries and museums sent people. By the end of the second day I was being offered twenty-five thousand. The next day fifty-When on the fourth day Gerston came in I immediately took up the subject of the fence. He advised me not to sell the fence yet — and let the Palmer Museum in New York exhibit it for several weeks. He also explained what all the excitement was about. He said one reason was that Lautisse had never before used a bit of white paint.

The fence was taken to New York. I went down myself to have a look, and I couldn't keep from laughing when I saw my fence — it had a fence around it.

The exhibition was to end on a Saturday, and Gerston phoned that day and asked if I would meet him at the museum on Sunday.

He led me to the room where my fence had been exhibited, and I did get a shock when we walked in. The fence had been cut up into sections.

"Don't get excited," said Gerston. "Let me show you something." He pointed to a word in black paint at the bottom corner. It took me a few seconds to recognise it. It was the signature of Lautisse.

"But ... but I don't get it!" I stammered. "Why ... what ... where is he?"

"Lautisse sailed for home early this morning," said Gerston. "But last night he came over here, got down on his hands and knees, and signed each of the thirty sections. Now you've got something to sell."

And indeed I did have. Twenty-nine sections of the thirty sections ware sold within a month's time at 10,000 each. I kept the thirtieth, it's hanging now in our living-room.

After it was all over, I went to see Gerston.

"Lautisse was genuinely fond of you and Mrs. Gregg," he said. "He had no idea, when he painted your fence, that it would make such a noise. But when it did, he got a good laugh out of it. And it was his idea to have the fence cut into sections. Then he got down to work and signed each one."

NOTES

1. Smith, Henry Allen, a modern American writer
2. Betsy: the short for Elizabeth
3. the Queen Elizabeth: an ocean-going liner
4. Senator: a member of the Senate, the upper house in US Congress
5. ball game: *here*—baseball
6. publicity: *зд* известность

VOCABULARY

apologize *vi* извиняться to apologize **to** smb **for** smth; He aplologized **for** being late. apology *n* извинение; **Phr.** make (offer) an apology приносить извинение

nasty *a* неприятный, ужасный, отвратительный a nasty look (smell, taste, illness, fall, remark, behaviour, person, etc.); nasty weather; to be nasty **to** smb отвратительно вести себя по отношению к кому-л

puzzle *vt* озадачить, ставить в тупик to be puzzled **at** smth; His question puzzled me. **Phr.** puzzle **over** smth ломать себе голову над чем-л; puzzle **out** разгадать, отгадать (что-л); puzzle *n* вопрос, ставящий в тупик; загадка, головоломка His unexpected disappearance was a puzzle **to** everybody.

solve *vt* разрешать, решать (проблему, задачу и т.п.) to solve a problem (a puzzle, doubts, etc.); solution *n* разрешение, решение (проблемы и т.п.) They found a good solution **to** the problem.

introduce *vt* 1. знакомить, представлять I introduced him **to** the guests. to introduce oneself представляться 2. вносить, предлагать (на рассмотрение); внедрять в производство и т.п. to introduce a plan (a project, an idea, etc.) **for** discussion; to introduce a new method (some changes, mechanization, automation, etc.) **in** one's work; introduction *n* 1. официальное знакомство, представление As master of the house I was expected to make the introductions; a letter of introduction рекомендательное письмо 2. введение, внедрение With the introduction of the new method of work the production sped up. 3. предисловие (к книге и т.п.) an introduction **to** a book (a report, a speech, etc.); introductory *a* вводный, вступительный; an introductory speech (lecture, chapter, article, etc.)

final *a* последний, заключительный, окончательный a final decision (game, etc.); final results, etc.; finally *adv* наконец, в конце концов He finally agreed to our suggestion.

impress *vt* производить впечатление, поражать How did the show impress you? impression *n* впечатление What are your impressions **about** (**of**) the trip? **Phr.** make a good (bad, great, strong, poor. etc.) impression **on** smb

произвести сильное (слабое и т.п.) впечатление на кого-л; be **under** the impression **of** a story (a book, a film, etc.) находиться под впечатлением рассказа (книги, фильма и т.п.); impressive *a* производящий глубокое впечатление, впечатляющий, выразительный; an impressive speech (event, building, manner, appearance, etc.)

give up (**gave, given**) *vt* отказываться от (чего-л), бросать to give up hope (an attempt, one's idea, a habit, one's friends, music, etc.); to give **up** smoking (painting, reading, etc.)

suggest *vt* предлагать to suggest a plan (an idea, a trip, etc.); I suggest that he (should) give up this idea. Somebody suggested visiting the museum; suggestion *n* предложение **At** the suggestion of the secretary the meeting was postponed. **Phr.** make a suggestion внести, сделать предложение

fresh *a* свежий a fresh newspaper (tie, shirt, morning, etc.); fresh butter (bread, tea, air, paint, news, etc.)

postpone *vt* откладывать, отсрочивать to postpone a meeting (a trip, an exhibition, a visit, etc.) They agreed to postpone the discussion **till** a later date; postponement *n* отсрочка The clients agreed to the postponement of the delivery of the goods. **Phr.** make a postponement сделать отсрочку, отложить

patience *a* терпение You need a lot of patience to do the job properly. She has a lot of (no, etc.) patience **with** children. **Phr.** lose (one's) patience (with smb) терять терпение, выходить из себя; try smb's patience испытывать чье-л терпение; (im)patient *a* (не)терпеливый to be (im)patient **with** smb

possible *a* возможный, вероятный a possible answer (solution, etc.); It is possible to do the translation in an hour. It is possible that he may come. **Phr.** as soon (quickly, much, etc.) as possible как можно скорее (быстрее, больше и т.п.); impossible *a* невозможный, невыполнимый It is impossible for you to solve the problem alone; possibility *n* 1. возможность, вероятность There is no possibility **of** a mistake (doubt, etc.) 2. *pl.* возможности, данные There are great possibilities **in** space flights.

besides *prep* кроме, помимо Besides English he knows French.

single *a* один, единственный; отдельный He did not make a single mistake in the test. She told us every single detail of the incident.

detail *n* подробность, деталь an important (interesting, etc.) detail **Phr. in** detail подробно; go **into** details вдаваться в подробности

worth *a* стоящий, заслуживающий (внимания и т.п.) He paid twice as much for the flowers as they were worth. The book is definitely worth reading. It's worth going there.

realize *vt* 1. понимать, осознавать, представлять себе to realize one's mistake (the danger, the importance of smth, the difficulty, etc.); He realized that the situation was difficult. 2. осуществлять, претворять в жизнь to realize a plan (an idea, one's wish, etc.)

connect *vt* соединять, связывать, сочетать This metro line will connect the new district **with** the centre of the town. I cannot connect these two things in my

mind; disconnect *vt* разъединять (о телефоне, проводах и т.п.); connection *n* связь, соединение; (связующее) общее I see no (some, a close, a distant, etc.) connection **between** these two events. **Phr. in** connection **with** smth в связи с чем-л, по поводу чего-л, относительно чего-л; **in** this connection в этой связи

offer *vt* предлагать, давать; выражать готовность (что-л сделать) to offer money (help, a cigarette, a seat, a job, etc.) **to** smb; He offered to pay for the tickets; offer *n* предложение

take up (took, taken) *vt* браться (за что-л); начать изучать (что-л) to take **up** music (painting, a foreign language, a job, etc.)

exhibit *vt* экспонировать, показывать, выставлять to exhibit pictures (cars, flowers, goods, etc.); exhibition *n* выставка, показ **Phr.** hold an exhibition проводить выставку, exhibit *n* экспонат

sign *vt* подписывать to sign a letter (a document, a form, a contract, an agreement, etc.); signature *n* подпись He put his signature **to** the document.

within *prep* в, в пределах, внутри; в течение (не позже, чем) He lives within a five minutes' walk from here. You should pay for the telephone within three days.

WORD COMBINATIONS

on shipboard = on board a (the) ship на пароходе (на борту парохода)
on deck на палубе
talk smb into/out of (doing) smth уговорить кого-л сделать что-л/отговорить от чего-л
talk art (business, politics, sports, shop, etc.) говорить, беседовать об искусстве (делах, политике, спорте, на профессиональные темы и т.п.)
put off = postpone откладывать, отсрочивать
now and then время от времени
have paint (mud, snow, etc.) all over быть в краске (грязи, снегу и т.п.)
know a thing or two about smth разбираться в чем-л
in one's turn в свою очередь
get in touch with smb связаться, установить связь с кем-л
get (catch) hold of smb/smth *(lit. & fig.)* ухватиться за кого-л/что-л
take pictures of smb/smth делать снимки, фотографировать (кого-л/что-л)
keep from doing smth удержаться от чего-л
keep smb from doing smth удержать кого-л от чего-л
get a good laugh out of smth посмеяться, позабавиться над чем-л
get down to work (business, etc.) приняться, взяться за работу (дело и т.п.)

EXERCISES ON THE TEXT

Ex. 1. **Answer the following questions.**

1. How did Mr. Gregg happen to meet Lautisse? 2. What was their first meeting like? 3. Why did Lautisse invite Mr. Gregg to his cabin the following day? 4. Why did Lautisse first introduce himself as Monsieur Roland? 5. Why wasn't Mr. Gregg in the least impressed when he heard his new friend's real name? 6. What did the Greggs learn about Lautisse from the ship's librarian? 7. How did it happen that Lautisse spent a weekend with the Greggs? 8. Why did Lautisse enjoy his stay at the Greggs' so much? 9. What explained the Greggs' sudden popularity? 10. Why couldn't Mr. Gregg at first understand what all the noise was about? 11. What happened as a result of all this publicity? 12. At what exact moment did Gerston appear on the scene? 13. What was Gerston's advice to Mr. Gregg? 14. What gave Lautisse the idea to have the fence] cut up into sections and to sign each of the thirty pieces? 15. Why did Lautisse think the incident with the fence to be a great joke? 16. Why is the story called "One Coat of White"?

Ex. 2. **Find in the text the English for:**

а) 1. вначале; 2. не иметь представления; 3. посмотреть с неприязнью на кого-л; 4. попятиться; 5. пробормотать извинения; 6. решить кроссворд; 7. хранить секрет; 8. задать невинный вопрос; 9. упомянуть между прочим чье-л имя; 10. бросить живопись; 11. приехать с двенадцатичасовым поездом; 12. говорить на темы искусства; 13. смотреть по телевизору игру в бейсбол; 14. построить своими руками; 15. свежий слой краски; 16. полведра краски; 17. время от времени; 18. соседний город; 19. сфотографировать; 20. со всех концов страны; 21. не удержаться от смеха; 22. разрезать что-л на части; 23. в течение месяца; 24. по настоящему хорошо относиться к кому-л; 25. вызвать шум (сенсацию);
б) 1. на борту парохода; 2. возвращаться из поездки; 3. на палубе; 4. список пассажиров; 5. салон; 6. каюта первого класса; 7. каюта.

Ex. 3. *Give the four forms of the following verbs:*

hold; win; keep; find; plan; try; show; argue; shake; lead; cut; sell; hang; get; turn.

Ex. 4. *Open the brackets using the gerund of the given verb.*

1. The incident was not worth ... (to mention). 2. We didn't have to talk her into ... a course in driving (to take). 3. He apologized for ... late (to be). 4. Do stop ... shop (to talk)! We have come here to enjoy ourselves. 5. The scientist had to give up ... of another expedition to the North Pole (to think). 6. We must keep her from ... on the trip (to go). She is not fit for it yet. 7. It's no use ... to get in

touch with him now, he is not in town (to try). 8. You are running the risk of ... cold if you go out without warm clothes (to catch). 9. Somebody suggested ... for a couple of days in Leningrad on our way back from Riga (to stay). 10. She didn't mind ... there alone (to go). 11. He had a nasty habit of ... at the wrong moment (to laugh). 12. He was used to ... with such situations (to deal). 13. We are looking forward to ... you soon(to see). 14. She got much pleasure out of ... art with him (to talk). 15. The building was impressive and we couldn't help ... it (to admire).

Ex. 5. **Use constructions with emphatic "it" in the following sentences.**

M o d e l : 1) I ran into him **on the second day.**
It was on the second day that I ran into him.
2) **The doctors** do not allow him to go to the South.
It is the doctors who (that) do not allow him to go to the South.

1. They invited **him** to their place **for a week-end.** 2. The tourists were greatly impressed by **the beauty of the Baikal. 3. Picasso's pictures** on exhibition at the Pushkin Museum attract crowds of visitors. 4. We failed to get in touch with the expedition **because of the bad connection.** 5 Londoners are very proud of **their parks and gardens. 6. He** was worried about **his son. 7. She** attends **an art school** evenings. 8. She introduced **him to her parents.** 9. They had to put off the experiment **for that single reason.**

Ex. 6. **Translate the following sentences using constructions with emphatic "it".**

1. Как раз к профессору Иванову вам и следовало бы обратиться. Он занимается интересующей вас проблемой. 2. Именно картина молодого художника и привлекла на выставке всеобщее внимание. 3. О детях-то в первую очередь им и надо было позаботиться. 4. Как раз последний пункт и не стоит обсуждать. В нем нет ничего нового. 5. Как раз на прошлой неделе и произошел этот неприятный разговор. 6. Именно с ним-то и будет трудно договориться. 7. Как раз эту проблему и трудно разрешить. 8. Как раз из-за плохой погоды им и пришлось отложить поездку.

Ex. 7. **Use emphatic "do" ("did") according to the model.**

M o d e 1: I **got** a shock when we walked into the room where my fence was exhibited.
I **did get** a shock when we walked in.

1. I had asked him not to tell her the truth yet, but he told her everything. 2.

How did it happen that he failed at the examination? He **knew** the subject well. 3. You won't believe me, but I **want** to become a doctor. 4. **Read** the book, it is well worth reading. 5. He said he would give up smoking and he **gave** it up. 6. **Stop** arguing.

Ex. 8. **Translate the following sentences using the construction with emphatic "do".**

1. Почему его еще нет? **Ведь** он **обещал** прийти рано. 2. Хотя он и был очень занят, он **все же сдержал** свое слово и пришел проводить нас. 3. **Непременно посетите** Британский Музей, когда будете в Лондоне. Я **знаю,** что он произведет на вас огромное впечатление. 4. **Пожалуйста, расскажите** нам все подробно. 5. Почему они обижаются на него? Он **же предлагал** им свою помощь.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBS

Ex. 9. **Study the following phrases; a) recall the sentences in which they are used in the text and b) use them in sentences of your own.**

on shipboard; **in** the beginning/end; **on** deck; run **into;** back **away; on/in** the list; thank smb **for** smth; give **up;** talk smb **into** doing smth; ask smb **around (for** a talk, a cup of tea, a week-end, etc.); **on** the (noon, 8.15) train; go **for** a walk; **with** one's own hands; all **over** smb/smth; **in** years; keep **from** doing smth; take pictures **of**; **in** white; **at** the bottom/top corner; sail **for**; come **over** (**to** a place); **within** a month; sell **at** (a price **of**); get a laugh **out of** smth.

Ex. 10. **Fill in the blanks with prepositions or adverbs:**

A. 1. "Is it possible to get ... touch ... him before I leave?" "Certainly. I can get him ... the telephone ... you ... no time." 2. We did our best to talk him ... taking ... this job. It's the only one he's really lit ... . 3. Will you help me ... the introductions? I always forget who should be introduced ... whom. 4. Everybody was looking ... him ... silence, and it suddenly struck him that he was expected to apologize... something he hadn't done. 5. She was upset and disturbed when she found ... that the children wouldn't be coming back ... the trip ... another couple ... days ... least. 6. He was prepared to get rid ... the old things ... any price. 7. I like solving cross-word puzzles. I don't do it ... prizes. I enjoy puzzling ... them, just for the fun of it. 8. It's too early yet to say anything definite ... connection ... the recent events. Time will show. 9. True, there were a few interesting pictures ... the exhibition, but I wasn't impressed ... anything ... particular. 10. You would have found your name ... the list if you had looked carefully. 11. You should have seen the car when it pulled ... ... the gate. It had

mud all ... it. 12. Do read the article ... the bottom ... the page. It may be ... some interest ... you. 13. Before going ... details first tell me what it is all ... . 14. She read the form once more and put her signature ... it. 15. Why were you quiet ... the news?

B. Early ... the same day that the story appeared ... the newspaper, an excited little man arrived ... a chauffeur-driven limousine. He jumped ... ... the car, rushed ... ... me, seized me ... the shoulders and began shouting: "Where is it? Where is the fence?"

I wanted to know who he was, but he kept shouting: "Has anybody else been here? Show me the fence!" ... the end he said he was Mr. Vegano ... the Milliard Galleries, and wanted to see the fence M. Lautisse had painted.

He stood ... front ... the fence crying: "Splendid! Fine!" and things like that. Then he suddenly calmed ... and said: "Mr. Gregg, I will give you five hundred dollars ... the fence."

... this moment another car pulled ... ... our gates and ... jumped two men who came rushing ... us, shouting, "Stop! Stop!" They also wanted my garden fence because it had been painted ... the great Lautisse. They were ... the Widdicome Galleries.

"You people," I said, "are either drunk or mad." All three ... them looked ... me as if I were the one who was drunk or mad. Didn't I realize that Lautisse had not held a paint brush ... his hand ... twelve long years?

They started shouting again trying to talk me ... selling the fence.

"A thousand dollars ... the fence!" said one ... the Widdicome men.

"Twelve hundred!" cried little Mr. Vegano.

"Fifteen hundred!" shouted the other Widdicome man.

"Stop it!" I held ... my hands and called for order. ... this time my business instincts were waking ... .

"Gentlemen," I said, "the fence is not ... sale. Not ... this moment. I need a little time to—"

"Three thousand!"

"Four thousand!"

Four thousand dollars ... another trip ... Europe — yet I really did want time to think things ... . I told them I'd get ... touch ... them as soon as I made ... my mind.

Ex. 11. *Give the English for the following phrases, using the preposition "on" in its different meanings. Use the phrases in sentences of your own.*

I. а) на земле; на вершине холма; на тротуаре; на другой стороне улицы; на платформе; висеть на стене; лежать на столе; сидеть на стуле; на втором этаже;

б) на берегу; город на Волге; Ростов-на-Дону;

в) на борту парохода; на палубе; в поезде; на велосипеде; на коньках;

на лыжах; пешком; верхом.

II. по пути в город; поехать на экскурсию (в экспедицию, командировку); быть в отпуске (на дежурстве).

III. идти (о пьесе, фильме); передаваться по радио; показывать по телевидению; говорить по телефону.

IV. а) жить на 80 рублей (на пенсию, на заработную плату);

б) тратить деньги (энергию, слова) на что-л/кого-л; попусту тратить время на что-л.

V. книга (статья, роман) на какую-л тему; фильм (пьеса) на на какой-л сюжет; беседа (лекция) о международном положении.

VI. по приказу командира; по совету врача; согласно инструкциям.

VII. выставляться (о картине); быть в продаже.

VIII. а) в понедельник; 9 мая;

б) в прекрасный летний день; дождливым вечером; в день рождения; на второй день; в такое утро.

MISCELLANEOUS PHRASES

произвести на кого-л хорошее впечатление; согласиться на что-л; договориться о чем-л; работать на плантации; постучать в дверь; включить свет (газ, воду); примерять пальто; натягивать перчатки; при условии; безопасности ради; в довершение ко всему.

EXERCISES IN LEXICOLOGY

Ex. 12. *Recast the sentences using the prefix "dis-" with the words in bold type. Make all other necessary changes.*

1. He is hard to please. He is never **satisfied** with anything. 2. I couldn't make much of the story. The facts he gave were not properly **connected**. 3. They did not seem to be **pleased** with the turn of events. 4. They are reported to have failed to **agree** on the matter. 5. We have never heard anybody say that he is not an **honest** person. 6. I did not **like** the man the moment I saw him. 7. After the disagreement they had he didn't **appear** for a long time. 8. The child is just hopeless, he never seems to **obey** his parents. 9. She can't stand it when her house is not in **order**.

Ex. 13. *Paraphrase the following sentences using a noun with the suffix "-ion (-ation, -tion, -sion)" instead of a verb. Make other necessary changes.*

1. I don't see how these two events are **connected.** 2. What did they finally **decide** to do about the arrangement? 3. We were greatly **impressed** by everything we saw at the exhibition. 4. I am not much good at **introducing**

people. 5. How did you manage to **solve** the problem? 6. What would you **suggest** in connection with the coming holiday? 7. How long did they **discuss** the question? 8. I knew that he saw me but he didn't show that he **recognized** me. 9. Can you **describe** his stamp collection in detail? 10. He was fully **determined** to win the game. 11. The secretary **attended** to the details of the business part of the arrangement.

Ex. 14. *Give words of the same root in Russian. Compare the meaning.*

idea, moment, problem, cross-word, prize, final, secret, cabin, plan, protest, interview, reporter, photographer, detail, dozen, shock, section, patient.

Ex. 15. *In the following sentences compare the meanings of the words in bold type. Translate the sentences into Russian. Give your own examples.*

1. a) I sat down and **puzzled over** the problem. b) Though I've been watching the man closely enough, I seem to have failed to **puzzle him out.** He remains as much of a puzzle to me as ever. 2. a) She had certainly **thought over** the offer carefully before refusing it. b) He hadn't **thought out** the matter properly, no wonder his speech made such a poor impression. 3. a) The children were always **fighting over** something. b) Each stuck to his point of view, both were determined to **fight it out** to the end. 4. a) It was two years now that he had been **working over** the problem. b) Quick decisions were against his principles. Things had to be **worked out** properly first.

Ex. 16. *Give the meaning of the words in bold type; say which phrase is used literally and which has a figurative meaning.*

1. a) She **took up** her pen and continued writing. b) He was seriously thinking of **taking up** medicine as a career. c) I don't wish to **take up** too much of your time. 2. a) It was long past nine when he **got down** to breakfast. b) Finally they **got down** to the details of the agreement. 3. a) The key was lost and the door had to be **broken down**. b) The car broke down and was taken to the garage for repairs, c) When she heard the news she **broke down** and started crying.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 17. *Fill in the blanks with a suitable word in the correct form. Translate the sentences into Russian.*

to apologize; connection; detail; to introduce; introductory; impossible; impression; impressive; nasty (2); to offer; offer; possibility (2); to postpone; postponement; to puzzle (2); to realize (2); solution; to solve; to suggest;

suggestion.

1. In physics as in chemistry there are problems which have not been ... to this day. 2. The ... of the human mind have not yet been studied properly. 3. He didn't ... his mistake until it was too late. 4. To be frank, her silence ... me; it was not at all like her to let such things pass unnoticed. 5. It was much later that I came to realize that the first ... was hardly ever correct. 6. The secretary was most helpful, in fact she herself ... to get in touch with the railway station and arrange for the tickets to be delivered the same day. 7. He phoned to ... for the misunderstanding saying it had all been his fault. 8. With the little time we have, it's no use going into ... . 9. It was at the professor's ... that some important changes were ... into the program of studies. 10. It was a promising ... and well worth thinking over. 11. You should not have made that remark. It sounded a bit ... . 12. It was agreed that the discussion should be ... for a couple of days. 13. He spent his days among books looking for a possible ... to the problem. 14. The bank clerk was extremely apologetic, yet firm, saying that no further ... of payments could be made. 15. I was blind not to have seen the ... between those two facts much earlier. 16. We were all ... at his behaviour, to say the least it was a little funny. 17. It was my friend who ... that the ... talk at the conference should be given by Professor Nikitin. 18. It took her some time to ... that there was something behind the question and it wasn't half as innocent as it sounded. 19. The house was badly in need of repairs, yet he had no ... to do anything about it at the moment. 20. He was greatly displeased to hear about my refusal to take part in the game, in fact he was quite ... about it. 21. Finding it ... to make his opponents see his point, he gave up. 22. The Pushkin Museum of Fine Arts has an ... collection of paintings by Gauguin.

Ex. 18. *Paraphrase the following, using words and word combinations from the list and making all other necessary changes.*

to postpone; to impress; to sign; to puzzle; to apologize; to realize; to offer; to take up; to give up; to get down to; to get in touch (with); to go into details; to introduce oneself (as); to be worth doing; to talk shop.

1. The look she gave me **made me wonder.** 2. He never **talks about anything but his work.** 3. He just said that I was expected to **put my name** to a certain document refusing **to go any further into the matter.** 4. If you want a piece of friendly advice, I can tell you this. You should go up to your brother and say **how sorry you are** for giving him all that trouble. 5. The visitor **said his name was** Brown. 6. Do you know by any chance how I could **reach** him at this time of the day? 7. She wondered if the play was really **good enough to see.** She would hate to waste another evening. 8. With all the details arranged, it was time for us to **start doing** some real work. 9. She **asked if I'd like to have** another

cup of coffee. 10. It was much later that I came **to understand fully** how right he had been. 11. Though the plan sounded good, we decided to **drop** it. It was too difficult to realize. 12. The job couldn't be **put off** any further. 13. When he first **started** painting it was only a hobby. 14. He **was struck** by the beauty of the mountains.

Ex. 19. **Speak on the following topics, using the words and phrases listed below.**

1. The Greggs' First Trip to Europe

a dealer; to do excellent business in oil-burners; (an idea) to come into one's head; to save up enough for a trip; beside oneself with excitement; to agree to smth gladly; to travel all over Europe; to look up friends; to be an event in smb's life; to be thrilled (delighted); to go sightseeing; the famous places of interest; to admire the beauty of...; to be greatly impressed by...; full of impressions; to settle the date of one's return; to travel first (second, etc.) class; to see smb off; to cheer; to wave one's hand to smb.

2. Mr. Gregg Meets Lautisse

to happen; as follows; to take a walk; on deck; to run into smb; alone; a nasty look; not to want to disturb smb; to back away; to mumble an apology; to be called back; to discover that smb's English is good; to approach smb; to puzzle over smth; to suggest the right word; to fit the definition; to solve the puzzle; to be highly pleased with smb.

3. Lautisse Invites Mr. Gregg to His Cabin

to win the prize; a wallet made of pigskin; beside oneself with joy; to celebrate; to introduce oneself as...; to discuss things over a glass of brandy; (brandy) to loosen one's tongue; finally; to promise not to breathe a word; to give one's real name; to make no impression on smb; not to know a thing about smth.

4. The Greggs Learn the Truth About Their Fellow-Traveller

to talk smth over with smb; to be puzzled; to make up one's mind to find out smth; to consult the ship's librarian; to take smb aside; a few innocent questions; to drop a name; to be surprised to learn that...; the world's greatest living painter; to give up painting; not to touch another brush as long as he lived; (the news) to make smb catch his breath; to be delighted; to seize the chance; to invite smb around for a drink.

5. Lautisse Comes to Spend a Weekend With the Greggs

to get to be real friendly; to suggest; to arrange to spend a weekend with smb; to arrive on the noon train; to drive; to ask if smb wants to do anything in particular; to be eager to please smb; to have one wish only; to sit and relax; to show smb about (around); to be attentive to smb's wishes.

6. The Fence is Given a Fresh Coat of Paint

to be in the habit of; to rise early; to remember a job; to build a fence with one's own hands; one's pride and joy; to take proper care of; to be particular about; to need a fresh coat of paint; to get out a bucket half full of white paint; to hear footsteps; to decide to postpone the job; to seize the brush from smb's hand; to show firmness and determination; to get on with the job; to work fast; to be impatient to finish smth; to be happy in one's work; in high spirits; now and then; to step back; to admire one's work; to do a good job on the fence; to have nothing to do but to return to one's papers; to fight down a feeling of displeasure; to let one's guest have his own way.

7. Lautisse Has a Telephone Conversation With Gerston

a sculptor; the next town; to wish to get in touch with smb; possible; to get smb on the telephone for smb; to talk French; a lively talk; not to understand a thing; probably; to speak of one's impressions; to make some sort of arrangement with smb.

8. The Papers Get Hold of the Story

not to hear of or from smb; to give an interview; to mention smth; (the story) to appear in the papers; a reporter; a photographer; to rush; not to waste time; immediately come to the point; to be eager to learn every little detail; to take notes; to take pictures; not to miss anything; to show particular interest in smth; to be satisfied; to clear up all doubtful points; to mark a turning point in one's life.

9. Bargaining Over the Fence

publicity; to give smb a funny feeling; an eventful week; lots of visitors; to be after the fence; to be eager to get down to business; at first; to be at a loss; to

take smth for a joke; to doubt if smb is in his right mind; to find smth impossible to understand; to express one's point of view openly; to be worthless as a work of art; to have no patience with smb; to make smth clear to smb; a genuine Lautisse; to be worth a lot of money; to be offered large sums; to be on the safe side; finally; to need time to think smth over; to get rid of smb.

10. Mr. Gregg Really Has Something to Sell

to get good advice from smb; to talk smb into doing smth; to hold an exhibition; to be unable to keep from laughing; to be cut up into sections; to come straight to the point; at the bottom corner; a signature; in black paint; to fail to understand smth; to offer an explanation; to make a great noise; to get a good laugh out of smth; shortly before; to repay smb for his kindness; to play a joke on the public; to sell like hot cakes; within a month's time; to fetch a high price; to be worth as much as ... on the market.

SPECIAL DIFFICULTIES

Ex. 20. *Translate the following sentences using "suggest" or "offer" according to the sense:*

1. Я **предлагаю** сначала заняться вторым вопросом, если вы, конечно, не возражаете. 2. Вам **предлагают** хорошую цену за ваш фотоаппарат, он большего не стоит. 3. Главный инженер **предложил,** чтобы был внесен ряд изменений в рассматриваемый проект. 4. Какие товары ваша фирма могла бы **предложить** нам в наступающем сезоне? 5. Он **предложил** нам посетить музей Пушкина. Он также **предложил** провести нас по наиболее интересным залам музея. 6. Секретарь **предложил** отложить обсуждение вопроса до следующего понедельника. 7. Мой брат **предложил** помочь нам упаковать вещи. 8. Он **предложил** немедленно связаться с городом по телефону и сообщить о случившемся. 9. Зачем вы **предложили** ему деньги? Вы очень обидели его. 10. С моей точки зрения он **предложил** вполне разумное решение проблемы.

Ex. 21. **Translate the following sentences using the verbs "to refuse" or "to give up" according to the sense:**

1. Трудно сказать, почему он **отказался** принять участие в дискуссии. 2. Никто не ожидал, что она **откажется** от приглашения. 3. Им пришлось **отказаться** от этой попытки. 4. Ему надо на время **отказаться** от чтения, так как у него что-то не в порядке с глазами. 5. Он уже не раз подводил меня, и я **отказываюсь** верить ему. 6. В конце концов мне пришлось **отказаться** от этой мысли. 7. Почему вы **отказали** ему в помощи? 8. Я ни

в чем не могу **отказать** другу. 9. Она была явно чем-то расстроена, но **отказалась** объяснить нам в чем дело. 10. Мы были озадачены, когда он **отказался** ответить на наш вопрос.

Ex. 22. **Translate the following sentences using "during", "in", "within", "for" according to the sense. Mind the chart.**

в течение	***во время***	***— during***
	за	***— in***
	в пределах	***— within***
	в течение	***— for***

1. Выставка была открыта **в течение** месяца. 2. **В течение** месяца выставку посетили более 10000 человек. 3. Картины были распроданы **в течение** недели. 4. Ремонт был закончен **в течение** двух дней. 5. **В течение** всего обсуждения он не сказал ни слова. 6. Он не появляется на занятиях уже **в течение** недели. Почему вы не позвоните ему? 7. Они обещали сообщить о своем окончательном решении **в течение** трех дней. 8. После переговоров, которые продолжались **в течение** двух недель, было подписано новое соглашение.

Ex. 23. **Translate the following sentences using "except" or "besides" according to the sense. Mind the chart.**

кроме	за исключением, исключая – except	
	помимо, в дополнение к – besides	

1. Он, кажется, не знает ни одного иностранного языка, **кроме** английского. 2. **Кроме** английского языка он знает еще французский и немецкий. 3. Я занят все дни недели, **кроме** воскресенья. 4. Какой у вас еще свободный день, **кроме** воскресенья? 5. Нам не удалось ни с кем связаться, **кроме** секретаря. 6. Они согласились со всеми внесенными дополнениями, **кроме** последнего. 7. **Кроме** «Гамлета» есть много новых фильмов, которые стоит посмотреть. 8. Какие еще книги Хемингуэя, **кроме** «Старик и море»[*], вы читали на английском языке? 9. Во время экскурсии в Ленинград, **кроме** музеев и картинных галерей, на меня большое впечатление произвели исторические места, связанные с революционными событиями.

[*] "The Old Man and the Sea"

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

The Subjunctive Mood

I. The Subjunctive Mood In Simple Sentences

Ex. 24. Study the following chart.

non-perfect form	1. **I would**[**] **tell** him the truth. Why don't you? 2. I don't want to answer this letter. What **would** you **do** in my place? 3. He **could help** her. Why doesn't she ask him? 4. **Might** I use your telephone? 5. She says (said) she **would go** with us but she can't (couldn't).	1. Я **бы сказал** ему правду, Почему ты не делаешь этого? 2. Я не хочу отвечать на это письмо. Как **бы** вы **поступили** на моем месте? 3. Он **мог бы помочь** ей. Почему она не обратится к нему? 4. **Мог бы** я воспользоваться вашим телефоном? 5. Она говорит (сказала), что она **пошла бы** с нами, но она не может.

Ex. 25. **Use the Subjunctive Mood in the following statements, note the difference in meaning.**

1. I won't sign the document without reading it first. 2. May she come a bit later? 3. They can't solve the problem without his help. 4. She doesn't agree to our suggestion. 5. I advise you to see the doctor. 6. She won't go for a walk in the rain. 7. Will you help me with the crossword puzzle? 8. I can't do without you. 9. He agrees to sell the picture for three hundred roubles. 10. How shall I translate the article without a dictionary? 11. She will be glad to postpone the discussion.

Ex. 26. **Answer the following questions, using the Subjunctive Mood. (practise the same questions and answers in reported speech).**

1. What car would you advise me to buy? 2. Could you introduce me to the secretary? 3. Who could help me to get in touch with the Information Bureau? 4. Where would you go this summer? 5. Would you care to go to the picture gallery with us? 6. What picture would you like to have in your room? 7. What language would you study as a second foreign language? 8. Till what day could we postpone the meeting^ 9. What ship would you like to sail on? 10. When could you make a report on current events? 11. What book would you read for

[**] **Should** is also used with the first person (singular and plural), but in modern English **would** is more common.

pleasure? 12. What would you have for breakfast? 13. What colour would you paint your country house?

Ex. 27. **Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Мы бы с удовольствием пошли на эту выставку. 2. Кто бы не ухватился за такую идею? 3. Прежде чем решать этот вопрос, я бы связался с ним по телефону. 4. Он бы здорово посмеялся над этим. 5. Я бы подождал с решением этого вопроса. 6. Он болен. На вашем месте я бы отложила поездку. 7. Жаль, что ее нет. Она была бы в восторге от этого концерта. 8. Не мог ли бы он тоже воспользоваться этим предложением? 9. Они говорят, что с удовольствием присоединились бы к нам. 10. Я уверена, он бы согласился дать вам рекомендательное письмо. 11. Она сказала, что она тоже не поехала бы туда зимой. 12. Кто бы хотел поехать туда вместе со мной? 13. Они сказали, что они не стали бы обсуждать этот вопрос на собрании. 14. Я не знаю, что бы я стал делать без вас.

Ex. 28. **Make up sentences, using the Subjunctive Mood according to the model. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

M o d e l: he, to show them about the exhibition (kind)
It would be kind of him to show them about the exhibition.
Было бы хорошо, (с его стороны показать им выставку) если бы он показал им выставку.

1. to go into the details of the matter now (unwise). 2. you, to take the children to the circus (kind). 3. to raise the problem at the next meeting (the right thing to do). 4. she, to point out their mistakes to them (wise). 5. to sign a document without reading it first (thoughtless). 6. he, to refuse the invitation (impolite). 7. to introduce this method of work at our plant (a good thing). 8. to reach the top of the mountain in this bad weather (impossible). 9. they, not to give him another chance (unkind). 10. to offer him the job (a mistake). 11. to have a cup of coffee now (not bad at all).

Ex. 29. *Study the following chart.*

perfect form	1. I **would have told** him the truth. Why didn't you? 2. I didn't answer his letter. What **would** you **have done** in my place? 3. He **could have helped** her. Why didn't she ask him? 4. You **might have missed** the train. You left the house very late. 5. She says (said) that she **would have gone** on the excursion with us but she was (had been) ill.	1. Я **бы сказала** ему всю правду. Почему вы этого не сделали? 2. Я не ответил на его письмо. Как **бы** вы **поступили** на моем месте? 3. Он **мог бы помочь** ей. Почему она не обратилась к нему? 4. Вы **могли бы опоздать** на поезд. Вы вышли из дома очень поздно. 5. Она говорит (сказала), что она **пошла бы** на экскурсию с нами, но она была больна.

Ex. 30. *Complete the following sentences using the Subjunctive Mood, perfect form.*

1. It's a pity you didn't come. You ... (to enjoy the party). 2. You shouldn't have let her go so early. She ... (to meet so many interesting people). 3. You should have warned us that the discussion would be postponed. We ... (to change one's plans). 4. It's a pity I didn't know the book was on sale. I ... (to buy it). 5. They didn't know it was so difficult to get the tickets, or they ... (to take care of them earlier). 6. It's a pity we didn't know you were there in July, too. We ... (can spend the time together). 7. Why didn't you tell me that you also wanted to go with us? We ... (to take you with us, of course). 8. I didn't know it would take us two full days to get there. We ... (to go by plane). We ... (to save a lot of time).

Ex. 31. **Complete the following sentences using the Subjunctive Mood according to the model.**

M o d e l: The child crossed the street in the wrong place.
Another moment and he **would have got run down.**

1. We reached the station when the train was on the point of leaving. Another minute and we ... 2. He was the second to come to the finish. One more effort and he ... 3. I kept her from falling into the water. Another moment and she ... 4. I left on the day of his arrival. Another day and we ... 5. His unexpected arrival spoiled everything. She refused to tell us anything. Another minute and she ... 6. We didn't manage to talk him into coming.. Another word and he ...

Ex. 32. **Express your opinion of the following statements using the Subjunctive Mood.**

M o d e 1: He didn't obey the doctor's order (to be the right thing).
He should have obeyed the doctor's order. It **would have been** the right thing.

1. He didn't mention the fact in his report (to be the right time and place). 2. I didn't ask him this question (to be the thing to do). 3. They didn't follow his advice (to be only wise). 4. She didn't feel quite well but she didn't postpone the party (to do harm). 5. He didn't apologize for being late (nobody, to be angry). 6. They didn't accept his offer (to be only wise). 7. He didn't warn us about the change in the time-table (not to ruin our day off). 8. They didn't put off the trip in spite of the storm (to have an accident).

Ex. 33. **Translate the following sentences into English using the Subjunctive Mood.**

1. Этот вопрос озадачил бы любого. 2. Я бы тоже согласился на такое предложение. 3. Кому бы вы предложили эту работу? 4. Было бы неплохо сходить на выставку современной живописи. 5. Еще мгновение и мы бы опоздали на поезд. 6. Было бы очень интересно поговорить с ним об искусстве. 7. На твоем месте я бы не стал извиняться перед ним. 8. Еще бы одного человека — и мы бы составили команду. 9. Он бы принял ваше приглашение, я не сомневаюсь в этом. 10. Мы не знали, что он не сможет прийти. Мы бы отложили собрание. 11. Я бы слушал докладчика более внимательно на твоем месте, он говорит очень интересно. 12. Вам бы надо обратиться к моему брату. Он бы вам разъяснил этот вопрос. 13. На вашем месте я оставил бы ее в покое. Она сейчас очень расстроена. 14. Нет человека, который не знал бы этого актера. 15. Немного больше терпения и ты бы научился кататься на коньках. 16. Без рекомендательного письма она бы не обратилась к ним. 17. Стоило бы ввести этот метод в нашу работу тоже. 18. Этот план вполне можно было бы осуществить. 19. Еще бы рубль, и я купил бы этот словарь. 20. Вам не следовало купаться в холодной воде. Вы могли бы простудиться.

Ex. 34. **Complete the following sentences using the Subjunctive Mood according to the model and translate them into Russian.**

M o d e l: But for the nasty weather* I ... (not to stay at home).
But for the nasty weather I would not stay at home.
But for the taxi they ... (to miss the train).
But for the taxi they would have missed the train.

* But for the nasty weather… = If it weren't for the nasty weather…
But for the taxi… = If it had not been for the taxi.

A. 1. But for a foreign accent one ... (to take him for a Russian). 2. But for the mistake in the address the letter ... (to reach them in time). 3. But for her impatience ... (to be a good teacher). 4. But for his absence the meeting ... (not to be postponed). 5. But for her smile I ... (not to recognize her). 6. But for his signature we ... (not to believe it was his order). 7. But for the late hour it ... (to be possible to get him on the phone). 8. But for the snow storm the plane ... (to arrive in time). 9. But for him nobody ... (to notice the mistake).
B. 1. But for the ship's crossword puzzle, Lautisse ... 2. But for the ship's librarian ... 3. But for Lautisse's voyage to New York, Mr. Gregg … 4. But for the fact that Gregg's fence needed a coat of paint ... 5. The New York papers wouldn't have got hold of the story but for ... 6. Lautisse would never have taken up a brush again but for ... 7. But for the telephone being disconnected ... 8. Gregg would never have become a rich man but for ... 9. But for Lautisse's signature at the bottom corner of each section ...

Ex. 35. **Translate the following sentences using "but-for" phrase.**

1. Если бы не дождь, мы бы не застряли в пути. 2. Если бы не он, мне бы и в голову не пришло обратиться к ним за помощью. 3. Почта была бы доставлена вовремя, если бы не снежный буран. 4. Если бы не этот неприятный инцидент, вечер прошел бы хорошо. 5. Если бы не его болезнь, он бы принял приглашение. 6. Я не знаю, как бы мы связались с ним, если бы не справочное бюро. 7. Мы бы никогда не уговорили ее участвовать в работе нашего клуба без его помощи.

II. The Use of the Subjunctive Mood in Complex Sentences With an Adverbial Clause of Condition

Ex. 36. *Study the following chart; a) translate the sentences into Russian, b) change the order of the clauses like this: 1 (he, she, etc.) would apologize if I (he, she, etc.) were in your place.*

	conditional clause	principal clause
non-perfect	1. If I (he, she) **were** in your place	I (he, she) **would ('d) apologize.**
	2. If he **knew** her better	he **would introduce** me to her.
	3. If I **could speak** English	I **would show** him about the town.

perfect	1. If he **had been** careful 2. If she **hadn't** missed the train 3. If I **had been told** about it in time	he **wouldn't have made** this mistake. she **would have arrived** hours ago (in time, etc.). I **could have helped** you.

Ex. 37. **Answer the following questions, using the Subjunctive Mood (practise the same questions and answers in reported speech).**

1. What would you say if you pushed somebody in the crowd? 2. Where would you go if you were free now? 3. Would you go to the country for the weekend if the weather were bad? 4. What would you give your friend as a present if you had fifty roubles? 5. Would you read a book by a modern or a 19th century writer if you had to make a book-report? 6. What would you do if you felt ill? 7. What second foreign language would you study if you were given a choice? 8. How would you get in touch with your friend if your telephone were disconnected? 9. Whom would you ask for help if you wanted to have your car repaired? 10. Would you have fruit or ice-cream for dessert? 11. What would you do if you dropped your watch? 12. What would you do if you missed your train?

Ex. 38. **Ask questions about the text or the book you are reading, using the perfect forms of the Subjunctive Mood, give answers to them, practise both in reported speech.**

M o d e l: 1. Would the Greggs have met Lautisse if they hadn't sailed on board the *Queen Elizabeth?*
2. How would the Greggs have learned who Lautisse was if the ship's librarian hadn't helped them?

Ex. 39. **Complete the following sentences, using the Subjunctive Mood.**

1. I would have got in touch with her if her telephone ... (not to be disconnected). 2. Nobody would have paid attention to him if there ... (not to be something funny about his behaviour). 3. He ... (not to go into details), if he hadn't been asked so many questions. 4. The party would have been dull if we ... (not to show the film). 5. If you weren't smiling, we ... (to believe your story). 6. She would be a good teacher if she ... (to be more patient). 7. "I haven't seen him for ten years at least." "You would still recognize him if you ... (to see him)." 8. If the driver had slowed down at the right moment he ... (not to have the accident). 9. What would you say if I ... (to refuse to come to the party)? 10. He would give up the idea of leaving town if he ... (to offer a good job). 11. I wouldn't give up art if I ... (to have your talent).

Ex. 40. **Paraphrase the following sentences according to the model:**

M o d e l: (a) He can't travel first class. He can't afford it.
He would travel first class if he could afford it.
(b) She had changed so much that I didn't recognize her.
If she had not changed so much I would have recognized her.

1. The child did not obey him-because he raised his voice at her. 2. The job was dull. He gave it up. 3. If you get him on the telephone, it will save us a lot of trouble. 4. The radio was off, I missed the weather report. 5. It wasn't once that he broke his promises. They stopped believing him. 6. The director is out of town. They can't settle the problem without him. 7. The art expert looked at the portrait closely, he noticed the defect. 8. If they don't accept the invitation, we shall be disappointed. 9. Something went wrong with the car engine. We had an accident on the road. 10. The sportsman was in bad form; he failed to win the prize. 11.1 haven't got my camera with me. I can't take a picture of this interesting building. 12. Nobody offered to drive me home. I went home on foot. 13. The acting was poor. The play didn't impress us.

Ex. 41. **Translate the following sentences.**

1. Если бы она была более терпеливой, с ней легче было бы иметь дело. 2. Я бы никогда не подумал, что он твой брат, если бы он не представился мне. 3. Никто бы из нас не обратил внимания на связь между этими двумя фактами, если бы он не указал на это. 4. Если бы здесь было больше света, я бы непременно сфотографировал этих туристов. 5. Если бы фары были в исправности, мы бы смогли продолжать путь ночью. 6. Если бы вы не были так рассеяны, вы не сделали бы столько ошибок. 7. Если бы он сразу предложил нам взять такси, мы бы не потеряли столько времени. 8. Если бы не дожди, мы все время были бы на палубе. 9. Если бы он не схватил меня за руку, я бы прошла мимо, не заметив его. 10. Было бы неплохо поговорить о современной живописи с художником. 11. Этот фильм стоило бы посмотреть только после того, как вы прочтете книгу. 12. Если бы фильм был цветной, он бы производил большее впечатление. 13. Если бы вы дали ей знать, что вы хотите поговорить с ней, она бы зашла к вам. 14. Он подумал, что он тоже не знал бы, как бы он поступил, если бы он был на ее месте. 15. Мы считали, что бесполезно говорить с ним на эту тему, он все равно поступил бы по-своему.

Ex. 42. **Study the following chart.**

non-perfect	perfect
1. If the station **weren't** a long way from here	he **wouldn't have taken** a taxi.
2. If I **were** you	I'**d have done** the same.
3. We **would be still puzzling** over the problem	if you **hadn't helped** us.
4. He could go to the South this summer	if he **had been saving** up money.

Ex. 43. **Practise the following, mind the above chart.**

M o d e l: He is a very careless driver. The police stopped his car again yesterday.
If he weren't a careless driver, the police wouldn't have stopped his car again yesterday.

1. I shan't paint the house this year. It was given a fresh coat of paint only a year ago. 2. The windows face a noisy street. I was unable to sleep in the room. 3. She is very absent-minded. She forgot all about our arrangement for the afternoon- 4. This question was not discussed at yesterday's meeting; we are not clear about it. 5. The engine doesn't pull properly. We didn't quite manage the hill. 6. He didn't become a professional musician. He is not talented enough. 7. The man is too proud. He didn't ask us for help. 8. The new assistant is difficult to deal with. They refused to work with him.

Ex. 44. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Если бы она выехала поездом 10.15, она была бы уже здесь. 2. Если бы дорога шла через лес, мы бы, конечно, пошли пешком. 3. Если бы он жил в Москве, я бы вас давно с ним познакомила. 4. Мы бы согласились на это предложение, если бы оно было разумно. 5. Если бы он занимался регулярно весь семестр, он бы сейчас не боялся экзаменов. 6. Она бы была здоровым человеком, если бы следовала советам врача все эти годы. 7. Если бы мы знали его адрес, мы бы сообщили ему о результатах экзаменов еще вчера. 8. Если бы ты следил за выступлением внимательно, ты бы сейчас не задавал таких вопросов.

Ex. 45. Open the brackets using the correct form of the Subjunctive Mood.

HOW I BECAME AN ARTIST

When I was young I hated art. I never (to hate) it so much if I (not to live) with an artist — it was my father — if I (not to see) how hard he took his failures. That's why I was very glad to get the chance of going into an office and become a clerk.

I had a bowler hat, a home, a nice little wife and a nice little baby. I sent money to my mother every week, and helped my sister. A nice happy young man. I enjoyed life in those days.

But one day when I was sitting in our London office I happened to drop a blot* on an envelope. But for this drop of ink my life (to continue) to be nice and pleasant. Having nothing better to do just then, I started pushing it about with my pen to try and make it look more like a face. And from that moment I was lost. If only I (to be able) to keep from drawing I (not to be) what I am now. I couldn't keep from drawing even during office hours.

When my boss found out about it he sent for me and said he was dissatisfied with me. But I said I (to give up) drawing gladly if I could.

"Jimson," he said, "I don't want to turn you out. If I (to turn) you out now you never (to be able) to get another job. I suggest that you take a couple of days off and think it over. This is my final suggestion."

If I (to listen) to reason then I still (to be) a good clerk now. But I spent my holiday drawing, and when I went back to the office I didn't last long. I left within a week. I painted about twelve hours a day and hated to be interrupted. Some of my pictures were even sold. They were very classical. Almost early Turner."'*

But then one day I happened to see a Manet*** and was greatly impressed. When I came out of the museum I saw the whole world in a different light. But for Manet I (not to see) the world of colour as I see it now.

(after "The Horse's Mouth" by Joyce Cary)

* клякса

** British painter, 1775—1851 *

** French impressionist painter, 1832—1883

Ex. 46. Test translation.

1. Ему очень хотелось познакомить ее со своими друзьями. 2. Хотя я и знаком с ним целый год, он все еще остается для меня загадкой. 3. Прежде чем принять окончательное решение, нужно еще раз все хорошо обдумать. 4. На вашем месте я бы отказался от этой идеи. Ее трудно осуществить. 5. Он обошелся с ними очень некрасиво. Он даже накричал на них. Ему бы следовало извиниться перед ними за свое поведение. 6. Казалось, мой вопрос озадачил его. Он не нашелся, что ответить. 7. Я почти уверен, что они бы согласились с нашим предложением, если бы не последний пункт. 8. Нам пришлось отложить посещение музея до следующего месяца, так как он был закрыт на ремонт. 9. Если бы не его терпение и упорная работа,

он бы не добился таких хороших результатов. 10. Ребенок настолько непослушен, что у нее не хватает с ним терпения. 11. Зачем вдаваться в подробности? Вопрос всем ясен. 12. Он подробно рассказал нам о своих впечатлениях о поездке на Кубу. 13. Канал, соединяющий Москву реку с Волгой, был построен в 1937 году. 14. Как раз в связи с предстоящей экзаменационной сессией вчера было проведено собрание. 15. Простите, я не расслышал в какой связи вы упомянули это событие. 16. Если бы вы предложили ему свою помощь, он бы с радостью принял ее. 17. Нельзя терять ни одной минуты. Положение очень серьезное. Я предлагаю, чтобы вы как можно скорее связались с городом и попросили вызвать профессора. 18. Ваш дом совершенно не нуждается в ремонте, он в прекрасном состоянии (порядке). Покрасьте его, и он будет выглядеть опять новым. 19. Он с трудом узнал свою собственную подпись, которую поставил под документом двадцать лет назад. 20. Выставка современной живописи произвела на нас большое впечатление. Ее несомненно стоило посетить. 21. Почему бы вам не взяться изучать еще один иностранный язык в дополнение к английскому? Вы можете позволить себе это, у вас достаточно времени. 22. Не откладывайте задание на завтра, принимайтесь за работу немедленно.

SPEECH EXERCISES

Ex. 47. Retell in narrative form.

AT THE GALLERY

"Soames!"

Soames turned his head and saw his cousin June.

"How are you!" he said. "Haven't seen you for twenty years."

"No. How do you like the exhibition?"

"I don't. The show must be a financial loss to its owner."

"Of course it is."

"How do you know?"

"It's my Gallery."

"Pardon? Yours? What makes you run a show like this? Nobody's going to buy such pictures. If you take my advice, you'll close this exhibition."

At this moment Fleur's voice said:

"Hello, Father! Here you are! Sorry to have kept you waiting."

"Well," said Soames, "you're a punctual sort of young woman."

"You're not going to buy any of these, Father?" Fleur pointed to the pictures.

"No," said Soames.

Fleur dragged at his arm. "Oh! Let's go! It's an awful show anyway."
(after "To Let" by J. Galsworthy)

Ex. *48. Answer the following questions. Sum up your answers.*

1. Planning a Weekend

1. Is there a place in the country you like to spend a weekend now and then? 2. Where is it? 3. How do you get there: by train or by car? 4. Is the house a long way from the station? 5. Whom does the house belong to? 6. Is there anybody waiting for you at the place? 7. What do you do in the evenings — go for walks or just sit around and relax? 9. How long do you usually stay? 10. When should you be back at work on Monday morning?

2. Your Favourite Magazine

1. What is your favourite magazine? 2. Is it a monthly or a weekly magazine? 3. Since when have you been reading it? 4. Why do you find it interesting? 5. What do the articles deal with? 6. What attracts you most in a magazine? 7. Are there any crossword puzzles in the magazine? 8. Are you good at solving puzzles? 9. How much is a yearly subscription*?

3. Redecorating the Flat

1. What colour would you like to have the room painted? 2. Give me your reasons for picking out this colour of all the colours. 3. Would you rather do the work yourself or have it done by some painter? 4. Is it hard work? What should we begin with: whitewashing the ceiling or painting the walls? 5. What do you do with the furniture — cover it with paper or take it out into the corridor? 6. How many coats of paint should the walls be given? 7. How long do you suppose it would take a team of workers to do the work?

* подписка

4. On Introductions

1. Is it usual to have a person introduce himself? 2. How are introductions usually made? 3. What is the usual formula of introduction? 4. What do people say when they are introduced to each other? 5. What are the rules to follow when introducing people?

5. The Latest Exhibition at Exhibition Hall

1. Has there been any exhibition held lately at Exhibition Hall?
2. When did it open? For how long was it open? 3. Have I any chance of seeing the exhibition? Is it still open? 4. What is on show? 5. Do you happen to remember any new names? 6. Whose pictures impressed you most? 7. Did anything in particular catch your attention?

Ex. 49. Read the following. Answer the questions, using the vocabulary of the lesson and retell the passage.

Picasso is perhaps the best known and most influential* of modern artists. Many people have made fun of his paintings; others have disliked them; but thousands believe him to be a great artist. What is certain is that more people will admire Picasso as the years go by.

In 1960 a large and impressive exhibition of Picasso's paintings was held in the Tate Gallery in London. Several hundred of his canvases were exhibited and the public came in their thousands to see them. At last people could see his paintings properly in their true colours and they were certainly impressed by his great variety** of styles.

Picasso, who was born in Malaga in Spain in 1881, took up painting seriously in about 1895. During his long life he has always tried to find new ways of expressing himself in art. Most of his early pictures are easy to understand and like: gay scenes of Paris, and rather sad pictures of actors, players and poor people, for example. Then he became a cubist, painting people and objects*** as if they were made of cubes, squares and triangles. His later cubist pictures are very abstract and painted in browns and greys.

In the nineteen-thirties Picasso's art often expressed sorrow**** and anger with great power. His best known painting of the period is *Guernica* showing the horrors***** of war.

Picasso's art has always been restless, searching; symbolic, sentimental, satirical, it has never been simply formal.

Questions

1. What part does Picasso play in modern art? 2. Why can there be no doubt that more people will admire Picasso as the years'go by? . What exhibition was held in the London Tate Gallery in I960? 4, What did the exhibition offer the public? 5. Why are Picasso's exhibitions always an important event?'6. What nationality was Picasso? 7. When did he take up painting seriously? 8. What had he been searching for all his life? 9. What are his early pictures like? 10. What are cubist paintings? 11. What is abstract art? 12. What sort of feelings can be discovered in many of his paintings of the nineteen-thirties? 13. What is his most famous painting of the period? 14. Why is *Guernica* of particular interest? 15. Why is *Guernica* believed to have marked a turning point in modern art? 16. Why is the

public usually greatly impressed by Picasso's works? '17. What can be said of Picasso's art?

* влиятельный
** разнообразие
*** предмет
**** печаль
***** ужасы

Ex. 50. Read the following, answer the questions, retell the text in English.

ДОБРЫЙ ДЕНЬ, ЧУДЕСНАЯ ВОДА СЕГОДНЯ

Двадцативосьмилетний англичанин Уильям Хонивилл возвращался домой из Австралии на борту теплохода. После непродолжительной остановки теплоход покинул остров Гран-Канария. Была глубокая ночь. Хонивилл отправился к себе в каюту, но, дойдя до двери, передумал — его соседи по каюте продолжали шумно веселиться и явно не собирались ложиться спать. В поисках тишины Хонивилл вновь поднялся на палубу и устроился с сигаретой на самой корме.

Он просидел так больше часа. Потом встал и бросил рассеянный взгляд на часы. Они показаывали 4.30 утра. Хонивилл шагнул...

Вот как он вспоминает о дальнейшем: ^

— Я не помню, как летел вниз с высоты двадцати метров. Первой мыслью после того, как я очутился в воде было — скорей догнать корабль. Но теплоход был уже далеко. Я продолжал плыть. Море было спокойно. Я стал обдумывать свое положение. Соседи по каюте вряд ли хватятся меня. Чтобы отвлечься от грустных мыслей, я стал думать о насущных делах — неоплаченных счетах, сделанных заказах.

К двум часам дня я начал ощущать усталость. Только тут я обратил внимание, что не снял с себя туфли. Подумав, я решил остаться в них — какой смысл раздеваться? Я заметно слабел.

Было около четырех часов, когда я увидел приближающийся ко мне теплоход, но подумал, что это игра воображения. На палубе не было ни одного человека: «Ну конечно, файф-о-клок» — с горечью подумал я.

В девять часов утра капитану доложили, что исчез пассажир. Капитан приказал развернуться и искать пассажира. Его нашли через шесть с половиной часов.

— Добрый день, чудесная вода сегодня! — с трудом произнес Уильям, когда его подняли на борт, и рухнул на палубу.

Questions

1. Where was William Horneville going? 2. How was he travelling? 3. For how long did the ship stop over at Grand Canary? 4. What made orneville change his mind about going to bed? 5. What was taking place in his cabin? 6. What sort of a party were his fellow-passengers having? 7. Why did he go to the stern? 8. How did he happen to fall overboard? 9. Why was there no hope of catching up with the ship? 10. What did he realize as he started thinking over his situation? 11. Why were his fellow-passengers unlikely to miss him? 12. Why were unpaid bills, orders and other business matters likely to keep his mind off sadder thoughts? 13. What did he take the approaching ship for at first? 14. Why did he feel so bitter about the five o'clock tea-drinking ritual? 5. When was the disappearance of a passenger reported to the ship's master? 16. What were the captain's orders? 17. How much time had passed before the man on watch finally noticed Horneville? 18. What did Horneville say on finding himself on deck?

Ex. 51. Retell the following in English.

ВЕРЕЩАГИНСКАЯ КАРТИНА НАЙДЕНА!

В одно прекрасное утро... Да, для меня оно стало действительно прекрасным, счастливым. В это утро молодой москвич Эрик Ко-вальцик купил ноябрьский номер «Техника — молодежи» за 1966 год. Статья под заголовком «Загадка старой открытки», рассказывающая о картине «Наполеон I при реке Березине», заинтересовала его. Еще минута, и он понял, что вполне возможно, что речь идет о той картине, что находится у него дома! Она досталась ему от дедушки.

На следующий же день Эрик связался по телефону с Государственным историческим музеем. Если это действительно полотно Верещагина, то он должен предложить его музею, где собраны и экспонируются все произведения об Отечественной войне 1812 года.

В тот же день я зашел к Эрику Ковальцику. В глубоком волнении жду минуты встречи с картиной, поискам которой отдано столько лет. Вот она — передо мной! Нет ни малейшего сомнения в том, что она стоила всех затраченных мной усилий. Картина производит сильное впечатление. Суровое, даже гневное выражение лица Наполеона. Его взгляд обращен в сторону Березины, где остатки французской армии с трудом переправляются на другой берег реки. Идет снег. Солдаты прижались друг к другу. Какая-то леденящая атмосфера. Пейзаж усиливает это впечатление.

Я осматриваю каждую фигуру картины, внимательно изучаю детали. На обратной стороне картины читаю строчки: «Картина эта написана мужем моим Василием Васильевичем Верещагиным» и подпись «Л. В. Верещагина. 4 декабря 1904 года». Именно в декабре 1904 года была

организована выставка произведений замечательного баталиста. Картина наверняка выставлялась на этой выставке. В 1967 году отмечалось 125-летие со дня рождения художника, и я был счастлив, что мне удалось найти его последнее незавершенное полотно.

Более десяти лет я собираю все, что связано с Верещагиным. Шли годы, собрание мое росло. Летом прошлого года я передал коллекцию в дар городу Череповцу. В доме, где родился выдающийся художник-баталист, открывается музей.

Е. Успенский

"Science for Youth"; "The Mystery of the Old Picture Postcard";
"Napoleon I at the Berezina"; the State Historical museum; the Patriotic War of 1812; the remnants of; a landscape; a painter of battle pieces; Cherepovets.

Ex. 52. Read and retell the passage. Retell it in the person of Foinet, Philip's teacher. Speak on how difficult it is to give up something you love.

Foinet's Advice

Philip knew that on the days Foinet came to the studio he lunched at a little restaurant in the Rue d'Odessa*, and he hurried his own meal so that he could go and wait outside till the painter came out. Philip walked up and down the crowded street and at last saw Monsieur Foinet walking towards him; Philip was very nervous, but he made himself go up to him.

"I should like to speak to you for one moment," he began.

Foinet gave him a quick look, recognized him, but he did not smile a greeting.

"Speak," he said.

"I've been working at the studio nearly two years now under you. I want to ask you to tell me frankly if you think it worth while** for me to continue."

Philip's voice was shaking a little. Foinet walked on without looking up.

"I'm very poor," Philip continued. "If I have no talent I would rather do something else."

"Do you live near here?"

Philip told him where his studio was. Foinet turned round.

"Let us go there? You shall show me your work."

"Now?" cried Philip.

"Why not?"

Philip had nothing to say. He walked silently by the master's side. He felt terribly frightened. In his heart he hoped that Foinet would look at his pictures, would shake his hand and say: "Not bad. Go on, my boy. You have talent, real talent."

They arrived at the house. Philip suddenly felt that he did not want to know

the truth; if he could he would have asked Foinet to go away.

In the room Foinet sat down; and Philip without a word placed before him two portraits, two or three landscapes, and a number of sketches.

"That's all," he said with a nervous laugh.

Foinet lit a cigarette. "You have very little money?" he asked at last.

•'Very little," answered Philip, with a sudden feeling of cold at his heart. "Not enough to live on."

"With hard work there is no reason why you should not become a painter. You would find hundreds who painted worse than you, hundreds who painted as well. I see no talent in anything you have shown me. You will never be anything but mediocre."*

Philip made himself answer calmly. "I'm very thankful to you for having taken so much trouble, I can't thank you enough."

Foinet put his hand on Philip's shoulder.

"But if you were to ask me my advice, I should say: try your luck at something else. It sounds very hard but let me tell you this: I would give all I have in the world if someone had given me this advice when I was your age and I had taken it."

Philip looked up at him with surprise.

"It's cruel to discover one's mediocrity only when it is too late."

He gave a little laugh as he said the last words and quickly walked out of the room.

(from "Of Human Bondage" by W. S. Maugham)

* Odessa Street (in Paris)

** иметь смысл, стоить

Ex. *53. Use the following in situations.*

1. On Board a Ship

to suggest; to go on a sea voyage; to talk smb into smth; to get in touch with smb/smth; to find out; to manage; to book the tickets; to sail on the *Rossiya;* a modern liner; to arrive at a port; to go on board; to see smb off; to wave good-bye; to wish a comfortable journey; impatiently; can't help doing smth; to raise the gangway (сходни, трап); o move slowly; on deck; to enjoy (doing) smth; to admire; to tear oneself away from; to call at some ports; to pick up and drop passengers; inally; to reach the place; to get much pleasure out of smth.

2. Making a Telephone Call

to get in touch with smb; not to waste time; to go to the public telephone box; to

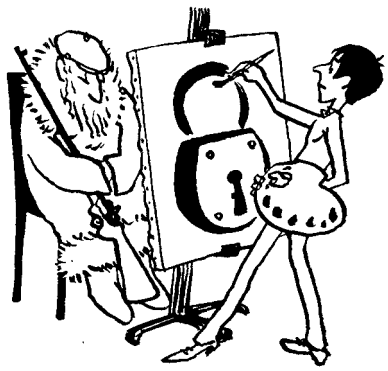
be within a few minutes' walk; to drop a two kopeck coin into the slot (отверстие); to pick up the receiver; to dial the number (набрать номер); to be busy (about the telephone line); to be patient; inally; to be connected; to hear a faint voice; to say "Hello"; to sound unfamiliar; to be puzzled; to turn out; to get the wrong number; to apologize to smb for smth; to ring off.

3. Making an Introduction

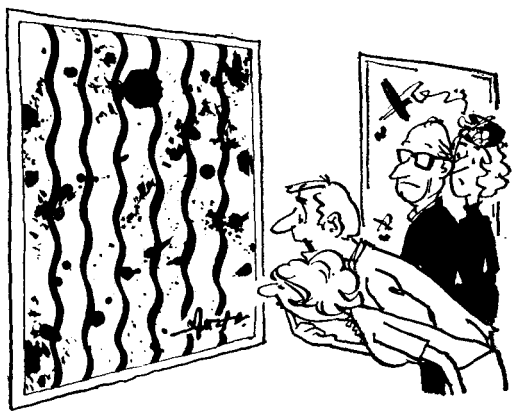
to be invited to a party; to know few people; to be introduced to smb; to say "How do you do" or "Glad to meet you"; to hold out one's hand; to shake hands (with smb); to appear to be; a nice person; to talk about the weather; to be a safe subject; to turn out; to talk art (sport);
not to care for; to enjoy the conversation; to get to be real friendly.

4. Making an Apology

to go to one's work; to go by bus; the rush hour; to be packed; to manage; to get inside; to close the doors; accidentally; to step on smb's foot; to say "Excuse me" ("I beg your pardon"); to hear "It's all right".
Ex. 54. Tell the story of each picture, using the words and phrases given below.



to do a portrait; a night watchman; to sit for a portrait; to paint vigorously; to show deep insight into a person's character; an imaginative artist; a startling result; a padlock.



to have one's flat repaired; to clean up; an exhibition of modern painting; to take a close look at the signature; to get the surprise of one's life; to repeat the design exactly.

It's the same fellow who did the walls in our flat!

Ex. *55 Subjects for oral and written composition.*

1. Tell the story as if it were told by a) Lautisse; b) Gerston; c) Mrs. Gregg; d) a newspaper reporter; e) one of the businessmen who had arrived to buy the fence.
2. Give character-sketches of a) Mr. Gregg; b) Mrs. Gregg; c) Lautisse.
3. Explain how it happened that a plain garden fence was sold for a work of art.
4. Write up the story as it might have appeared in the newspapers under the headline: LAUTISSE PAINTS AGAIN.
5. Tell a story to illustrate the English saying "The game is worth the candle" (Игра стоит свеч).
6. A painting that has impressed me.
7. A visit to a one-man exhibition of painting.
8. The life story of a great painter.
9. The Russian school of painting.
10. Modern Soviet painting.
11. The dangers of "modernism" in art.

Lesson Four

Text: Conversation (from "My Family and Other Animals" by Gerald Durrel![1])

Grammar: Subjunctive Mood (contd.)

The use of the subjunctive mood in "as if" clauses, in an object clause after the verb "wish", in a subject clause after "It's high time ..."

Conversation

As soon as we had settled down and started to enjoy the island,[2] Larry[3] wrote to all his friends and asked them to come out and stay. The fact that the villa was only just big enough to house the family had not occurred to him.

"I've asked a few people out for a week or so," he said casually to Mother one morning.

"By all means, dear," said Mother unthinkingly.

"I thought it would do us good to have some intelligent and stimulating company[4] around."

"I hope they're not too *highbrow*[5], dear," said Mother.

"Good Lord, Mother, of course they're *not;* just extremely charming, ordinary people. I don't know why you've got this fear about people being highbrow."

"I don't like the highbrow ones," said Mother sadly. "I'm not highbrow, and I-can't talk about poetry and things. But they always seem to imagine, just because I'm your mother, that I should be able to discuss literature with them. And they always come and ask me silly questions just when I'm in the middle of cooking."

"I don't ask you to discuss art with them," said Larry, a little illtemperedly, "but I think you ought to try to hide your awful taste in literature. I fill the house with good books and I find your bedside table piled with cookery books, gardening books, and the most unpleasant-looking mystery stories. I can't think where you pick these things up."

"They're very good detective stories," said Mother. "I borrowed them from the doctor."

Larry gave a short, angry sigh and picked up his book again.

"You'd better let the Pension Suisse[6] know when they're coming," Mother remarked.

"What for?" asked Larry surprised.

"So they can reserve the rooms," said Mother equally surprised.

"But I've invited them to stay here," Larry pointed out.

"Larry! You haven't! Really you are most *thoughtless*. How can they possibly stay here?"

"I really don't see what you're making such a fuss about," said Larry coldly.

"But where are we going to *sleep?"* said Mother, very much upset in her mind. "There's hardly enough room for us, as it is. You'll just have to write to those people and put them off."

"I can't put them off," said Larry, "they're on the way."

"Really, Larry, you are the most annoying person. Why on earth[7] didn't you tell me before? You wait until they're nearly here, and then you tell me."

"I didn't know you were going to treat the arrival of a few guests as if it were a catastrophe," Larry explained.

"But, dear, it's so silly to invite people when you know there's no room in the villa."

"I do wish you'd stop fussing," said Larry; "there's quite a simple solution to the whole matter."

"What?" asked Mother suspiciously.

"Well, since the villa isn't big enough, let's move to one that is."

"Don't be ridiculous. Whoever heard of moving into a larger house because you've invited some friends to stay?"

"What's the matter with the idea? It seems a perfectly sensible solution to me; after all, if you say there's no room here, the obvious thing to do is to move."

"The obvious thing to do is not to invite people," said Mother.

"I don't think it's good for us to live like hermits," said Larry. "I really invited them for you. They're a charming crowd. I thought you'd like to have them. Liven things up a bit for you."

"I'm quite lively enough, thank you," said Mother. "How many have you invited?"

"Oh, just a few... two or three... They won't all be coming at once. I expect they'll turn up one by one."

"I think at least you might be able to tell me how many you've invited," said Mother.

"Well, I can't remember now. Some of them didn't reply, but that doesn't mean anything ... they're probably on their way and thought it was hardly worth letting us know. Anyway, if you plan for seven or eight people I should think that would cover it."

"You mean, including ourselves?"

"No, no, I mean seven or eight people as well as the family."

"But it's absurd, Larry; we can't possibly fit thirteen people into this villa, with all the good will in the world."

"Well, let's move then. I've offered you a perfectly sensible solution. I don't know what you're arguing about."

Larry gave her a hurt look, and picked up his books. There was a long silence, during which Larry calmly read his book.

"I wish you wouldn't just lie there," Mother said at last. "After all, they're your friends. It's up to you to do something."

Larry put down his book.

"I really don't know what you expect me to do, "he said. "Every suggestion I've made you've disagreed with."

"If you made sensible suggestions I wouldn't disagree."

"I don't see anything ridiculous in anything I suggested."

"But, Larry, dear, do be reasonable. We can't just rush to a new villa because some people are coming. I doubt whether we'd find one in time, anyway. We are not moving to another villa," said Mother firmly; "I've made up my mind about that."

She straightened her spectacles, gave Larry an angry look, and walked off towards the kitchen, expressing determination in every inch.

The new villa was enormous...

NOTES

1. **Gerald Durrell** was born in Jamshedpur, India, in 1925. A well-known zoologist, director of the Jersey Zoological Park founded by him in 1958. He has written a number of books describing his animal-collecting expeditions to different parts of the world. His book "The Overloaded Ark", "The Drunken Forest", "The Whispering Lad", "Three Tickets to Adventure" and others have been translated into many languages, including Russian. "Conversation" is a chapter from "My Family and Other Animals" (1967) giving a humorous picture of the life of the Durrell family (mother, daughter and three sons) on the Greek island of Corfu (1934—1939).
2. the island of Corfu
3. **Larry:** Lawrence Durrell, Gerald's eldest brother, now a well-known English writer, the author of "Bitter Lemons", "Justine" and other books.
4. **company:** in the sense of "companionship" общество, компания (людей) it is uncountable, e.g. We're having company tonight. У нас сегодня гости. The Browns are excellent company. Брауны очень приятные люди (собеседники).
5. **highbrow:** persons with intellectual, literary and artistic tastes and interests superior to those of most people заумный
6. **Pension Suisse** *(Fr.):* the local hotel
7. **on earth** *(coll.)*: in "Why (how, etc.) on earth...?" it is used to strengthen the interrogative words.

VOCABULARY

occur *vi* 1. случаться, происходить When did the accident occur? 2.

приходить на ум (в голову) Such an idea never occurred **to** me. It occurred **to** me that I could phone him. Didn't it ever occur **to** you to talk to him about it?

intelligent *a* умный, разумный, смышленый, понятливый an intelligent person (answer, look, etc.); intelligence n ум, интеллект; смышленость, быстрое понимание

charming *a* очаровательный, прелестный a charming girl (smile, house, place, etc.); charm n чары, обаяние, очарование

ordinary *a* обычный, заурядный, простой an ordinary person (day, job, dress, etc.)

fear *n* страх, боязнь, опасение He had no fear **of (about)** anything or anybody. **Phr. for** fear **of** из боязни, боясь She never travels in **a** car **for** fear **of** an accident. He did not speak **for** fear **of** making a mistake. fear *vi/vt* бояться; опасаться We feared **for** his health. They feared the worst. She feared that she might miss the train.

temper *n* 1. нрав, характер a good (sweet, bad, uncertain, etc.) temper; to be ill- (bad-, quick-, etc.) tempered быть раздражительным, вспыльчивым и т.п. 2. настроение, расположение духа to be **in (a)** good (bad) temper; **Phr.** lose (one's) temper выйти из себя; keep (control) one's temper сдерживать себя

ought to (usage similar to "should") (*модальный глагол, указывающий на долженствование, моральный долг, упрек*) должен, следует I think I ought to help them. He ought not to have spoken to her like that.

pile *n* груда, куча; кипа a pile of books (paper, clothes, etc.); pile vt сваливать, складывать в кучу

borrow *vt* брать в долг, занимать to borrow books (money, etc.) **from** smb

equal *a* равный, одинаковый equal parts (sides; rights, etc.) He has no equal **in** chess, unequal a неравный; (in)equality *n* (не) равенство; equally *adv* равно, в равной степени to be equally good (clever; surprised, interested, etc.) He knows French and English equally well.

fuss *n* суета; суетливость (из-за пустяков) What is all this fuss **about**? **Phr**. make a fuss (**about** smth/**of** smb) суетиться, волноваться (из-за чего-л, вокруг кого-л); fuss vi суетиться, волноваться (по пустякам); fussy *a* суетливый, беспокойный (о человеке) to be fussy **about** one's health (children, clothes, food, etc.)

room *n (lit. & fig.)* место, пространство There is room enough **for** everybody here. There is no room **for** doubts. **Phr.** make room (**for** smb) потесниться, подвинуться, освободить место He moved to make room tor two more people.

annoy *vt* раздражать, надоедать He annoyed us **with** his silly questions. She was annoyed **with** the child, annoyance *n* раздражение, досада, неприятность; annoying a раздражающий, докучающий an annoying person (habit, etc.)

treat *vt* обращаться с (кем-л), относиться к (кому-л/чему-л) to treat smb well (badly, kindly, **with** attention, etc.); to treat smb as a child (friend, stranger, etc.); to treat smth lightly (seriously, etc.) He treated my words as a joke. treatment *n* обращение, обхождение

as if=as though *conj* как если бы He looks (looked) as if he were ill.

suspect *vt* подозревать I suspect (that) they know all about our arrangement. **Phr**. suspect smb **of** smth (doing smth) подозревать кого-л в чем-л; suspicion n подозрение to be **under (above)** suspicion быть под подозрением (вне подозрения); suspicious a подозрительный, вызывающий подозрение a suspicious look (character, etc.); to be suspicious **of** smb относиться к кому-л с подозрением

since *conj* так как, поскольку Since he is absent we'd better put off the discussion.

sense *n* 1. чувство; ощущение The five senses are sight (зрение), hearing (слух), smell (обоняние), taste (вкус) and touch (осязание). **Phr**. a sense **of** duty (humour, proportion, etc.) чувство долга (юмора, меры и т.п.) 2. смысл, значение; благоразумие There is much (little, no, etc.) sense in his words (in what he says; in discussing the question now, etc.); What's the sense of doing that? **Phr**. common sense здравый смысл She showed a lot of common sense. Talk sense говорить по существу дела You'd better listen to him, he is talking sense. The telegram did not make sense, sensible a (благо)разумный a sensible man (idea, suggestion, solution, etc.); sensible advice (words, etc.) senseless a неблагоразумный, бессмысленный

include *vt* включать; заключать, содержать в себе He was included **in** the delegation. The price for the goods includes packing.

WORD COMBINATIONS

settle down in (at some place) поселиться (жить), обосноваться; устроиться

by all means обязательно, непременно

by no means ни в коем случае

I (you, he, etc.) had better (do smth) мне (тебе, ему и т.п.) бы лучше (сделать что-л)

as it is как есть

put smb off 1. отменить приглашение кому-л; 2. отпугнуть, отбить охоту к чему-л

after all тем не менее, все же, в конце концов

turn up (внезапно) появиться; подвернуться (о работе и т.п.)

(the) good will добрая воля

It's up to you (him, etc.) (to do smth) тебе (ему и т.п.) решать (как действовать)

one by one по одному, поодиночке

fit smb (smth) into smth (some place) размещать кого-л (где-л)

EXERCISES ON THE TEXT

Ex. I. Answer the following questions.

1. Why did Larry want all his friends "to come out and stay"? 2. Why didn't Mother like his highbrow friends? 3. Why did Larry think she ought to hide her "awful taste in literature"? 4. Why did Mother expect Larry to let the Pension Suisse know about his friends? 5. Why did Larry refuse to do so? 6. Why did Mother say that he was thoughtless? 7. Why did she tell Larry to write to his friends to put them off? 8. Why couldn't he do so? 9. What did Larry suggest as a "simple solution to the whole matter"? 10. What did he say that made his mother reply that she was quite lively enough? 11. Why didn't Larry tell her how many friends he had invited? 12. What made Mother say that Larry had been unreasonable in what he did? 13. What happened in the end?

Ex. 2. Find in the text the English for:

1. ему и в голову не пришло ...; 2. приносить пользу; 3. обыкновенные, милые люди; 4. спорить об искусстве; 5. вкус в литературе; 6. книги по кулинарии и садоводству; 7. сердито вздохнуть; 8. забронировать номер в гостинице; 9. поднимать шум (из-за пустяков); 10. невыносимый человек; 11. простой выход из создавшегося положения; 12. разумное решение; 13. очень славные люди; 14. приезжать по одному; 15. находиться в пути; 16. при всем желании; 17. разместить в доме тринадцать человек; 18. обиженно посмотреть; 19. спокойно продолжать читать; 20. в конце концов

Ex. 3. Give the four forms of the verbs:

enjoy, stay, occur, hide, find, pile, borrow, let, sleep, upset, annoy, treat, fuss, turn, reply, fit, argue, hurt, lie, agree.

Ex. 4. Paraphrase the following sentences using "had better".

1. I advise you to get down to business at once if you want it done in time. 2. I don't advise you to sit long in the sun. 3. The one sensible thing for him to do is to tell them the whole truth. 4. I think you should take a warm coat with you to be on the safe side. 5. Tell her that it would be more useful for her to read the book in the original than in translation. 6. I think he should go away on a short visit some place, it would do him good. 7. The only sensible thing for you to do, I think, is to look through the report again before handing it in. 8. I shouldn't advise you to make a fuss about such a little thing. 9. If you want to get well, you should obey the doctor's orders. 10. Take my advice and don't put off till tomorrow what you can do today.

Ex. 5. Translate the following sentences using "had better".

1. Ничего особенного не произошло, и вам лучше бы не поднимать шума из-за пустяков. 2. Вы плохо выглядите последнее время. Вам бы стоило подумать лучше о своем здоровье. 3. Она волнуется и ей трудно говорить. Ей бы лучше сначала успокоиться. 4. Нам бы стоило прислушаться к его словам. Он говорит по существу дела. 5. Вы не показывайте вида, что расстроены. Держитесь так, как будто ничего не случилось. 6. Зачем вам ехать на вокзал? Вы лучше закажите билеты по телефону. 7. Нам бы лучше поспешить, а то мы опоздаем на концерт. 8. Мне бы, наверно, стоило перечитать книгу, прежде чем высказывать свою точку зрения.

Ex. 6. Translate the following sentences using "as it is (was)".

1. Мне нужно идти. **Я и так уже** опаздываю. 2. Не стоит ставить в комнату еще один шкаф. Там **и без того** тесно (мало места). 3. Не надо ничего больше объяснять, **и так все** ясно. 4. Не меняйте ничего в своем докладе, оставьте **все в том виде как есть**. 5. Договоренность осталась **прежняя**. 6. Пальто без пояса **все равно** на ней сидит хорошо. 7. Обе стороны подписали контракт **в том виде как он был**, без каких-либо дополнений.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBS

Ex. 7. Study the following phrases; a) recall the. sentences in which they are used in the text, and b) use them in sentences of your own.

settle **down**; occur **to** smb; ask smb **out** (**for** the weekend); **by** all means; fear **about** smth/smb; taste **in** literature; borrow smth **from** smb; fuss **about**; room **for**; put smb **off**; solution **to** the matter; liven **up**; turn **up**; one **by** one; fit **into**; be **up to** smb.

Ex. 8. Fill in the blanks with prepositions or adverbs.

1. I have something important to tell you ... connection ... their offer. 2. He would have never borrowed money ... you without good reason. 3. She told herself that she probably was making a fuss ... nothing. 4. There isn't much sense ... warning him ... the dangers of the trip, he knows it all himself. 5. Her taste ... clothes is admirable, she's very particular ... what she wears. 6. As was to be expected, all those present piled him ... questions ... his expedition. 7. I wish we could find a more sensible solution ... the problem. 8. He had an unpleasant feeling as if he were suspected ... telling a lie. 9. Her friends visited her daily to liven ... her stay ... hospital. 10. He couldn't fit the key ... the lock. 11. After supper Father settled ... ... his favourite armchair ... the evening paper, as was his

habit. 12. There is hardly another student... our group who could equal your friend ... intelligence. 13. Though she has a driver's license, she seldom drives ... fear ... meeting ... an accident. 14. "May I come ... Monday?" "... all means." 15. I'd like to ask you ... ... our country place ... the weekend. Why stay ... town ... such fine weather? We've got room enough ... half a dozen people ... least. 16. She always turns ... when she is least ... all expected. 17. ... all the good will ... the world I can't help you, I'm no good ... solving such problems.

Ex. 9. Give the English for the following phrases, using the preposition "for" in its different meanings. Use the phrases in sentences of your own.

I. уехать из Москвы в Киев; поезд на Хабаровск.

II. а) отправиться на прогулку в лес; поехать покататься на машине; пойти на реку искупаться; пойти в ресторан пообедать (поужинать); пригласить на обед; закрыть на ремонт;

б) обратиться к другу за помощью; попросить совета; послать за доктором; искать кошелек (книгу, ключи); искать в кошельке монету; попросить газету (адрес, номер телефона).

III. по той или иной причине; причина для волнения (радости, беспокойства); ради друга; во имя дружбы; сделать что-л для кого-л; найти время для кого-л/что-л; читать книгу ради удовольствия.

IV. чувствовать любовь (ненависть, неприязнь, восхищение, уважение, сострадание) к кому-л/чему-л; вкус к чему-л; жажда знаний.

V. бороться за равноправие; радоваться за кого-л; опасаться за чью-л жизнь; высказываться в пользу какого-л предложения; извиняться за что-л; благодарить за что-л; наказывать за что-л.

VI. полезный для здоровья; готовый к любым трудностям; важный (необходимый, легкий, трудный) для кого-л.

VII. а) в первый раз; на несколько дней (неделю, воскресенье); в течение двух дней (десяти лет); на протяжении нескольких часов (дней, лет); на время; часами (неделями); навсегда.

б) назначить встречу на 6 октября (следующий четверг, утро, вечер).

MISCELLANEOUS PHRASES

подарок ко дню рождения; интересная тема для разговора; звать-на помощь; ждать кого-л; измениться к лучшему (худшему); отложить на три дня; быть подвижным (хорошо выглядеть) для своего возраста; продавать/покупать за определенную цену; заплатить за вещь; получить даром; из страха сделать ошибку; наверняка

EXERCISES IN LEXICOLOGY

Ex. 10. Paraphrase the following sentences according to the models.

M o d e l 1: The girl **looks pretty**.
She is a **pretty-looking** girl.

1. The student **works hard**. He is sure to make great progress. 2. The fellow **looks suspicious** to me. 3. What is your impression about the man? He **looks** intelligent to me. 4. The house **looked ordinary**. 5. It is her style to wear coats that **fit** her **close**. 6. He always **means well**.

M o d e l 2: He is known for **his good nature**.
He is **good-natured**.

1. She has **a kind heart**, she won't hurt a fly. 2. I like people with a **strong mind**. 3. I never knew she had such a **quick temper**. 4. Have you noticed that he mostly uses his **left hand**. 5. The child has **dark hair** and **blue eyes**. 6. I still remember him as a boy, rather thin with a **pale face, long legs** and **narrow shoulders**. 7. She is a woman of **middle age**.

Ex. 11. Give words of the same root in Russian. Compare the meaning.

intelligent, stimulating, company, extreme, charm, ordinary, poetry, temper, mystery, remark, reserve, to treat, catastrophe, absurd

Ex. 12. Compare the meaning of the words in bold type, say which phrase is used literally and which has a figurative sense. Translate the sentences into Russian. Give your own examples.

1. a) Their final decision was to **settle down** in one of the newer towns, b) It usually took him hours to **settle down** to work. c) He was nearing thirty when he decided it was time for him to **settle down**. 2. a) She **turned up** every single bit of paper on the desk, but the note was nowhere to be found, b) He had the habit of **turning up** at the last moment. c) He was a firm believer in his luck; he was sure that some nice offer would **turn up** sooner or later. 3. a) The child **gave up** the toy without a word. b) I **gave up** the cross-word puzzle almost at once, it was too difficult, c) He wouldn't **give up** hope. 4. a) The matter was **put off** for an indefinite time. b) He wouldn't be **put off** with empty promises. c) Failure didn't **put him off**. 5. a) Of all the things offered at the sale he seemed to have **picked up** the most useless, b) She **picked up** the letter and started to read it absent-mindedly.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 13- Fill in the blanks with a suitable word in the correct form. Translate the sentences into Russian.

to annoy; annoying (2); to borrow; charm; to fear; to fuss; intelligence; intelligent; to occur; ordinary; to pile; room (2); sense (2); sensible; to suspect; suspicion; temper; to treat; treatment

1. She ... the matter lightly, as if it were of no importance. 2. We arrived to find them in the middle of their packing, the whole place ... with boxes and packages of all size. 3. At the time her words made little ... to me, I was to understand their full meaning much later. 4. He had the ... habit of... books and then forgetting to return them. 5. There were some cold stares her way. If earlier she had only ... that people were talking behind her back, now she knew it for certain. 6. You may disagree with the author's ... of the problem, but still there seems to be a lot of ... in his approach. 7. The girl's real ... was not in her looks, which happened to be quite ..., but in her manner. 8. Whenever she visited her aunts they would ... about her as if she were a little girl. It was terribly ...! 9. The new assistant was everything the manager had hoped for and even more, he was quick, ... and hard-working. 10. The suggestions he had made were quite ... and we saw no reason why they shouldn't be accepted. 11. She had the two things that so seldom go together—beauty and ... . 12. A seemingly unimportant incident ..., and if it hadn't been for a well-wishing friend, he would have let it pass unnoticed. 13. She read the letter and all became clear. There was no longer ... for doubt. 14. He was certain to have been ... by the interruption, but he never showed it. 15. Failing to get a reply to my telegram, I began to ... the worst. 16. He had never expected his honesty to be doubted and himself treated with ... . 17. He wished he could learn to keep his ... when dealing with people. 18. He moved up to make ... for another person.

Ex. 14. Paraphrase the following, using words and word combinations from the text, and making all necessary changes.

common sense; had better; to put smb off (3); to make a fuss; to turn up; to borrow; to treat; to occur (2); to be up to smb; to annoy; to settle down; to talk sense; no sense in doing smth; fearless; suspicion; by all means; to go on

1. It had been our idea and it was **for us** to make the necessary arrangements. 2. He finally **appeared**, looking extremely disturbed. 3. What she needs is a little more **practical knowledge of life**. 4. His very first failure at the competitions **made him give up** sports. 5. She **continued** talking as if nothing had happened. 6, I wished she would stop asking those silly questions which only **made** people **angry**. 7. I asked if I could **have the use of** his car for a couple of hours. 8. She had promised to do it **for certain**. 9. The accident **took place** shortly after our arrival. 10. He was full of determination to finish the job and no difficulties could stop him. 11. We thought that **the best thing for him to do** would be **to look upon** the whole matter as a joke. 12. We all agreed it was about time he **got married and had a home of his own**. 13. The matter was small and unimportant and we just couldn't understand why he **got all nervous and excited** about it. 14. I had my **doubts** about his honesty and good will but decided to keep them to myself for a time. 15. **It's useless** trying to

prove something to a person who won't listen. 16. **It came into my head** that probably my friend had meant well and it was no fault of his if things went wrong at the last moment. 17. At last, I remarked to myself with satisfaction, the fellow **was saying something worth listening to**.

Ex. 15. Speak on the following topics, using the words and phrases given below.

1. Settling Down In a New Place

to move; Bournemouth*; England; the island of Corfu; the Mediterranean sea; to travel by train (boat); a tiring journey; finally; to arrive safely; to be impressed by the beauty of; to take a villa; just big enough to house the family; no modern conveniences; to settle down; to have lots of things to take care of

2. Larry Has a Bright Idea

a sudden sort of person; to be used to having one's way; to feel cut off from the world; to be eager for some intelligent, stimulating company; to have highbrow tastes in literature; to have no one to talk art to; to waste no time; to send out invitations; to describe smth in detail; to have no common sense; not to occur to smb; not enough room in the house

3. Larry Breaks the News to Mother

to take up the matter with smb; to mention smth casually; finally; to cone to the point; to explain patiently; to express one's point of view; not to like smb's taste in literature; to think badly of mystery stories; detective stories, books on cookery and gardening; to expect understanding from smb; to mean well; to do smth for smb's sake only

4. Mother Fails to See Larry's Point

to be puzzled; to be caught by surprise; not to suspect anything; to be annoyed with smb; to have fears about smth; to put smb off; no room; to be packed like herrings in a tin; to fail to fit thirteen people into the house; to point smth out to smb; to have no patience with smb; to advise; to let the Pension Suisse know about the arrival of several people; to reserve rooms; to try to make smb drop his idea; to get more and more worried; to find it difficult to manage things as it is; to treat smth as a catastrophe

5. Larry Suggests a Solution

to fail to understand; to make a fuss about smth; not to be put off;. the guests; impossible; to get in touch with smb; to be on one's way;. smth ought to

* [‘bɔ:nmeθ]

be done; a perfectly sensible solution; from smb's point of view; had better; to move at once; without a fuss; to lose one's temper; to argue that ...; to do good to smb; after all; to liven things up a bit; not to arrive all at once; to turn up one by one

6. Mother Puts up a Fight

to be full of determination; to have one's mind made up; to be firm in one's decision; to refuse to be talked into doing smth; to see no sense in moving; to look ridiculous; to rush from house to house; to realise; hopeless; to give up.

7. Larry Has His Own Way

the new villa; enormous; lot of room; to (un)pack; to get things arranged once more; to settle down; finally.

SPECIAL DIFFICULTIES

Ex. 16. Translate the following sentences using, "finally" or "after all" according to the sense.

1. Они долго спорили, но **в конце концов** пришли к соглашению.. 2. Почему вы сердитесь? **В конце концов** вы сами виноваты в том,. что произошло. 3. Зачем беспокоиться о нем? В **конце концов** он сам должен знать, как надо вести себя. 4. После ряда неудач он **в конце концов** решил бросить живопись. 5. Текст оказался **в конце концов** не таким уж трудным, как я представлял себе. 6. Она перемерила дюжину пальто и **в конце концов** остановилась на первом. 7. Оставьте все как есть, не исключайте последний пункт. **В конце концов**, это ничего не изменит. 8. После долгих поисков он **в конце концов** нашел то, что искал.

Ex. 17. Translate the following sentences into Russian. Pay attention to the word "since".

1. Our town has greatly changed since you left. 2. We ought to discuss the plan again **since** some changes were introduced in it. 3. **Since** there was no other job at the moment he accepted what was offered him. 4. We haven't heard anything from him or about him **since** he left. 5. **Since** he is leaving you'd better not trouble him with your questions. 6. **Since** his relatives were away he went to stay with his friends in the country. 7. **Since** he is ill we'd better put off our visit to the museum.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Subjunctive Mood (continued)

II. The use of the Subjunctive Mood in "as if (as though)" clauses*

Ex. 18. Study the following chart, translate the sentences into Russian.

adverbial clauses of manner or comparison	1. You are telling me all this 2. He spoke 3. He was looking at the house 4. She had a feeling 5. He spoke English	as if (as though)	it **were** good news. he **knew** what he was talking about. he **had made** it himself. she **had known** him all her life. he **had been** studying it for many years.
predicative clauses	6. It isn't 7. She spoke and it seemed 8. It looked	as if (as though)	you **were** a child. she **would never stop**. the letter **had been written** by a child.

Ex. 19. Open the brackets using the correct form of the Subjunctive Mood.

1. His manner was cheerful as ever as if nothing (to happen). 2. He asked me funny questions, it was as if he (not to follow) the story. 3. He didn't pay attention to her cutting remarks as though he (to be used) to being treated like that. 4. She walked proudly as though the world (to belong) to her. 5. She looked as if she (to hurt) by his remark. 6. The line between his eyes deepened as if he (to puzzle) over something. 7. They looked as if they (to be) brother and sister but not husband and wife, so much alike they were. 8. She was crying as if her heart (to break). 9. They treated her as if she (to be) a little girl. 10. They met him as if they (to expect) him. 11. He introduced her to his brother as though they (not to meet) before. 12. I felt funny as if I (to start) crying at any moment. 13. She sounded quite cheerful over the telephone as if she (to look) forward to the trip. 14. The house looked as though it (not to see) paint for a long time. 15. She was listening to me as if she (to annoy).

Ex. 20. Answer the following questions according to the model.

M o d e l : How do you like the suit on Peter? (to fit; to be made to measure).

---

* In modern English the Indicative Mood is fairly common in "as if (as though)" clauses,

e.g. Try to act as if nothing is the matter.
You act as if you are the only person who knows anything about it.
You act as if nothing has happened

It fits him as if it were made to measure.

1. Have you seen him after the accident? How does he look? (nothing; to happen to him) 2. How did she take the news? (to take it calmly; to be nothing unusual about it) 3. How does this foreign student speak Russian? (to study the language for many years) 4. How did he take our decision? (to be a surprise to him) 5. Have you heard anything about the film? (to look; to be worth seeing) 6. How did he speak about the task given him? (to sound cheerful; to be happy about it) 7. Did he believe the story? (to look suspicious; not to believe it) 8. How do you feel after the swim in the lake? (to drop ten years) 9. How did they treat him? (to be their brother) 10. Did they include me in the expedition? (to speak of; to be included) 11. How did she like the story? (to seem; to be touched)

Ex. 21. Translate the following sentences.

1. У него всегда такой вид, как будто он спешит куда-то. 2. Она вела себя так, как будто ей всё было безразлично. 3. Дождь шел несколько дней, и казалось, что ему не будет конца. 4. Они мчались с такой скоростью, как будто их кто-то преследовал. 5. Он говорит об этом так, как будто то, что он сделал, было вполне обычной вещью. 6. Он смотрел на всех нас, как будто был удивлен тем, что увидел нас там. 7. Она смотрела вниз со страхом, и ей казалось, что она вот-вот сорвется (упадет вниз). 8. У нее такой вид, как будто она больна.

III. The use of the Subjunctive Mood in an Object Clause after the verb "wish"

Ex. 22. Study the following chart, translate the sentences into Russian.

I wish (wished)	he (you, etc.) **were** more attentive. it **weren't** raining. I **hadn't** missed the chance. she (you, etc.) **would take** interest in such problems. I **could go** with them too.

Ex. 23. Practise the following according to the model.

M o d e l I (a) She is fussy. I wish she **weren't fussy**.
(b) He is not healthy. I wish he **were healthy**.

1. She is very suspicious about people. 2. He is not a man of principle. 3. It's not up to me to make a decision. 4. There isn't enough room for all of us

here. 5. She is not well enough. 6. His suggestion is not sensible. 7. He is lazy. 8. She is wasting time when there is such a rush of work. 9. They are too highbrow for my taste. 10. The kid is so annoying.

M o d e l II (a) He has no sense of humour.
I wish he **had** a sense of humour.
(b) She always piles my table with her things.
I wish she **didn't pile** my table with her things.

1. She has no sense of proportion. 2. They don't know their duty. 3. He always borrows money. 4. I just can't get rid of this unpleasant feeling. 5. I don't know what they are suspecting him of. 6. He always interrupts people when they are talking. 7. She often misses her English lessons.

M o d e l III (a) He missed the 8.30.
I wish he **hadn't missed** the 8.30.
(b) He didn't apologize to her.
I wish he **had apologized** to her.

1. They put off the meeting till Friday. 2. This idea occurred to me too late. 3. They didn't include me in the team. 4. He has never been frank with me. 5. I wasted a lot of time on this foolish mystery story. 6. She didn't hide her awful taste in literature. 7. I followed his advice. 8. They didn't reserve rooms at the hotel for us as they had promised to.

M o d e l IV (a) He will go by the night train.
I wish he **wouldn't go** by the night train.
(b) She won't apologize.
I wish she **would apologize**.
(c) You are not following me.
I wish you **would follow** me.

1. He won't give up smoking. 2. He will borrow the from his neighbour. 3. She won't admit that she is wrong. 4. They will repeat the same mistake. 5. He will start arguing again. not listening to me.

Ex. 24. Answer the following questions according to the model, mind the form of the auxiliary verb.

M o d e l : Are you an early riser? I wish I **were**.

1. Is she good-tempered? 2. Can he do it alone? 3. Have you ever travelled by air? 4. Will they put off their visit? 5. Is she fit for the job? 6. Did you sleep well? 7. Has he settled down anywhere? 8. Did they treat her kindly? 9. Will he arrive to-day? 10. Are you a fast reader? 11. Can you read fifteen pages in half

an hour? 12. Is their suggestion sensible?

Ex. 25. Open the brackets using the correct form of the Subjunctive Mood.

1. I wish you (not to fuss) about such unimportant things. 2. He wished he (to take care) of the difficulties himself. 3. I wish you'"(to mind) your own business. 4. She felt so lost in this strange city that she wished she (to have) someone to keep her company. 5. He wished the child in the next room (not to cry) and he (to get) a little sleep. 6. I wish she never (to write) this letter. 7. She wished she (to teach) him a good lesson. 8. I wish you (to talk) him into giving up the foolish idea. 9. He wished we (to put off) the party till next Saturday. 10. I wish you (to take) yourself in hand. 11. I wish you (to stay) another couple of days. There is so much I'd like to talk to you about.

Ex. 26. Paraphrase the following sentences using the Subjunctive Mood in an object clause after the verb "wish".

I. I am sorry I have given you so much trouble. 2. You had better put off your visit to them. 3. Why are you talking shop all the time? 4. I am sorry I don't know whom he has told about that. 5. Too bad, we have to change trains twice. 6. He is not a man of his word, I am sorry to say. 7. He wanted to have a seat facing the engine. 8. It would be nice if he agreed to deliver a lecture on modern art. 9. You had better take up a job to your taste. 10. I should not have shown my surprise. 11. She had better treat his words with attention. 12. What a pity I missed such a wonderful chance.

Ex. 27. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Хотелось бы, чтобы вы оставили эту тему. 2. Жаль, что всем нам не хватит места в машине. 3. Хотелось бы воспользоваться твоим советом, но это невозможно. 4. Хотелось бы, чтобы кто-нибудь внес ясность в этот вопрос. 5. Жаль, что эту книгу не включили в список литературы на этот семестр. 6. Лучше бы вы сами взялись за дело. 7. Они сожалели, что не полетели в Хабаровск самолетом, они бы сэкономили два дня. 8. Напрасно она дала ему этот совет. 9. Жаль, что ее нет с нами. 10. Ему хотелось, чтобы кто-нибудь другой позаботился о билетах. 11. Досадно, что у нее вспыльчивый характер. 12. Хорошо бы нам обосноваться здесь навсегда. 13. Ей хотелось бы говорить по-английски. 14. Жаль, что у нее нет чувства долга. 15. Жаль, что я не могу присоединиться к вам.

IV. The use of the Subjunctive Mood in a Subject Clause after "it is high time"

Ex. 28. Study the following chart, translate the sentences into Russian.

It	's (is) was	(high/about) time	the children were in bed. they knew how to behave.

Ex. 29. Open the brackets using the correct form of the verb.

1. It's time you (to take) better care of your health. 2. She said it was time you (to get) rid of this bad habit. 3. It's high time something (to be done) about your discipline. 4. It's about time she (to learn) to do without your help. 5. They said it was time he (to tell) us what he was after. 6. It is time you (to stop) wasting your efforts and (to get) down to real work. 7. I call it a waste of time. It's time somebody (to put an end to it). 8. It's high time you (to learn) to be more particular about how you speak to people. 9. Isn't it time you (to leave) him alone?

Ex. 30. Paraphrase the following sentences using the Subjunctive Mood.

1. He looked at the clock on the station building and understood that it was time for him to get on the train. 2. It's time for you to stop fussing. You make everybody nervous. 3. He was so much in the book that he didn't notice it was high time for him to leave. 4. You are no longer a young man. It's time for you to settle down. 5. I think it's time for us to get down to business. 6. It's high time for the new method to be introduced into our work. 7. Isn't it time for you to be more sensible?

Ex. 31. Translate the following sentences using "it's time" with the Subjunctive Mood.

1. Пора бы организовать выставку его картин. :2. Пора бы признать его метод как самый эффективный. 3. Пора бы прекратить этот бесполезный спор. 4. Тебе давно пора бы представить мне своих друзей. 5. Вам бы давно пора извиниться. 6. Ему пора бы высказать свою точку зрения. 7. Не пора ли обсудить его предложение? 8. Преподаватель сказал, что всем давно пора начать подготовку к экзаменам. 9. Вам пора иметь чувство ответственности. 10. Ему пора зарабатывать на жизнь. 11. Пора нам включить его в нашу институтскую спортивную команду.

Ex. 32. Open the brackets using the correct form of the Subjunctive Mood. Retell the passage.

On Thursday morning at breakfast Steven said: "It's high time you (to make up) your mind about that visit to "Four Winds" this weekend. We ought to go, you know. We haven't been at the Marshalls' for ages, we just can't put them off."

"But, Steven," said Ruth ill-temperedly, "I can't go. If my grey dress (not to send) to the cleaner's I (can) wear it. But I can't wear my new suit, it's not hot enough for it yet."

Steven finished his food and was looking through his mail.

"Why treat it as if it (to be) a serious problem? Why make such a "fuss about nothing? At "Four Winds" everyone wears just anything."

Opening a, letter he added: "Really, you're a most annoying person, Ruth. What I want to know is, can you go or can't you?"

"I can if you can. You know that."

"I'm not sure yet how busy I'll be tomorrow. I suggest that you (to go down) tomorrow afternoon. George (to pick) you up and (to drive) you down if you (to agree) to go tomorrow. And I'll turn up in the evening, if I can get away, or on Saturday morning at the latest."

"Oh, no," Ruth laid down her knife and fork. "I wish we (to go) together."

"I wish you (to go) ahead."

"I'm not going without you," Ruth said firmly. "But for you they (not to ask) me to come, anyway. They only ask me because I'm your wife. And it looks as if Marion (to hate) me. I wish you (to ring) them up yesterday and told them that I'm coming with you."

(after "Thursday Afternoons" by M. Dickens)

Ex. 33. Test translation.

1. С вашим другом приятно поговорить, он очень умный человек. К тому же он знает пять иностранных языков. Самое удивительное то, что он одинаково хорошо говорит на всех этих языках. 2. Для своих десяти лет ребенок был очень смышленый. 3. У этой актрисы очень заурядная внешность. Я никогда не подозревал, что она может быть так привлекательна на экране. 4. Ему нечего бояться операции. Все будет хорошо. 5. Они говорили шепотом, боясь разбудить спящего ребенка. 6. Вам нечего опасаться за его здоровье, для этого нет никаких причин. 7. Жаль, что у нее такой неуравновешенный характер. 8. Он сожалел, что вышел из себя и накричал на них. Ему не надо было так поступать. 9. Жаль, что я не занял тогда денег и не купил словарь. Теперь его нет в продаже. 10. Напрасно вы суетитесь из-за пустяков. 11. Боюсь, что места в машине всем не хваїит. Придется взять еще и такси. 12. Ему и в голову никогда не приходит, что его шутки могут раздражать. 13. Им давно пора перестать обращаться с сыном как с ребенком. В конце концов он уже взрослый и сам может позаботиться о себе. 14. Он был рад, что ошибся в своих подозрениях. 15. Не кажется ли вам, что ей бы следовало проявлять побольше здравого смысла при решении таких важных вопросов? 16. Он наконец понял, что такое чувство долга. 17. Пожалуй, стоит прислушаться к его совету. На мой взгляд у него очень разумный подход к решению

проблемы. 18. Недельная поездка в горы никак не входила в ее планы. 19. Не стоит вдаваться в подробности, и так все ясно.

SPEECH EXERCISES

Ex. 34. Retell in narrative form.

AN INVITATION

As Dr. Sheppard drew up at the kerb*, his new assistant, young Potter, who looked nervous ever since they turned into Blenheim Avenue, now managed to come out with: "Do come in, won't you ... for a drink, sir?"

"I won't, old boy, thanks all the same. It's time I were at home."

"Oh, but sir, do. I wish you would meet my people."

"No, really, I ..." began Steven, but as he caught the disappointment in Potter's face, sighed and said: "All right, then. Thanks. But I mustn't stay more than a minute."

The door was opened by Mrs. Potter, who said looking at her son:

"Well, Boy, this is a surprise! We didn't expect you so early."

This nickname, which had been used ever since he could remember, had never struck him as unpleasant until now. He wished his mother hadn't called him Boy in front of Dr. Sheppard.

"Dr. Sheppard very kindly gave me a lift. Er — this is Mother, sir. Mother, this is Dr. Sheppard."

"Oh, how do you do? This is a pleasure. We've heard so much about you, Doctor." She held out her fat little hand. Thank goodness she was wearing her blue silk as if she had been expecting company. And to think she had taken off her apron only five minutes ago. What a bit of luck!

"Very glad to meet you, Mrs. Potter," said Steven. "I can't stay more than a minute, I'm afraid."

"Where's Dad?" asked young Potter.

"In the sitting-room, dear. Come along in, Dr. Sheppard. What luck that we are both at home when you call," she exclaimed although she and her husband seldom went out in the evening.

(after "Thursday Afternoons" by M. Dickens)

Ex. 35. Answer the following questions. Sum up your answers.

Making an Invitation

1. When do you invite people to your house? 2. Whom do you invite to your parties? 3. What are the different forms of invitation: to a party, a birthday, a house-warming party; when asking a person for a tea, for a weekend? 4. What form would you choose for a close friend, a distant relative, a colleague? 5. How do you deliver your invitations?

---

* kerb = curb обочина

2. Your Taste in Literature

1. What are the books everybody should read as a child? 2. What were the books that helped you to form your taste in books? 3. Do you like to read science-fiction*? 4. Why did science-fiction appear only in the 20th century? Would you call books by Alexander Beliaev, Jules Verne, Herbert Wells science-fiction? 5. What are Conan Doyle, Agatha Christie, George Simenon famous for? 6. What is your favourite reading? 7. What authors would you read for pleasure? for information?

Ex. 36. Answer the questions and retell the passage in narrative form, using the vocabulary of the lesson.

'Me — I am not an Englishman,' said Hercule Poirot. 'In my country Christmas, it is for the children. The New Year, that is what we celebrate.'

'Ah,' said Mr. Jesmond, 'but Christmas in England is a great event, not an ordinary holiday. At Kings Lacey you would see it at its best, and it occurred to me that you might be interested. It's a wonderful old house, you know. Why, it dates from the fourteenth century.'

The very thought of a fourteenth century English house filled Poirot with fear. He looked round at his comfortable modern flat with its radiators.

'It's the cold. In the winter,' he said firmly, 'I do not leave the city.'

But it was a matter of state importance and Mr. Jesmond wasn't to be put off so easily. He badly needed practical help from the famous detective and so he began once more to talk about the delights of an English Christmas.

'It's up to you, of course,' he went on, 'but the real old-fashioned Christmas is dying out, you know. People spend it at hotels nowadays. But an English Christmas with all the family at home, the children and their stockings, the Christmas tree, the turkey and plum pudding, the snowman outside the window ...' He suddenly broke off. 'You will go to Kings Lacey, M. Poirot? Can I take it that is settled?'

'And how do I explain myself there? I can't just turn up,' said Hercule Poirot.

'That, I think, can be arranged very easily. I have friends,' Mr. Jesmond said. 'It will all seem quite natural. You will find the Laceys most charming. Delightful company.'

'And you spoke the truth about the central heating?'

'Of course, I did,' Mr. Jesmond sounded hurt. 'You will find every comfort there.'

(After "The Adventure of the Christmas Pudding" by Agatha Christie)

* научная фантастика

Questions

1. What is Christmas for the English? the French? 2. Why did it occur to Mr. Jesmond that Poirot might be interested in an English Christmas? 3. Where did he suggest Poirot should go for Christmas? 4. Why did the very thought of an old English house fill him with fear? 5. Why was he suspicious of old English houses? 6. What was the obvious reason for Poirot's refusal to leave the city in the middle of winter? 7. Why wasn't Mr. Jesmond to be put off so easily? 8. Why couldn't the matter be treated lightly? 9. Why did Mr. Jesmond go into such details describing the delights of the English Christmas? 10. Christmas in England is usually a family affair, isn't it? 11. Why would it seem strange if Poirot just turned up for Christmas at Kings Lacey? 12.What solution did Mr. Jesmond have to the problem? 13. How could an invitation be arranged for Hercule Poirot? 14. Why did the matter of the heating arrangements in the house worry Poirot so much?

Ex. 37. Read the following, answer the questions, retell the text in English.

НЕКОТОРЫЕ ПРАВИЛА ХОРОШЕГО ТОНА

Первое и основное правило: не ходите в гости без приглашения. Не надо приходить даже «на минутку» в те часы, когда, как вам известно, хозяева обедают дома или ужинают.

Не надо опаздывать, если вы договорились на определенный час: «опаздывающий гость хуже непрошенного», как сказал известный сатирик Эмиль Кроткий. Еще хуже, если вы вообще не пришли, когда вас ждали. Поэтому следует взять за правило: если вы опаздываете или не можете придти, то заранее сообщите об этом хозяевам.

Первые ваши приветствия — хозяйке дома. Может статься, что раньше вас в переднюю вошло несколько гостей и вы еще застаете их там. Не выражайте бурного восторга от встречи с ними, прежде чем не поприветствуете хозяйку или хозяина.

Если же в передней незнакомые вам гости, то не представляйтесь им. Хозяйка или хозяин сами найдут момент, чтобы представить вас.

Не следует первым садиться за стол — подождите приглашения. Запомните: первой садится хозяйка.

Не надо засиживаться в гостях.

Если вас что-то расстроило (разговор с кем-либо, услышанная новость), то не показывайте вида: нельзя портить настроение другим гостям.

О своих вкусах говорите только тогда, когда вас спросят, и не спорьте, если ваши вкусы не сходятся со вкусами хозяев. Ваше мнение будет уместно лишь тогда, когда гости собрались для того, чтобы

поговорить об искусстве, поспорить о литературном произведении и т.д. Старайтесь высказать свое мнение по существу, но не используйте спор для демонстрации своих знаний.

В домах, где вы бываете часто и уже давно, вы чувствуете себя свободнее. Но старайтесь и там придерживаться всех известных вам правил поведения — пусть они станут привычкой.

Questions

1. What is one of the main rules of polite behaviour? 2. Why must you try not to "drop in" on people at mealtimes? 3. Why must you take care not to be late if you are expected at a certain hour? 4. What does the well-known satirist Emil Krotki have to say about the guest who turns up late? 5. Why will your hosts be even more annoyed if you don't turn up at all? 6. Why must you let them know beforehand that you will be late or not coming at all? 7. Who should you greet first on your arrival? 8. Who is supposed to introduce you to the guests? 9. Who is first to take his seat at table? 10. What is the sensible thing to do if for some reason or other you happen to be upset? 11. Why had you better hide your disappointment, ill temper, etc.? 12. Why must you behave as if nothing has happened? 13. Why is it important to keep cheerful? 14. Why mustn't you make a fuss if the tastes of your hosts happen to be different from yours? 15. Why is it annoying if a guest starts an argument? 16. Why had you better speak to the point when talking art, discussing a literary work, etc.? 17. Why is it unadvisable to make use of this chance to demonstrate one's knowledge of a subject? 18. Why is it necessary to keep one's temper when arguing a point?

Ex. 38. Read and discuss the text.

TOO MUCH OF A GOOD THING

after Ring Lardner

My husband has to spend almost all his time in the theater and that leaves me alone in a hotel, if his musical is running out-of-town, and pretty soon people find out whose wife I am and introduce themselves, and the next thing you know they are inviting us for a week or a weekend. Then it's up to me to think of some reason why we can't come. Ben absolutely hates visiting and thinks there ought to be a law against invitations. After a couple of visits Ben thought of a method of putting off people. He would write himself a telegram and sign it with the name of one of the famous producers, and leave the telegram with his secretary with the instructions to send it to us twenty-four hours later. When it arrived at whatever place we were, we would put on long faces and say how sorry we were, but of course business was business, so goodbye. There was never any suspicion even when the telegrams were ridiculous, like this one:

Both the leading actors have laryngitis Stop Score* must be rewritten half a tone lower Stop Come at once Stop

C. B. Dillingham

However, if we happened to be enjoying ourselves, then Ben would say to our hosts that he wasn't going to let any theatrical producer spoil his fun.

Last September we were invited to come and spend a week with a nice, intelligent couple, the Thavers. "I promise you," Mrs. Thayer said, "that you won't be disturbed at all; we won't invite people in. I won't allow Mr. Drake to even touch the piano. All day he can do nothing or anything, just as he pleases."

We accepted the invitation. "If they stick to their promise, it may be a lot better than staying in New York where my producer won't give me a minute's peace," said Ben. "And if things aren't as good as they look, we always have that telegram."

The Thayers met us at the station in an expensive-looking limousine.

"Ralph," said Mrs. Thayer to her husband, "you sit in one of the little seats and Mr. and Mrs. Drake will sit back here with me."

"I'd rather have one of the little seats myself," said Ben and he meant it.

"No, sir!" said Mrs. Thayer. "You came to us for a rest, and we're not going to start you off uncomfortable." It was no use arguing.

All through the drive Ben was unable to think of anything but how terrible his coat would look when he got out.

After luncheon we had coffee.

"Don't you take cream, Mr. Drake?" Mrs. Thayer asked.

"No. Never."

"But that's because you don't get good cream in New York."

"No. It's because I don't like cream in coffee."

"You would like our cream. We have our own cows. Won't you try just a little?"

"No, thanks."

"But just a little, to see how rich it is." She poured some cream into Ben's coffee-cup and for a second I held my breath and closed my eyes for fear of seeing Ben throwing the cup in her face.

After luncheon we were sitting in the living-room when Ben rose and went straight to the piano.

"None of that!" said Mrs. Thayer. "I haven't forgotten my promise."

"But there is a melody in my head that I'd like to try."

"Oh, yes, I know all about that. You just think that you MUST play to us! We invited you here for yourself, not to enjoy your talent."

Ben walked over to the book-case and took a book out.

"What book is that?" asked Mrs. Thayer.

---

* партитура

"The Great Gatsby*," said Ben. "I've always wanted to read it."

"Heavens!" said Mrs. Thayer as she took it away from him. "That's old! You'll find the newest ones there on the table. We keep pretty well up to date. Ralph and I are both great readers. Just try one of those books in that pile. They're all good."

Ben took a book, sat down and opened it.

"Man! Man!" exclaimed Mrs. Thayer. "You've picked the most uncomfortable chair in the house."

"He likes straight chairs," I said.

"It makes me uncomfortable just to look at you. You'd better take this chair here. It's the softest, nicest chair you've ever sat on."

"I like hard straight chairs," said Ben, fighting down his annoyance but he sank into the soft, nice one and again opened the book.

"Oh, you never can see there!" said the fussy Mrs. Thayer. "You'll ruin your eyes. Get up just a minute and let Ralph move vour chair to that lamp."

"I don't believe I want to read just now," said Ben.

And so it went on all through the afternoon and evening.

Just as we were getting to sleep, Mrs. Thayer knocked on our door.

"I'm afraid you haven't covers enough," she called.

"Thanks," I said. "We're quite warm."

"I'm afraid you aren't," continued Mrs. Thayer to whom it never occurred how annoying she was.

"Lock the door," said Ben ill-temperedly, "before she comes in and feels our feet."

All through breakfast next morning we waited for the telephone call about the telegram. The phone did ring once and Mrs. Thayer answered, but we couldn't hear what she said.

After breakfast Ben told Mrs. Thayer that he had a feeling that he must be back in New York.

"That's very strange," said Mrs. Thayer, "because a telegram came to you at breakfast time. I wasn't going to tell you about it because I had promised that you wouldn't be disturbed. I remember the telegram by heart. It ran:

Bass drum part* all wrong. Would like you to come to the theater tonight.

Gene Buck

Just as the trainmen were shouting "Board!" Mrs. Thayer said: "Please forgive me if I have done something terrible, but I answered Mr. Buck's telegram. I wired: 'Mr. Ben Drake resting at my home. Must not be bothered. Suggest that you keep bass drums still for a week.' And I signed my name."

Ex. 39. Use the following words and phrases in situations-

* a novel by the American writer Scott Fitzgerald (1896—1940)

1. On Books

to be fond of reading; can't do without smth; to borrow books from the library; a regular reader; to offer a wide choice of books; to every taste; piles of books to choose from; to consult a catalogue; to pick up a lot of useful information; to obey the rules of the library; to be careful with books; not to make any marks in a book; not to spoil; to change books every other fortnight; to arrange literary disputes; to broaden one's mind

2. A Dilemma

to receive a telegram; to run (of a telegram); to be coming (arriving) on a short visit; to be caught by surprise; to find oneself unprepared; to think of a sensible solution; to reserve a room at a hotel; to telephone; to find out; packed full; a rush of visitors; rather annoying; to occur (to); to come to think of it; after all; not to make a fuss about smth; not to treat smth as if it were a catastrophe; to solve the problem; a helpful and sensible saying: "The more, the merrier."

3. Never Put Off Till Tomorrow...

to have a job to do; to think smth can wait; to treat smth lightly; to be too sure of oneself; would rather; put off till a later date; not to be sensible on smb's part; to fail to realize; time is short; to spoil smth; rather annoying; to lose one's temper; to occur (to); nobody's fault but one's own; to be taught a good lesson; to know better next time; never put off till tomorrow what you can do today; ought to make smth a habit.

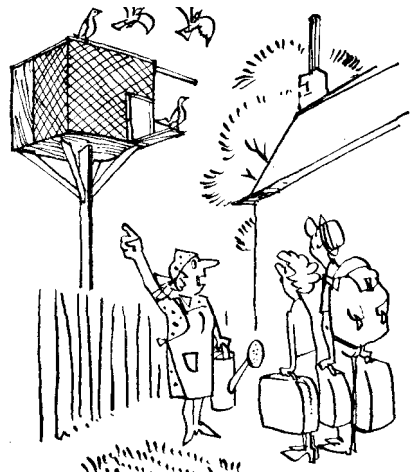
4. Where There is a Will There is a Way

a hard problem to solve; to be puzzled; to feel shaky about smth; to fear difficulties; to look as if; next to impossible; nearly; to lose one's head; to give up as hopeless; for a while; to be helpless; to occur (to); ought to; to take oneself in hand; to think calmly; to realize; after all; a sense of duty; a matter of principle; to do some hard thinking; to give close attention (to); to put off all doubts and fears; to exclude the possibility of failure; to clear smth up; to be determined; to find a sensible solution; in this connection; nothing is impossible to a willing heart.

Ex. 40. Tell the story of the picture.

---

* партия большого барабана



to make inquiries; to hope that smth will turn up; to occur to smb; after all; to be included in the rent; a pigeon-house.

Most certainly you can have it! As to the price ... well, that depends on whether you'll be using the ladder or not.

Ex. 41. Subjects for oral and written composition.

1. Give character-sketches of a) Larry; b) Mother.
2. Retell the story as if you were a) Mother; b) Larry; c) Gerald
3. Take the parts of Mother and Larry and enact the story.
4. Write up the episode in narrative form.
5. Write a letter describing the incident in short and expressing your own ideas in connection with it.
6. Try to imagine what life was like when Larry's friends came to stay with the Durrells.
7. Tell a humorous episode from the history of your family, or something that you have read about.
8. Imagine that you have moved to another town, or another part of the country. Describe in detail the preparations and arrangements for the journey, the journey itself and your first impressions of the new place.
9. Tell a story to illustrate the proverb "Where there's a will there's a way."

Lesson Five

Text: Crabbe's Practice (after Conan Doyle[1])
Grammar: The Use of the Subjunctive Mood in Nominal Clauses

Crabbe's Practice

Crabbe took his degree[2] a year before I did, and went down with his young degree, and a still younger wife, to a large port in England, which we will call Brisport. At that time I was acting as assistant to a medical man in Manchester, and heard little from my friend.

One day to my surprise I received a telegram from Mrs. Crabbe asking me to run down to Brisport to see her husband, as he was far from well.

I certainly found Crabbe changed very much for the worse, though he brightened up wonderfully at the sight of an old Friend.

After dinner the three of us sat down to talk things over. It seemed Tom had a lot to complain of. "If I could make myself known it would be all right. The place seems to be overcrowded with doctors. I wouldn't mind if ttiese other fellows were good men,[3] but they are not. Yet they make a pound to my shilling."[4]

"Couldn't we get up[6] some incident," said I, "which would make your name known to the public?"

"My dear Barton, that's exactly what I want. If I could manage to get my name into the Brisport Chronicle it might be the making of me. Wait a bit till I think."

Tom seemed lost in thought. "Can you swim?" he asked.

"Fairly[6] well."

"Then come out," said Tom.

I couldn't get a word out of him as to his intentions, so I just walked along beside him, wondering what he was going to do.

Our first stoppage was at a small dock which is crossed by an iron bridge. He hailed the boatman and inquired about the terms of boat hire. Then, to the boatman's disappointment, we set off in the. opposite direction.

Our next stoppage was at the Jolly Mariner's Arms.[7] Did they keep beds? Yes, they kept beds. We then went to the chemist's. Did he keep a galvanic battery? Once again the answer was in the affirmative and with a satisfied smile Tom Crabbe headed for home, leaving some very angry people behind him.

That evening, over tea, he told us his plan — and the council of three accepted it, with the immediate result that I at once moved to the Brisport Hotel.

It was nearly nine o'clock when I woke up next day. I jumped out of bed

and started to dress hurriedly. "Well," I said to myself, "If old Tom Crabbe doesn't get his name in the papers today, it isn't my fault. I wonder if any friend would do as much for me!" I swallowed a cup of coffee and. set out.

Brisport seemed unusually lively this morning. As I reached the little dock with the iron bridge I caught sight of a man. There was no mistaking the hat and spectacles of Thomas Crabbe.

I passed him without sign of recognition and went straight to the boathouse.

"Could I hire a boat for an hour?" I asked the boatman.

"One minute, sir," he said. "Would you want me to row you, sir?"

"Yes, you'd better."

"Aye, aye,[8] sir," said he and away we went. At the end of the hour we turned back and pulled up to the quay.

"Give me the oars," said I. "I want a bit of exercise — let us change places," and I stood up.

"Take care!" cried the boatman, but it was too late. With a sharp, melodramatic cry I fell overboard.

I hardly realised what I was going to do until I had done. It was not a pleasant feeling to have the water closing over one's head. I struck the bottom with my feet, and shot up again to the surface. The boatman came to my rescue at once. He hit me a painful blow on the head with something and I went down again. When I came up next time the boatman seized me by the hair of my head as if he would tear my scalp off and got me to land.

There I lay on the hard stones of the quay. "He's gone,[9] poor fellow!" said someone. "Quite dead." "Turn him upside down." "Nothing will cure him." "Feel his pulse."

"Stop," said a firm voice — "stop! What has occurred? Can I be of any help? I am a physician."

"A man drowned," cried several voices.

"My name is Doctor Crabbe. Dear me, poor young gentleman. Take him up to the tavern."

We got to the Mariner's Arms. At Crabbe's request I was stripped and laid in the best bed. The news of the accident seemed to have spread, for there was a crowd in the street. Tom insisted that everybody except a dozen of the more respectable of the townspeople should leave the room.

"Shall I bring brandy?" said the landlady.

"Yes, and towels — but the brandy first."

"Why, he's drinking it," said the landlady, as she put the glass to my lips.

"A reflex, automatic action," said Tom. "My good woman, any corpse will drink brandy if you give it some. Stand aside and we will try Marshall Hill's treatment."

After a quick examination Tom started pushing me about in a very rough manner.

"It's hopeless," he said at last, stopping and covering my head with the bedclothes. "Send for the police!" and he walked towards the door. There he hesitated. A thought seemed to strike him, and he turned back. "There is yet a possible hope," he said, "we have not tried electricity. I am doubtful, though, that the treatment should help." He sent a boy to the nearest chemist's to fetch a galvanic battery.

"Now, gentlemen," said Tom, "I believe I may say that I am the first practitioner[10] in Great Britain who has used electricity for this purpose. I warn you that I have seen it produce surprising effect: it may again in this case."

It certainly did. Tom always said that it was an accident, but, as it was, he sent the strongest current through my body adding greatly to my suffering. I gave one loud cry and jumped out of bed right into the middle of the room.

"You idiot!" I shouted shaking my fist in Tom's face.

Tom's usual presence of mind saved the situation. "A miracle!" he cried, "send for a cab. Poor fellow," Tom continued, "he's alive, but he has developed some dangerous symptoms. Now help me lead him to the cab. If any of you have any information to give which might throw light on this case my address is 81 George Street. Remember, Doctor Crabbe, 81 George Street."

I could not stay in Brisport long for I got a telegram from my principal demanding that I should return immediately. I waited long enough to get an early copy of the Brisport Chronicle. A column and a half was about Dr. Crabbe and the extraordinary effects of electricity upon a drowned man.

As to the financial success of our little experiment I can only judge from the following letter from Tom Crabbe:

Dear Jack,

You want to know how all goes in Brisport, I suppose. Well, I'll tell you. I've never had a day since our little joke without half a dozen new names on the list. Just let me know when you are going to set up, and I'll manage to run down, old man, and give you a good start in business.

Good-bye. Love from Missus.[11]

Ever yours,

Thomas Waterhouse Crabbe,

M.B.[12] Edin.[13]

81 George Street,

Brisport.

NOTES

1. **Sir Arthur Conan Doyle**, 1859—1930, British physician, novelist, and detective story-writer, born in Edinburgh. Best known for his detective stories about the fictional character of Sherlock Holmes of Baker Street, London, and his friend Dr. Watson, as The Sign of the Four (1889), Adventures of Sherlock Holmes (1891), The Memoirs of Sherlock Holmes (1893), The Hound of the

Baskervilles (1902), Return of Sherlock Holmes (1904).

2. **degree**: in a university it is a title to one who has finished a course of studies and passed an examination.

3. **good men**: good doctors

4. **Yet they make a pound to my shilling**: while I make a shilling, they make a pound each.

5. **get up**: organise, arrange

6. **fairly**: it is mainly used with 'favourable' adjectives and adverbs (e.g. good, nice, bravely, well, etc.) while rather is used in this sense either before 'unfavourable' adjectives or adverbs (e.g. bad, silly, ugly, poor, etc.) or before 'neutral' ones to which it will add a negative meaning. E.g. 1. You seem to have done fairly well in your exam, but your friend did rather badly. 2. It was rather warm in the room (meaning "too" warm for one's comfort).

7. **Jolly Mariner's Arms**: the name of a tavern which was also an inn

8. **aye** *int.* yes

9. **he's gone**: he's dead

10. **practitioner**: a general practitioner, a doctor; амбулаторный врач

11. **Missus**: a familiar way of speaking of one's wife

12. **M.B.**: Bachelor of Medicine, Bachelor being the first university degree

13. **Edin.**: Edinburgh, here — University of Edinburgh.

VOCABULARY

practice *n* 1. практика, действие, применение You must have more practice if you want to speak a foreign language well. They wanted to see the machine in practice. **Phr**. put smth (a plan, a new method, etc.) into practice применить на практике, осуществить (план, новый метод и т.п.); be out of practice не иметь практики, потерять навык „2. клиентура (врача, юриста) Dr. Brown had a large practice, practise vtlui 1. тренироваться; применять You should practise a lot to be a good figure-skater,, to practise a new method in one's work, etc. 2. заниматься медициной (правом и т.п.) to practise medicine (law, etc.)

act *vt* 1. действовать; поступать, вести себя We must act at once. He acted like a hero. **Phr**. act as работать в качестве (кого-л) He acted as (a) guide during the trip. 2. играть (на сцене) Who acted the main part in the play? action n действие, поступок The time for action came. We should judge a man by his actions not by his talk. **Phr**. take ac-tion(s) принимать меры

sight *n* 1. зрение; взгляд; поле зрения He has good (poor, bad, etc.) sight. **Phr. at** first sight с первого взгляда; **at** the sight **of** при виде (кого-л, чего-л); catch sight **of** увидеть; заметить; lose sight **of** потерять из виду; short-sighted *a* близорукий; long-sighted *a* дальнозоркий 2. вид, зрелище a beautiful (poor, ugly, etc.) sight; sights *n* достопримечательности **Phr**. go sightseeing осматривать достопримечательности

complain *vt/vi* выражать недовольство; жаловаться to complain **of** a headache, (pains in the stomach, etc.); to complain **to** smb **about/of** difficulties (hard work, late delivery of the goods, etc.); The work was hard but he never complained, complaint *n* недовольство; жалоба **Phr**. make a complaint **against** smb подать на кого-л жалобу

intend *vt* намереваться What do you intend to do about it? intention *n* намерение He had no intention(s) **of** changing his plans.

inquire (enquire) *vt* спрашивать, узнавать; осведомляться, запрашивать to inquire the way (smb's name, smb's address, etc.) **of** smb; He inquired what our intentions were. to inquire **after (about)** smb (smb's health, etc.); to inquire **for** information (facts, details, etc.) **Phr**. inquire **into** (the matter, etc.) исследовать, выяснять, разобраться; inquiry n запрос; наведение справок; расследование **Phr**. make inquiries (**about** smb/smth **from** smb) наводить справки (о ком-л/чем-л у кого-л)

terms *n* 1. условия What are the terms of the contract? The firm was prepared to buy the goods **on** the terms offered by the sellers. **Phr**. make terms ставить условия 2. личные отношения to be on good' (friendly, speaking, etc.) terms **with** smb

hire *vt* нанимать; снимать; брать напрокат to hire a car (a hall, a boat, a servant, etc.); hire n наем, прокат The garage has cars **for** hire.

opposite *a* противоположный, обратный the opposite side (point of view, direction, etc.); He went **in** the opposite direction, opposite *adv/prep* напротив, против He took a seat opposite **(to)** me.

direct *vt* руководить, управлять; направлять to direct business (work, people, etc.); to direct one's efforts (attention, steps, remark, etc.) **to**; Can you direct me to the station? The ship was directed **to** another port. direction *n* направление **Phr**. in the direction **of** по направлению к (чему-л)

sign *n* 1. знак; признак, примета He gave'them a sign to leave. A dark cloud is a sign of rain. 2. вывеска (на магазине, гостинице и т.п.) What does the sign read?

pain *n* боль He felt (a) sharp pain in the arm. painful a причиняющий боль, мучительный, болезненный, трудный a painful operation (moment, sight, etc.); painless *a* безболезненный

cure *vt* вылечивать, исцелять to cure smb **of** a disease (a bad habit, etc.); cure *n* 1. излечение The treatment guarantees an effective cure **of** the disease. 2. средство, лекарство What is the best cure **for** a cold? (in)curable *a* (не)излечимый

request *n* просьба to do smth **at** smb's request; **Phr**. meet smb's request удовлетворить чыо-л просьбу; request *vt* просить to request smb to do smth

spread (spread) *vt/vi* распространяться); разносить(ся) to spread knowledge (information, ideas, disease, panic, etc.) The news of his arrival spread quickly **over** the place.

insist *vi* настаивать, утверждать Don't agree unless he insists. She insisted

that she was right. He insisted that the work should be done immediately, to insist **on** smth (doing smth); insistence (insistency) *n* настойчивость; insistent a настойчивый an insistent demand (request, etc.)

respect *n* уважение; почтение to have (show) respect **for** smb; He was treated **with** respect, respect *vt* уважать to respect a person (oneself, the law,- smb's wishes, smb's interests, etc.); respectable *a* респектабельный, почтенный, представительйый.а -respectable person (name, district, etc.); respectability *n* респектабельность, почтенность

treat *vt* лечить Do you know how to treat a cold? to treat smb **for** an illness (a disease) **with** medicine (pills, etc.); treatment *n* лечение **Phr**. take a course **of** treatment (**for** smth) пройти курс лечения

rough *a* 1. грубый, жесткий, грубоватый a rough towel (road, voice, manner, reply, etc.) 2. бурный, резкий a rough sea (wind, etc.) 3. черновой (вариант) a rough copy (translation, etc.)

hesitate *vi* колебаться, медлить, быть в нерешительности to hesitate **with** one's answer (**about** one's choice, etc.) He did not hesitate to tell the truth. They hesitated whether to go there or not. hesitation n колебание, нерешительность She stopped in hesitation. He answered **without** hesitation.

purpose *n* намерение, цель What was the purpose **of** his visit? They came here **with** a definite purpose. A special commission was set up **for** the purpose **of** inquiring into the matter. **Phr. on** purpose нарочно, намеренно He said it **on** purpose.

case *n* 1. случай, обстоятельство **In** what case would you say "How do you do"? **Phr. in** any case во всяком (любом) случае **in** no case ни в коем случае 2. случай в практике (медицинской, судебной и т.п.)

suffer *vi* i страдать to suffer **from** headaches (rheumatism, etc.) She suffered greatly. **Phr**. suffer losses понести потери, убытки; suffering *n* страдание

develop *vt* развивать to develop science (industry, trade; an idea, etc.); to develop symptoms (a cough, etc.) развиваться (о симптомах и т.п.), начаться (о кашле и т.п.); development *n* развитие, событие the development **of** industry (events, etc.); an unexpected (unforeseen, new, etc.) development

demand *vt* требовать to demand an answer (an explanation, etc.) He demanded to be told the truth. They demanded that immediate action should be taken, demand *n* требование; спрос These goods are in great demand. There is a great demand **for** these goods. **Phr**. meet (satisfy) demand(s) удовлетворять спрос, требования

success *n* успех, удача His success was the result of hard work. **Phr**. be a success иметь успех, пользоваться успехом The play was a great success. He is a great success as an actor, (un)successful *a* (не)успешный, (не)удачный; (не)преуспевающий; succeed *vi* достигать цели; иметь успех, преуспевать If you try hard you will succeed, to succeed **in** one's work (attempts, etc.) He finally succeeded **in** getting what he was after.

judge *vt* судить, давать оценку; полагать It was difficult to judge which of them was right. You should not judge a person **by** his appearance. He is too young to judge **about** such things, judge *n* ценитель, знаток; судья *(также юр.)* He is a good judge **of** painting (flowers, horses, etc.) **Phr**. judging **from (by)** (smb's words, smb's behaviour, etc.) судя (по словам, поведению и т.п.); judgement *n* оценка, решение, суждение He was wrong **in** his judgement.

WORD COMBINATIONS

far from (well, real, etc.) далеко не (здоров, реален и т.п.)
be lost in thought быть погруженным в размышления
set off/out отправляться в путь
hit (strike) a blow (on the head, etc.) нанести удар (по голове и т.п.)
upside down перевернутый (вверх дном, вверх ногами)
presence of mind присутствие духа
throw light (on/upon smth) пролить свет (на что-л)
set up (a monument, a committee, a school, a practice, etc.) установить (памятник), создать (комитет и т.п.)

EXERCISES ON THE TEXT

Ex. 1. Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Crabbe settle down after taking his degree? 2. How did it happen that Barton came to see his friend? 3. What were Crabbe's complaints about the new place? 4. Why was he unable to stand competition against the local doctors? 5. What suggestion did Barton make? 6. What was the purpose of Crabbe's visits to the boathouse, the tavern and the chemist's? 7. Why did Barton move to a hotel? 8. Why did Barton set off in such a hurry next morning? 9. Why did he pass Crabbe without sign of recognition? 10. How did Barton arrange the accident? 11. Why did he find himself wishing he had never agreed to Crabbe's plan? 12. How did the boatman rescue Barton? 13. At what exact moment did Crabbe turn up? 14. How did Crabbe deal with the situation? 15. Why was the tavern immediately crowded with people? 16. Why didn't Crabbe seem to mind the presence of some of the more respectable townspeople in the room? 17. Why was the landlady surprised to see Barton drinking brandy? 18. What treatment did Crabbe try first? 19. Why did he instruct the landlady to call the police? 20. What made Crabbe hesitate at the door? 21. What doubts did he express? 22. What happened when Crabbe sent a strong current through Barton's body? 23. How did Crabbe save the situation? 24. What did the local paper write about Crabbe? 25. How successful was the "little experiment"?

Ex. 2. Find in the text the. English for:

а) 1. не получать известий от кого-л; 2. измениться к худшему; 3.

говорить о делах; 4. добиться того, чтобы чье-л имя попало в газету; 5. не добиться ни слова относительно чьих-л намерений; 6. поинтересоваться условиями проката лодок; 7. к чьему-л разочарованию; 8. отправиться в противоположном направлении; 9. дать утвердительный ответ; 10. с довольной улыбкой; 11. направиться домой; 12. за чашкой чая; 13. совет трех; 14. принять план; 15. вскочить с постели; 16. одеться наспех; 17. проглотить чашку кофе; 18- взять лодку напрокат; 19. подъехать к причалу; 20. поменяться местами; 21. упасть за борт; 22. придти на выручку; 23- больно ударить по голове; 24. слух о происшествии; 25. для этой цели; 26. потрясти кулаком перед чьим-л носом; 27. спасти положение; 28. пролить свет на случившееся; 29. утренний выпуск газеты; 30. финансовый успех;

б) 1. получить диплом врача; 2. работать в качестве ассистента врача; 3. аптека; 4. пощупать пульс; 5. терапевт; 6. осмотр (врачебный); 7. способ лечения; 8. усугубить чьи-л страдания; 9. опасные симптомы; 10. случай (в медицине); 11. воздействие тока на кого-л; 12. маленький эксперимент (опыт); 13. начать врачебную практику.

Ex. 3. Give the four forms of the following verbs:

set, act, inquire, hit, cure, spread, drown, lose, swim, keep, wake, catch, fall, strike, shoot, turn, feel, lay, drink, occur, strip, shake, lead, throw.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBS

Ex. 4. Study the following phrases: a) recall the sentences in which they are used in the text, 2) use them in sentences of your own.

assistant to smb; to smb's surprise; at the sight of; complain of; get one's name in(to) the papers; be lost in thought; inquire about smth; set off/out; in the direction of; head for; to catch sight of; seize smb by the arm; tear off; to be of help; for some purpose; in this case; add to smb's suffering; to throw light on/upon; the effects of smth upon smb; judge from; a start in business

Ex. 5. Fill in the blanks with prepositions or adverbs.

A. 1. What cure would you suggest ... a bad cold? 2. She's ... high spirits today and seems to be ... good terms ... the whole world. 3. They inquired ... the terms ... express delivery. 4. We felt, not without reason, that someone who had failed to do a simple exercise was unlikely to succeed ... a more difficult task. 5. The man who rescued the child chose to remain unknown, he didn't want his name to get ... the papers. 6. There is a page missing ... the book, it looks as if somebody has torn it ... ... purpose. 7. After graduation he returned ... his native village ... the purpose ... setting ... a school there. 8. I couldn't help feeling that the letter had been left lying ... the middle ... the desk ... a definite purpose. 9. The only person who could throw some light ... the incident wouldn't talk. We

just could not get a word ... ... him. 10. He did not see the coming car, and I was just ... time to seize him ... the arm and pull him away. 11. The doctor hesitated to practise the new treatment ... the patient, he wasn't sure ... the effect it might have ... the man's heart. 12. The weather was quickly changing ... the worse, and the tourists turned ... and headed ... the camp. 13. He was far ... satisfied ... the way things turned out. He sat lost ... thought. 14. You'll get the best start ... business as a medical man if you go ... some out-of-the-way place where you will be dentist, eye speciaiist, surgeon and physician, all ... one, but not if you stick around here as assistant ... some famous doctor. 15. Judging ... the results, you have done a good job. 16. I hear you've been complaining lately ... pains ... the heart; you should see a doctor. 17. ... his relatives' most insistent demand the patient was taken ... hospital.

B. INFLUENZA

One morning on waking ... Philip felt his head swim and going back ... bed discovered, ... his great surprise, that he was ill. When the landlady brought his breakfast he said he wasn't well and asked ..a cup ... tea and a piece ... toast.

A few minutes later Griffiths came .... They had lived ... the same house ... over a year, were both medical students, but had never been close. Griffiths had dropped ... to inquire ... Philip's health.

"I hear you've fallen ill. I thought I'd come ... and see if I can be ... any help. What are you complaining ...?"

"Nonsense," said Philip. "There's nothing the matter ... me. I wish you wouldn't worry ... me."

"But it isn't any trouble. You'd better let me take your temperature," Griffiths insisted. He sat ... ... the side ... the bed ... Philip and talked brightly ... a moment. Then he took the thermometer and looked ... it. "Now, look here, old man, you must stay ... bed. You don't need to send ... a doctor. I'll run ... ... the hospital and bring old doctor Deacon ... to have a look ... you. He'll examine you and he's sure to cure you ... whatever you've got."

Philip knew the old doctor, whom all the students treated ... great respect, only by sight. All the fuss Griffiths was making ... his illness only added ... Philip's suffering. But Griffiths was most insistent:

"Here, drink some hot tea." And he put the cup ... Philip's lips. "Now go to sleep and I'll fetch the old man."

... the end ... the hour he was back ... doctor Deacon.

(after "Of Human Bondage" by W.S. Maugham)

Ex. 6. Give the English for the following phrases, using the preposition "at" in its different meanings. Use the phrases in sentences of your own.

I. а) у стола (окна, двери, ворот); на углу; у светофора; у обочины дороги;

б) быть дома (в школе); за работой; за обедом (ужином); за столом (во время еды);

в) прибыть на станцию; встретиться на вокзале; сойти на следующей остановке; сделать пересадку в Харькове; остановиться в гостинице; остановиться у киоска;

г) в начале (конце страницы, списка, рассказа); в конце коридора (платформы).

II. а) в .6 часов; в полдень; в полночь; на рассвете; на закате; ночью;

б) в то время; в настоящее время; в назначенное время; в одно и то же время; временами; с интервалами в 5 минут; тотчас: самое раннее.

III. в возрасте 25 лет; в раннем возрасте.

IV. а) смотреть/взглянуть, пристально смотреть (на кого-л/что-л); улыбнуться кому-л; смеяться над чем-л;

б) удивляться чему-л; восхищаться чем-л/кем-л.

V. по чьей-л просьбе; по чьему-л приглашению (настоянию)

MISCELLANEOUS PHRASES

уметь хорошо делать что-л; обыграть кого-л в шахматы; указать на что-л; зайти куда-л; подъехать к остановке; ехать со скоростью 30 км в час; поставить будильник на 7 часов; по крайней мере; при виде

EXERCISES IN LEXICOLOGY

Ex. 7. Paraphrase the following sentences using the prefix "over" with the word in bold type. Make other necessary changes.

M o d e l : The bus was too **crowded** for us to get in.
The bus was **overcrowded** and we couldn't get in.

1. His **joy** was too great for words. 2. When **doing** something you should know where to stop. 3. It seems to me that the price you **paid** for the repairs is too high. 4. He shouldn't **eat** so much, it's bad for his health. 5. He lost balance and the boat **turned** over. 6. Do they pay for the **time** spent in working after the regular hours? 7. You should take care of him, he **works** too hard. 8. She **dresses** too loudly for my taste. 9. If the **production** of goods is more than is needed to satisfy demand then it often leads to economic troubles. 10. The boy **slept** too long and was late for classes.

Ex. 8. Paraphrase the following sentences using a noun with the suffix "-ing" instead of a verb. Make other necessary changes.

1. What does the word "sign" **mean**? 2. I **warned** him but he paid no attention. 3. I can't stand when people **suffer**. 4. It was very difficult to describe what he **felt** at the moment. 5. How long did it take you to **pack** the things?

Ex. 9. Paraphrase the following sentences using a verb instead of a noun. Make other necessary changes.

1. He was at the **head** of the expedition. 2. She ran her **eyes** over the boy with suspicion. 3. He held out his **hand** to help her out of the bus. 4. They stood **face to face**. 5. There was a large crowd on the platform and he had to push his way to his car with his **elbows**. 6. She has an annoying habit of going about and pushing her **nose** into other people's business.

Ex. 10. Give words of the same root in Russian. Compare the meaning.

assistant, medical, galvanic, battery, melodramatic, scalp, pulse, respectable, reflex, automatic, effect, symptom, extraordinary.

Ex. 11. Replace the words in bold type, using a suitable phrasal verb from the list. Translate the sentences into Russian. Give your own examples.

L I s t: to go off; to set off; to keep off; to take off; to put off; to ring off; to cut off; to break off;

1. She put down the receiver before I could inquire for her name. 2. You had better be careful with that gun, or it may shoot. 3. An unexpected development of events made us postpone the trip. 4. The sign warned the passers-by not to walk on the freshly-cut grass. 5. They stopped talking rather suddenly when I entered the room. 6. The first group of climbers started on their journey at sunrise. 7. We were interrupted in the middle of our telephone conversation. 8. He removed his muddy boots and put on a pair of slippers.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 12. Fill in the blanks, with a suitable word in the correct form. Translate the sentences into Russian.

to act (2); action; case; to complain (2); to cure; to demand; demand; to develop; hesitation; to inquire (2); to insist (2); to intend (2); intention; to judge (2); opposite; pain (2); purpose (2); to respect (2); respect; rough; sign; to spread; to succeed (3); terms; treatment;

1. The point was of particular interest and I ... to make wide use of it in my report. 2. In a few short sentences the inspector made clear the ... of his visit. 3. There was a general ... that a committee be set up to .. into the matter. 4. The events were ... fast, leaving little room for doubt or hesitation. The commander knew he had to ... at once. 5. The scientist's point of view, though exactly ... to mine, was still not without interest. 6 An outspoken man, my friend, had never made a secret of his ..., so we were fully prepared for what happened later. 7. There were moments of weakness when the patient thought the ... was more than

he could stand. 8. The head of the department wanted his orders to be obeyed and his wishes ... . In fact, he ... on it. 9. He ... to soften the blow, but the words he had chosen were wrong, and he only ... in making things worse. 10. It is true that my friend's manner may be a little ... but he has a heart of gold. 11. The forest fire was quickly ... north. The situation ••• immediate .... 12. Though the facts were against him, he continued to ... that he had had no part in the accident. 13. It was strange to think he should have made the remark on ..., just to annoy us. 14. The actress had ... her part extremely well. 15. Victory 'was "near, another effort and we would have ... . 16. He would never agree to work for them on such ..., it was useless even asking him. 17. The doctor recommended a new ... which had proved highly effective. Several of the ... believed hopeless had been successfully ... . 18. Though she didn't know a word of the language, she ... in miking herself understood by gestures. 19. The patient's temperature had dropped. It was a good ... . 20. Seized with doubt I stopped in ... at the door not knowing whether to go on with my task or leave things as they were. 21. The expert ... the painting to be an early Raphael. 22. She was always finding fault and ...; most annoying, if you know what I mean. 23. The visitor ... for Mr. Brown, the department manager. 24. I could see that the old man was treated with great ... in his family. 25. He looked at the map and ... the distance to the nearest village to be something between 100 and 150 kilometres. 26. A careful examination showed nothing out of the ordinary, yet the patient continued to ... of a sharp ... in the side.

Ex. 13. Paraphrase the following, using words and word combinations from the text, and making all necessary changes.

to hesitate; to judge; to intend; intention; to spread; to suffer; far from; at first sight; to make inquiries; to complain; on purpose

1. I recognized him **the minute I saw him**. 2. It was advisable that **questions be asked and the necessary information colle**cted without attracting attention. 3. For some time he **couldn't make up his mind** about the offer. 4. What she said made me wonder. It was **nothing like** the truth. 5. Every step was taken to stop the epidemic from **moving on** to other districts. 6. He had done it **specially** to annoy me. 7. She was always **unhappy about something and finding fault**, very hard to please, indeed. 8. His **plans and resolutions** are wonderful as a rule, but the trouble is that he never puts them into practice. 9. The old man had **had** rheumatism for years and now seemed quite used to the pain. 10. From what he heard the man say he **understood** him to be a man of wide learning and deep knowledge.

Ex. 14. Speak on the following topics, using the words and expressions given below.

1. Crabbe Tells His Sad Story

to arrive; to find one's friend greatly changed for the worse; far from well; to hear smb out; to get a degree; to settle down; to set up; to complain; to have a bad time; financial difficulties; impossible to make both ends meet; to have trouble; to turn to smb for advice; to come to smb's rescue; a quick mind; to suggest; to get up an incident; to get smb's name into the papers; to be the making of

2. Crabbe Thinks of a Plan But Keeps It to Himself

to be unable to get a word out of smb as to his intentions; first (second, etc.) stoppage; the boathouse; the tavern; the chemist's; to inquire about the terms of boat hire (whether smb keeps beds, a galvanic battery); to disappoint smb; to be satisfied with the information received; to set off in the opposite direction; to head for home

3. The Friends Prepare foi Zero Hour

to agree to risk one's life for one's friend's sake; to move to a hotel; to wake up; to swallow a cup of coffee; to set out; to catch sight of smb; to pass smb without sign of recognition; to hire a boat; to have smb row; to make an attempt to get hold of the oars; to pay no attention to the cry of warning; to insist; to lose balance; a sharp, melodramatic cry; to fall over into the water; to wish; not a pleasant feeling; to have the water close over one's head; to strike the bottom with one's feet; to shoot up to the surface; to imitate an accident; to be oversuccessful

4. The Boatman Does His Bit

to be caught by surprise; not to expect smth to occur; to keep one's head; to show presence of mind; to act quickly; without a fuss; to be used to dealing with such situations, to rescue smb; to hit smb a painful blow on the head; to seize by the hair; to drag smb to land; to have no suspicions

5. Crabbe Steps in

to turn up; to offer one's help; to introduce oneself; a physician; to inquire what has occurred; to give instructions that ,..; to insist; except for a dozen of the most respectable townspeople; to give smb a quick examination; to make an attempt to bring smb back to life; to try Marshall Hill's treatment; to push smb about; in a rough manner; to express one's fears; impossible to cure; a hopeless case; to be through with smb; to be up to the police; to get rid of the corpse

6. Crabbe Decides to Try His Own Method

to occur to smb; a possible hope; not to be put off by failure; to intend; to try electricity; to hesitate; to be doubtful that …; to have smb fetch a galvanic battery; the first to use electricity for this purpose, to warn; to produce surprising effects; harmless; to send a strong current through smb's body; to give smb a terrible shock; to add greatly to smb's suffering; extremely painful

7. The Treatment is Effective

the patient; to be unable to stand the pain; to give a loud cry; to jump out of bed; to lose one's temper; to suspect; to do smth on purpose; to shake one's fist in smb's face.

Crabbe; to calm smb; presence of mind; to save the situation; to explain; a miracle; to develop dangerous symptoms; to need rest; to lead the patient to the cab; to keep repeating one's name and address

8. The Plan is a Success

to succeed in getting one's name into the papers; a column and a half; to describe in detail; the extraordinary effects of electricity on a drowned man; a wonderful cure; to make a great impression on the public; to mark a turning point in smb's career; a financial success; lots of new names on the list; after all; to be worth the trouble; to send smb a letter of thanks; to offer one's services to smb.

SPECIAL DIFFICULTIES

Ex. 15. Translate the following sentences using "case", "incident", "accident", "chance" according to the sense.

1. Это необычный **случай**, на него следует обратить особое внимание. 2. Не волнуйтесь! Он приедет в любом **случае**. 3. Говорят, что на днях здесь произошел несчастный **случай**. 4. Ему следовало бы знать, как надо поступать в таких **случаях**. 5. В своей юридической практике ему пришлось иметь дело с разными **случаями**. 6. Это неприятный **случай**, и мне не хотелось бы вспоминать о нем. 7. За последнее время у них было только два **случая** заболевания скарлатиной. 8. Жаль, что вы упустили такой прекрасный **случай**. 9. Он не мог забыть о забавном **случае**, который произошел с ним однажды. 10. Это дело **случая**.

Ex. 16. Fill in the blanks with the verbs "to lie" or "to lay" in the correct form according to the sense.

1. You are young and a great future ... in front of you. 2. The agreement... the foundation for the development of future closer contacts between the two countries. 3. After he had made inquiries into the matter he ... the facts before the committee. 4. From the airplane we could see the valley ... below. 5. The

mother ... her hand on the child's shoulder and he calmed down at once. 6. They are redecorating the flat and intend to ... the floors with carpets. 7. She picked up the book which ... open on the table and started reading. 8. He won't join us, he is ... up with the grippe. 9. He was half ... on the deck chair enjoying the sun. 10. The village ... in ruins after the bombing. 11. The scene of the tragedy "Hamlet" is ... in Denmark. 12. Some minerals ... deep in the ground.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Subjunctive Mood (continued)

The use of the Subjunctive Mood in Nominal Clauses*

1. in u subject clause

Ex. 17. Study the following chart.

it is (was)	necessary important desirable advisable recommended suggested requested demanded ordered	that	the problem **(should) be**** **settled** as soon as possible. everybody **(should) read** the book. you **(should) follow** the instructions. she (**should) be careful** in dealing with such problems.

Ex. 18. Open the brackets using the Subjunctive Mood.

1. It's **necessary** that enquiries (to make) before raising the question at the meeting. 2. It is **requested** that all the library books (to return) before the summer vacation. 3. It's **desirable** that we (to see) this method in practice first before introducing it into our work. 4. It was **suggested** that a committee (to set up) to examine such questions. 5. It's **necessary** that she (to practise) more if she wants to take part in the competitions. 6. It is **important** that you (to keep) to a diet. 7. It was **demanded** that the goods (to deliver) to the port by the end of the month. 8. It's **advisable** that you (to take up) sports to keep fit. 9. It is **demanded** that absolute silence (to keep) during an operation. 10. It is **recommended** that medical students (to take) a longer course of training before

* This use of the Subjunctive Mood is sometimes considered apart from the Subjunctive Mood proper and called "conjunctive". Its use is more restricted than that of the Subjunctive Mood. It's mainly used in subordinate clauses, its meaning depends on lexical and grammatical connections inside the sentence. It is characteristic of formal style.

** The synthetic form "be settled" is used in official documents and American English.

they are sent to work.

Ex. 19. Study the following chart[*], *translate the sentences into Russian .*

it is (was)	strange natural impossible doubtful	that	he **shouldn't want** to take part in the discussion. he **should not have taken** part in the discussion. she **should say** such things. she **should have said** such a thing.

Ex. 20. Practise the following according to the model; mind the tense form.

M o d e l : The operation is (will be) painless, (possible?)
Is it possible that the operation should be painless?
He gave up painting, (impossible)
It's impossible that he should have given up painting.

1. He has been cured (possible?) 2. She was not impressed by the film (impossible). 3. The treatment will work (possible?) 4. He believes her story (doubtful). 5. She was hurt by his remark (natural). 6. He swam across the Volga (doubtful). 7. She doesn't know her diagnosis (strange). 8. She acts the part of Ann in the play (doubtful).

Ex. 21. Paraphrase the following using the Subjunctive Mood.

1. It's necessary for you to see an eye specialist. 2. The child got frightened at the sight of the doctor. It was quite natural. 3. He has not answered the letter on purpose. Is it possible? 4. Travellers crossing the border are requested to fill up a special form. 5. Is it important for you to go into details? 6. I don't see why she doesn't want anybody to know about this. It's strange. 7. Everybody was ordered to leave the hall during the break. 8. Visitors are requested not to touch the exhibits on show. 9. It's impossible for anyone to be angry with her. 10. It was natural for the news to be kept secret.

Ex. 22. Translate the following sentences using the Subjunctive Mood in subject clauses.

1. Желательно, чтобы все выступающие говорили по существу, не вдаваясь в подробное и. 2. Необходимо, чтобы все их требования были удовлетворены. 3. Важно, чтобы вы приняли меры немедленно. 4.

[*] The Indicative mood is used in subject clauses after "**It's strange, natural**" etc. to express a real state of things, e.g. It was natural that he was annoyed with you. It's strange that he is not here.

Посетителей просят оставлять одежду в гардеробе. 5. Не может быть, чтобы самолет вылетел в такую погоду. 6. Было распоряжение, чтобы они немедленно навели справки об этом деле. 7. Важно, чтобы в доклад были включены все основные вопросы. 8. Желательно, чтобы вы нам рассказали об этом случае на собрании. Всем было бы интересно послушать вас. 9. Необходимо, чтобы вы относились к нему, как к взрослому. 10. Вполне естественно, что ее взяли в больницу. Ее можно вылечить только б больнице. 11. Было предложено, чтобы перед походом все прошли медицинский осмотр. 12. Неужели ее вылечили? 13. Странно, чтобы он вышел из себя. Он всегда такой спокойный.

II. in an object clause

Ex. 23. Study the following chart[*].

1. The doctor **insisted** that the patient **(should) be placed** in hospital.
2. I **advise** that you **(should) see** the doctor.
3. They **recommended** that **I (should) repeat** this course of treatment in a year.

Ex. 24. Open the brackets using the Subjunctive Mood in an object clause.

1. The doctor **suggested** that **I (to see)** a heart specialist. 2. He **advised** that a new treatment (to try). 3. The nurse **insisted** that the patient (to take) the medicine as instructed by the doctor. 4. We **requested** that the speaker (to touch upon) the progress in modern medicine 5.They **demanded** that an explanation (to give) why the work had not been done in time. 6. He **ordered** that action (to take) immediately.

Ex. 25. Paraphrase the following using the Subjunctive Mood in object clauses.

M o d e l : He suggests our going there by boat.
He suggests that we should go there by boat.

1. She insisted on our hiring a porter to help us with our suitcases. 2. With the sudden change of weather the guide had to order the tourists to return to the camp. 3. He advised us to set up camp on the bank of the river. 4. The doctor recommended me to return home as soon as hot weather set in. 5. They suggested our going sightseeing on the second day of our arrival. 6. We insisted on the terms being made quite clear. 7. The nurse advised the mother to stay with the child in the hospital.

Ex. 26. Translated the following sentences using the Subjunctive Mood in an

[*] The verbs to suggest, to demand, to request, to order (to give orders) are on the same pattern.

object clause.

1. Выставка произвела на него большое впечатление, и он посоветовал нам посетить ее. 2. Мы предложили отложить поездку из-за плохой погоды. 3. Он потребовал, чтобы мы дали объяснения по поводу нашего отсутствия. 4. Все настаивали, чтобы он подробно рассказал, как это случилось. 5. Комиссия рекомендовала, чтобы вопрос, находящийся на рассмотрении, был передан специалистам. 6. Я попросил, чтобы кто-нибудь позаботился о билетах заранее. 7. Он потребовал, чтобы они прекратили обращаться с ним как с ребенком. 8. Врач посоветовал, чтобы больной повторил курс лечения через год. 9. Я предложил, чтобы его послали делегатом на конференцию от нашего института. 10. Я настаиваю, чтобы вы приняли это лекарство.

III. in a predicative clause

Ex. 27. Study the following chart.

1. The **suggestion** is that we **(should) hire** a car.
2. The **matter** is that everybody **(should) take** part in the discussion.
3. The **request** was that all the guests **(should) leave** the keys with the reception clerk.

Ex. 28. Paraphrase the following sentences using the Subjunctive Mood in a predicative clause.

M o d e l : It was **ordered** that every **student should** go through a medical examination before joining the sports club.
The order was that every student **should go through** a medical examination before joining the sports club.

1. It was **suggested** that the conference should be held in April. 2. It's **requested** that visitors should not touch the museum exhibits. 3. It's **ordered** that those who leave last should switch off the light and lock the laboratory. 4. It is **recommended** that he should give up sports for a while to catch up with his studies 5. It was **demanded** that he should give an explanation for his behaviour.

Ex. 29. Translate the following sentences using the subjunctive mood in predicative clauses.

1. Было распоряжение, чтобы в субботу собрания не проводились. 2. Его предложение заключалось в том, чтобы каждый высказал свое мнение по поводу внедрения новых методов в работу. 3. Просьба подавать жалобы

в письменном виде. 4. Дело в том, чтобы вы поняли значение этой задачи и отнеслись к ней со всей ответственностью. 5. Наше основное требование заключается в том, чтобы вы проявляли больше активности при обсуждении этого вопроса.

Ex. 30. Open the brackets using the Subjunctive Mood.

BENSKIN'S ROMANCE

We, medical students, spent two days a week in the accident room, where I began to feel I was at last learning a little medicine by discovering how to put a bandage* on without dropping it to the floor first.

The order was that a pair of us (to sleep) once a week in hospital attending to cases that came during the night. This system was nearly the end of Tony Benskin. In his walks round the sleeping hospital he had met a pretty nurse and it looked as if he (to fall) in love with her. Benskin's romance (to end) harmlessly if he (not to make) a mistake on the last night of our work in the hospital. To celebrate the end of our week in the accident room we spent the evening in the King George**. At eleven, when it was time we (to return) to the hospital, Benskin rushed to see his night nurse, while I went to bed.

Just after three I was shaken awake. Automatically I reached for my trousers, thinking that it was necessary that I (to go) to the accident room: but it was Benskin.

"I wish you (to let) me sleep," I said in a rough voice.

"Old man!" he said. "You've got to help me!" He acted as if something terrible (to happen).

"What's the matter?" I inquired sleepily.

"You know that night nurse — Molly?"

"Umm."

"Well, listen, old man, Oh, I wish you (not to go) to sleep again. Tonight I came to see her and before I knew where I was I'd asked her to marry me! But for the pint I had had at the King George I never (to do) a thing like that!"

I tried to clear the sleep and alcohol out of my eyes: "It's doubtful that she (to accept) you."

"But she did. Don't you realise what's happened! She's set her heart on marrying me!"

"Perhaps she'll have forgotten all about it by the morning," I suggested hopefully.

"Forgotten? Not on your life! You know what these women are! The news'll spread all over the hospital by nine o'clock in the morning. I wish I never (to do) a foolish thing like that!"

"If I (to be) you, I (to go) and explain that it was all in fun."

---

* бинт

** a pub

Benskin gave a laugh: "You go!"

"I see your point. It's necessary that I (to think) in silence."

After about twenty minutes I had an idea. I criticized it to myself carefully, and it looked as if it (to work).

"I think I've got the answer," I said and explained it to him. He shook me warmly by the hand and rushed away.

The solution was a simple one. My advice was that Benskin (to propose)* to every single night nurse in the hospital.

(after "Doctor in the House" by Richard Gordon)

V. The Use of the Subjunctive Mood and Modal Verbs in on Adverbial Clause of Purpose

Ex. 31. Study the following pattern.

1. I'll buy a magazine **so that** you may read during the journey.
2. Let's have a break **so that** we **may (can)**** air the room.
3. I stepped aside **so that** she **might (could)** pass by.
4. He hid the gun carefully **in order that***** the children **should (might)** not take it.

Ex. 32. Paraphrase the following sentences on the above pattern.

1. The secretary brought some papers **for me to sign**. 2. I am telling all this **for you to understand** what we expect of you. 3. The sign "Mind the step" was fixed to the door for **everybody to see it**. 4. They wanted to get up an incident **for his name to get into the local** paper. 5. She gave him a pain-killing medicine **to make him sleep**. 6. The teacher brought as many copies of the book as there were students **for each student to have one**. 7. I'll buy a TV-set **for my old people to enjoy it.** 8. He fixed the shelf low **for the boy to reach it**. 9. He spoke loudly **to make those in the back seats** hear him. 10. He gave up his life **for his people to live more happily**.

Ex. 33. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Им дали время, чтобы они могли обдумать план действий. 2. Она отвернулась, чтобы он не заметил ее волнения. 3. Они расширили дорогу, чтобы машины могли проходить быстрее. 4. Она вышла, чтобы дать им возможность поговорить. 5. Они говорили шепотом, чтобы их никто не мог услышать. 6. Вы должны отправить его на юг, чтобы вылечить от этой

* делать предложение (о браке)

** Can (could) is used in colloquial speech.

*** In order that ... not = lest, e.g. He hid the gun carefully lest the children should take it.

болезни. 7. Он сообщил им о своем приезде, чтобы они могли его встретить.

Ex. 34. Test translation.

1. В нашей стране уделяется большое внимание развитию науки. 2. За последние годы создан целый ряд научно-исследовательских (research) институтов. Их работой руководят известные ученые. 3. Новый метод лечения ревматизма, разработанный группой ученых-медиков, успешно применяется на практике. 4. Он хорошо знает предмет теоретически, но у него не было еще случая применить свои знания на практике. 5. Если вы хотите иметь разговорную практику на английском языке, советую вам поработать с иностранной делегацией в качестве экскурсовода. 6. Положение было опасным, и мы должны были действовать немедленно. 7. В их работе были отмечены некоторые недостатки. Хотелось бы знать, какие меры (шаги) принимаются в этом направлении. 8. Он близорукий и поэтому носит очки. 9. У нее радостно забилось сердце при виде родного города. 10. Они всегда были близкими друзьями, но после окончания института разъехались в разные города и потеряли друг друга из виду. 11. Я уверен, что он не хотел обидеть вас. Он действовал из самых лучших побуждений. 12. Вам каждый укажет, как пройти к морю. 13. Я не намерен говорить о делах сегодня. 14. Узнайте, пожалуйста, на каких условиях можно снять зал в ресторане для вечера. 15. Когда меня попросили подробно рассказать о случившемся, она подала мне знак молчать. 16. Он не почувствовал никакой боли во время операции. 17. Я могу порекомендовать вам хорошее средство от простуды. 18. Зачем вы сеете панику? Опасности никакой нет. 19. Какова была цель его визита? 20. Судить о человеке надо не по словам, а по его поступкам. 21. Судя по его виду, он чем-то расстроен. 22. Нельзя судить о человеке по первому впечатлению. 23. Он настаивал, чтобы ему дали возможность доказать свою правоту.

SPEECH EXERCISES

Ex. 35. Retell in narrative form.

DOCTOR SALLY

Lottie, a fashionable young lady, had always been ill-tempered, but that morning when she came into the sitting-room and found there a charming young woman, she made herself particularly unpleasant to the visitor, and giving her a nasty look started with:

"And who may this be?"

"I'm a doctor," said Sally.

"You? A doctor?"

"Can you read?" asked Sally with annoyance.

"Of course I can read."

"Then read this," said Sally and handed her card to Lottie.

"Doctor Sally Smith," Lott'ie read. "Well, I suppose it's all right. Still it looks strange to me. And let me tell you ..."

"Quiet, please," said Sally. "I want to make an examination," and she became busy with her stethoscope. "Take off your dressing gown."

"Eh? Oh, all right."

"Take a deep breath... The lungs appear to be good," said Sally. "Well, the heart seems all right, too. Now for the reflexes. Cross your legs... Nothing the matter with them. All right, that's all."

"Examination over?"

"Yes."

Lottie became interested. "What's wrong with me?"

"Nothing much. You need a rest."

"Aren't you going to look at my tongue?"

"I can tell, without looking at it, that that needs a rest too. What you want is a few weeks in a nice, quiet sanatorium."

"You're going to send me to a sanatorium?"

"Well, I'm advising that you should go. You need a place where there are cold baths and plain food, and no cocktails and cigarettes."

(after "Doctor Sally" by P.O. Wodehouse)

Ex. 36. Answer the following questions using the active vocabulary. Sum up your answers.

1. Hospitals

1. What are the oldest hospitals in town? 2. How do the new hospitals differ from the old ones? 3. What does the inside of a hospital look like? 4. What is a ward? 5. How many hospital-beds are there usually in a ward? 6. How does the post-operation ward differ from an ordinary one? 7. Why are operations made in the operation theatre?

2. In Hospital

1. What cases are treated in hospitals? 2. What case would need operative treatment? 3. How long are patients kept in hospital after an operation? 4. Why aren't patients allowed to leave hospital if they are still running temperatures? 5. What kind of medicine are they given to take off the pain? 6. When is a patient allowed to leave hospital?

3. Visiting a Friend In Hospital

1. Why are there special days and hours set for visitors? 2. In what cases

are visitors allowed to come daily? 3. Why are no visitors allowed when there is an influenza epidemic in town? 4. What would you bring a sick friend to liven up his stay in hospital? 5. How will you try to take his mind off the illness? 6. What will you wish him when leaving?

4. Laid up With the Flu*

A. 1. In what cases do you send for a doctor? 2. What kind of examination does a doctor give you? Why does he feel your pulse? ask you to show him your tongue? inquire about the temperature and whether you have any complaints? 3. In what way will your answers help him? 4 What will he do if the illness demands daily treatment and attention'? 5 What will he do if he finds that you're suffering from a bad cold (pneumonia, etc.)? 6. What is the best cure for a bad cold? 7. How long will you be on sick-leave** if you have a cold? 8. Why is it important that you should follow the doctor's instructions?

B. 1. What do you feel when you're falling ill? 2. Can you go on with your usual work? 3. Why had you better keep to your bed? 4. How will the illness develop if you disobey the doctor's orders? 5. What kind of a patient are you: the quiet or the noisy type? Do you complain all the time? How do you stand pain? Do you make a fuss about little things? Do you lose your temper easily? 6. What are the signs that you're getting well again?

Ex. 37. Read the passage, answer the questions, using the vocabulary of the lesson and write it up in about one third of the original length.

'There are one or two elementary rules to be followed,' remarked Dr. Budd turning to Doyle. 'The most obvious is that you must never let the patients see that you want them. Never make the mistake of being polite to them. There's no better advertisement than a patient whose feelings have been hurt. I quarrelled with one man about his liver****, and it ended by my throwing him down the stairs. What was the result? Ни talked so much about it that the whole village from which he came, sick and well, rushed to see me. It's human nature, my boy, and you can't change it. You make yourself cheap and you become cheap. You put a high price on yourself and they take you at that price. Suppose I set up in Harley Street tomorrow, and made it all nice and easy, with hours from ten to three, do you think I should get a patient? Never. How would I work it? I should let it be known that I only saw patients from midnight until two in the morning, and that bald-headed**** people must pay double. That would make people talk, and in four months the street would be blocked all night. That's my principle here. I often come in the morning and send them all about their business, tell

---

* flu = influenza = the grippe
** бюллетень (по болезни)
**** печень
**** лысый

them I'm going off to the country for a day. I lose forty pounds, and it's worth four hundred as an advertisement.'

'But I understand that the consultations are free?'

'So they are, but they have to pay for the medicine. But mind you, Doyle, don't make any mistake about this! All this would go for nothing if you had not something real behind — I cure them. That's the point. I take cases that others have given up, and I cure them. All the rest is to bring them here. But once here I keep them because I know the treat ment and the cure. It would all be useless but for that.'

(after "Conan Doyle" by Hesketh Pearson)

Questions

1. What was Mr. Budd's idea-as to how a doctor should treat his patients? 2. Why should he be careful not to let them know that he wanted them? 3. Why did Dr. Budd never hesitate to be rough with his patients? 4. What made him believe that rough treatment usually produced a good impression on them? 5. What happened after Dr. Budd had thrown someone downstairs? 6. Why didn't the patients complain? 7. What did Dr. Budd have to say about human nature? 8. How would Dr. Budd run his practice if he set up in Harley Street? 9. Why were the patients prepared to accept Dr. Budd on his own terms? 10. What cases did he often take up? 11. What was the real secret of Dr. Budd's success as a doctor? 12. What if Dr. Budd had used the time and effort he wasted on advertisement to some good purpose?

Ex. 38. Read the following, answer the questions, retell the text in English.

РУССКИЙ ДОКТОР — ПРЕЗИДЕНТ ГАВАЙИ

В конце XIX века на Гавайских островах появился седой белокожий человек. Он был очень внимателен к местным жителям, которые обращались к нему «за исцелением», и бедных лечил бесплатно. Слава об этом человеке распространилась мгновенно. Называли его «доктор Руссель», но никто не знал его настоящего имени. Кто же он был на самом деле?

Уроженец России из белорусской семьи на Могилевщине, Николай Константинович Судзиловский, медик по образованию, еще в студенческие годы начал участвовать в нелегальных организациях народовольцев. Его повсюду разыскивала царская полиция, чтобы упрятать в тюрьму. Однако ему удается нелегально перебраться через границу в Румынию.

И отправился путешествовать политический эмигрант по свету, меняя имена и внешний облик, занятия.

Двенадцать лет прожил Судзиловский на Гавайских островах. Этот бесстрашный человек и здесь оставался верным своим принципам, требуя государственного контроля над здравоохранением, улучшения жизненных условий рабочих на сахарных плантациях. Он не скрывал своих намерений революционизировать общество."

После «свержения» проамериканскими агентами туземной королевы, на острове были объявлены выборы в сенат. И в этот момент, кроме традиционных демократов и республиканцев, появляется третья партия, возглавляемая русским доктором. Об успехе третьей партии можно судить хотя бы по тому, что именно Николай Судзиловский становится первым президентом страны. Он пытается заставить сенат принять «билль о народном здравоохранении». Он настаивает на том, чтобы было организовано местное самоуправление, чтобы народное образование стало бесплатным, требует, чтобы" развивалась местная промышленность. Но против него тотчас поднялись местные богатей и североамериканские агенты. Доктору Русселю приходится уйти с поста президента.

Осталось огромное количество разного рода документов, связанных с доктором Русселем и его деятельностью.

Questions

1. When did the Russian doctor arrive in Hawaii? 2. Why did his fame spread so quickly? 3. What name did the local people give the doctor? 4. What was his real name? 5. Where was he born? 6. What was he by education? 7. What organisation did he belong to in his student years? 8. Why was the czarist police after him? 9. Why did he have to cross the border into Roumania? 10. What would have happened to him if he had stayed in Russia? 11. Where did he set out from Roumania? 12. How long did he live in Hawaii? 13. Did he drop his political activity when he arrived there? 14. What were his demands as to public health care? 15. Why did he fight for better living conditions for the workers on sugar plantations? 16. Did he make a secret of his intentions to revolutionize society? 17. What election was announced following the "overthrow" of the native ruler? 18. What third party took part in the election campaign? 19. What is there to show that the third party was a success? 20. Who became first president of Hawaii? 21. Why did the new president insist that the Public Health Care Bill should be among the first passed by the Senate? 22. What other points were there on his program? 23. Who rose against the new president and his program of reforms? 24. Why did Doctor Russel have to give up his post?

Ex. 39. Read and retell the text.

DR. FRANKLIN OF HARLEY STREET*

A year ago, when I was still quite a kid, I had food poisoning**. That's what I had — but that's not what the doctors told me. Judging by what they said I had almost everything except food poisoning. Believe me, I'm not inventing anything. When the local doctor gave me up, I went to hospital on the national health***, where at least three of them examined me, gave me pills and injections and sent me away as cured, exactly as before. For days I was in great pain. I ran temperatures and was sick almost hourly. I was beginning to get really frightened.

Then I had an idea. Everybody knows that Harley Street is where the best doctors practise their trade. I went there one day. I decided that I'd choose the same street number as the day it happened to be and ring the bell, and see what happened. The trouble was there turned out to be six bells; so, without hesitation I rang them all. If you don't believe this story, remember that I was drunk with fever and just didn't care what happened. I'd coire there with one purpose—to reach somebody who knew what the matter was. Well, the six bells were all answered by the same person: a sort of nurse-secretary, and before I had time to make any inquiries, I collapsed**** in the hall.

When I came round I saw a tall, intelligent-looking young man, who asked mi to tell him all about my trouble, which I did. He gave me an hour's examination, and then said, "Well, I don't know what's the matter with you, but we must find out."

I can't tell you how these words of Doctor Franklin impressed me and how my heart filled with respect for him. Because all the other doctors said they knew what the matter was, but Dr. Franklin of Har-ley Street said he didn't know. He got an ambulance and placed me inside one of those eighty-a-week clinics where they pierce***** your ear-lobes******, or change your sex for you, for three-figure fees — all without any mention of who was going to pay or on what terms I was going to be kept there.

To cut a long story short, he found there was an abscess, and pierced

it, and down went the temperature, and that was that. Dr. Franklin insisted that I should stay another week inside the clinic. Every day he would drop in to say "Hi", and he always treated me in front of the nurses as if I were a cabinst minister or someone — I mean he was so wonderfully polite. I really think he had the nicest manners I have ever seen in anyone, and I shan't forget it.

But on the day I was to go horns, he did not turn up at all, and so I didn't have a chance to thank him, or to raise the question of how to pay for my stay in

---

* a street in London where doctors have their offices.
** пищевое отравление
*** a city hospital where patients receive free treatment
**** потерять сознание
***** прокалывать
****** мочки ушей

the clinic. I wrote him, of course, but though he answered very nicely, he didn't mention the money. So I did this. While I was in the place, I took pictures with my Rolleiflex of nurses and patients, and some of them ware really funny. So I picked out the best, made enlargements, put them in an album, and dropped it in at Harley Street, and he wrote back and said, if ever I got into the clinic again, which he sincerely hoped I wouldn't, he'd confiscate my Rolleiflex first.

(from "Absolute Beginners" by Collin Maclnnes)

Ex. 40. Use the following words and phrases in situations.

1. Public Health Services In the Soviet Union

the Constitution; to guarantee the citizens of the country the right (to); free medical service; to take great care (of); people's health; to offer; free treatment; radio-active treatment; laboratory test; clinics, dispensaries, hospitals; to practise prophylactics and periodical medical examinations (check-ups); to fight epidemics; to lake action against: to succeed (in); to wipe out infectious diseases; in addition to; for this purpose; to set up; sanatoria, holiday homes, country hotels, tourist camps, children's health homes, etc.

2. Soviet Medical Science

to hold a leading place in world science; to set an example; the latest discoveries; to play an important role in the development (of); to make smth possible; progress in medicine; to carry experiments; to prove successful in practice; to set up; scientific research institutes; to work out effective methods;

3. A Visit to the Doctor

to feel far from well; to suffer from awful headaches; to have pains in the back (in the stomach, etc.); to keep putting smth off; finally; to go and see the doctor; the purpose of one's visit; what's the matter with you?; to complain of; to describe the symptoms of one's illness; to feel smb's pulse; to take smb's temperature; to strip to the waist; to examine carefully; in the end; to suggest; a course of treatment; to insist; ought to; to take better care of one's health; to inquire; to suggest a cure; to take up time; after all; up to smb; it's part of the cure to wish to be cured; to obey the doctor's orders; to keep to a diet; an apple a day keeps the doctor away; to show signs of recovery; 1o be worth the effort

4. A Dangerous Case

A. a surgeon; to have several cases to attend to; to discover; to suspect; there was no mistaking the symptoms; a dangerous disease; a careful examination; to put smb to laboratory tests; to throw light on smth; no time to lose; a matter of life or death; to take immediate action; a sensible solution: to

talk the matter over (with smb); to explain the situation; to be patient with smb; 1o calm smb;

B. a patient; to suffer from; to have pains; can hardly stand smth; to be placed in hospital; to be prescribed some treatment; to be X-rayed; judging by; at the mention of; to sink (of one's heart); 1o be paralyzed with fear; common sense; the sccner, the better; to agree 1o be operated on; to set the date; to be prepared for the operation; to put all worries aside; to intend; to go through the operation; to be a success; to take a course of treatment; to be cured

Ex. 41. Tell the story of each of the pictures.

Now, why on earth did you have to go and tell the guests I was a doctor!

to seize the chance; to queue up; in different stages of undress; to consult a doctor; free of charge; to complain about one's aches and pains; to ruin the party for smb.

Ex. 42. Subjects for oral and written composition.

1. Retell the story as if you were: a) Barton; b) Crabbe; c) Crabbe's wife; d) the boatman; e) the landlady; f) one of the townspeople.
2. Give character-sketches of a) Crabbe; b) Barton.
3. Write an article as it might have appeared in the Brisport Chronicle.
4. Explain why Crabbe needed advertisement.
5. Describe a visit to a doctor.
6. My idea of a good doctor.
7. Tell a story to illustrate the following proverb: "An ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure": Предупреждение лучше лечения.
8. My idea of true friendship.
9. What success in life means to me. 10. Medical care in the Soviet Union.

Lesson Six

Text: "A Canary for One" by E. Hemingway[1]
Grammar: The Gerund

A Canary For One

The train passed very quickly a long, red-stone house with a garden and four thick palm trees with tables under them in the shade. On the other side was the sea, which was seen only occasionally and far below against the rocks.

"I bought him in Palermo,[2]" the American lady said. "We only had an hour and it was Sunday morning. The man wanted to be paid in dollars and I gave him a dollar and a half. He really sings very beautifully."

It was very hot in the train and it was very hot in the compartment. No breeze came through the open window. The American lady pulled the window-blind down and there was no more sea, even occasionally. On the other side there was glass, then the corridor, then trees and flat fields of grapes, with grey-stone hills behind them.

Coming into Marseilles[3] the train slowed down and followed one track through many others into the station. The train stayed twenty-five minutes in the station at Marseilles and the American lady bought a copy of the Daily Mail[4]. She walked a little way along the station platform, but she stayed near the steps of the car because at Cannes,[5] where it stopped for twelve minutes, the train had left with no signal of departure and she had only gotten[6] on just in time. The American lady was a little deaf and she was afraid that perhaps signals of departure were given and that she did not hear them.

After it was dark the train was in Avignon.[7] People got on and off. At the news-stand Frenchmen, returning to Paris, bought that day's French papers.

Inside the compartment the porter had pulled down the three beds from inside the wall and prepared them for sleeping. In the night the American lady lay without sleeping because the train was a rapide[8] and went very fast and she was afraid of the speed in the night. The

American lady's bed was the one next to the window. The canary from Palermo, a cloth spread over his cage, was cut of the draught in the corridor that went into the compartment washroom. There was a blue light outside the compartment, and all night the train went fast and the American lady lay awake and waited for a wreck.

In the morning the train was near Paris, and after the American lady had come out of the washroom, looking very wholesome and middle-aged and American in spite of not having slept, and had taken the cloth off the bird cage

and hung the cage in the sun, she went to the restaurant car lor breakfast. When she came back to the compartment again, the beds had been pushed back into the wall and made into seats, the canary was shaking his feathers in the sunlight that came through the open window, and the train was much nearer Paris.

"He loves the sun," the American lady said. "He'll sing now in a little while. I've always loved birds. I'm taking him home to my little girl. There — he's singing now."

The train crossed a river and passed through a very beautifully tended forest. The train passed through many outside of Paris towns. There were tram-cars in the towns and big advertisements en the walls toward the train. For several minutes I had not listened to the American lady, who was talking to my wife.

"Is your husband American too?" asked the lady.

"Yes," said my wife. "We're both Americans."

"I thought you were English."

"Oh, no."

"I'm so glad you're Americans. American men make the best husbands," the American lady was saying. "That was why we left the Continent,[9] you know. My daughter fell in love with a man in Vevey.[10]" She stopped. "They were simply madly in love." She stopped again. "I took her away, of course."

"Did she get over it?" asked my wife.

"I don't think so," said the American lady. "She wouldn't eat anything and she doesn't seem to take an interest in anything. She doesn't care about things. I couldn't have her marrying a foreigner."" She paused. "Someone, a very good friend, told me once, "No foreigner can make an American girl a good husband."

"No," said my wife, "I suppose not."

The train was now coming into Paris. There were many cars standing on tracks — brown wooden restaurant cars and brown wooden sleeping cars that would go to Italy at five o'clock that night; the cars were marked Paris—Rome, and cars, with seats on the roofs, that went back and forth to the suburbs with, at certain hours, people in all the seats and on the roofs.

"Americans make the best husbands," the American lady said to my wife. I was getting down the bags. "American men are the only men in the world to marry."

"How long ago did you leave Vevey?" asked my wife.

"Two years ago this fall.[12] It's her,'you know, that I'm taking the canary to."

"Was the man your daughter was in love with a Swiss?"[13]

"Yes," said the American lady. "He was from a very good family in Vevey. He was going to be an engineer. They met there in Vevey. They used to go for long walks together."

"I know Vevey," said my wife. "We were there on our honey-moon."

"Were you really? That must have been lovely. I had no idea, of course that she'd fall in love with him."

"It was a. very lovely place," said my wife.

"Yes," said the American lady. "Isn't it lovely? Were you there **in** the fall?"

"Yes," said my wife.

We were passing three cars that had been in a wreck.

"Look," I said. "There's been a wreck."

The American lady looked and saw the last car. "I was afraid of just that all night," she said. "I'll never travel on a rapide again at night. There must be other comfortable trains that don't go so fast."

The train was in the dark of the Gare de Lyons,[14] and then stopped and porters came up to the windows. I handed the bags through the windows, and we were out on the platform, and the American lady put herself in charge of one of three men from Cook's[15] who said: "Just a moment, madam, and I'll look for your name."

The porter brought a truck and piled on the luggage, and my wife said good-bye and I said good-bye to the American lady.

We followed the porter with the truck down the long cement platform beside the train. At the end was a gate and a man took the tickets.

We were returning to Paris to set up separate residences.[16]

NOTES

1. **Ernest Hemingway**, American writer, born in 1899 in Oak Park near Chicago. He first went to Europe during World War I, where his experiences gave him material for such of his works as "Men Without Women" (1928) and "A Farewell to Arms" (1929). In the twenties he attended the Genoa and the Lausanne conferences as correspondent. He was also correspondent in Spain during the 1936— 37 Civil War where he wrote "The Fifth Column". In 1939 he settled down in Cuba where he wrote "For Whom the Bell Tolls" about the Spanish Civil War. In 1944 he was sent as war correspondent to London.

In 1952 he won Pulitzer Prize for "The Old Man and the Sea" and in 1954 he got the Nobel Prize for literature. Hemingway died in 1961.

2. Palermo: the largest city and port of Sicily

3. Marseilles: a seaport in southeastern France on the Mediterranean

4. *the Daily Mail:* an English conservative newspaper

5. Cannes: a resort in the Riviera, southeastern France, famous also for the Film Festivals held there every year

6. gotten (*Am. E.):* got

7. Avignon: a city in southern France, on the Rhone

8. rapide *(Fr.): a* fast train

9. the Continent: all of Europe except the British Isles.

10. **Vevey**: a town in Switzerland on the Lake of Geneva

11. the construction **can't (couldn't, shan't, won't) have smb do/doing smth** in a negative context has the meaning of разрешать, допускать, терпеть
e.g. I won't have you say (saying) things like that.

12. **fall** *(Am. E.):* autumn

13. **Swiss**: a native of Switzerland; швейцарец

14. **Gare de Lyons**: the Paris terminus (ж.д. конечная станция) of the Paris-Lyons Mediterranean railway line

15. **Cook's**: Thomas Cook (1808—1892) English tourist agent, founder of the Thomas Cook and Son, a travelling agency that helps tourists to make tours of Europe and the American continent (since 1864) and provides them with hotel accommodations

16. **to set up separate residences:** to set up different homes; *(here) to* arrange a divorce ... чтобы начать дело о разводе

VOCABULARY

occasion *n* событие (торжественное, печальное и т.п.); случай; повод; подходящий момент a great (happy, sad, particular, fitting, proper, etc.) occasion. Did he mark the occasion? This is not an occasion **for** laughter (joking, etc.). I met him **on** several occasions. The suit will do **for** all occasions. **Phr. on** the occasion **of** (one's birthday, graduation, smb's arrival, etc.) по случаю, в честь (дня рождения и т.п.); occasional *a* случающийся время от времени an occasional visitor (letter, talk, quarrel, etc.); occasionally *adu* время от времени, изредка They met but occasionally.

against *prep* на фоне чего-л, по сравнению с кем-л, чем-л The house was dark **against** the snow. There is a marked rise in this year's export figures **against** last year's.

flat *a* 1. плоский, ровный, гладкий a flat nose (chest, etc.) 2. скучный, однообразный; пресный, выдохшийся (о пище, напитке) a flat joke (story, life, voice, etc.); flat food (wine, beer, etc.) 3. категорический отказ a flat refusal; **Phr.** fall flat *(lit. & fig.)* упасть плашмя; не иметь успеха He fell flat on the ground. Their efforts fell flat.

depart *u i* отходить (о поезде и т.п.); уходить, отклоняться (от темы и т.п.) What platform will the train depart **from?** to depart **from** the subject (point, etc.); departure *n* отъезд; отправление, отплытие

in spite of=despite *prep* несмотря на They accepted the goods **in spite of** late delivery.

charge *n* 1. забота, попечение, заведывание to be **in** charge **of** an office (a department, the work, etc.); **Phr.** leave smb/smth **in** smb's charge оставлять кого-л, что-л на чье-л попечение; 2. цена; *p1.* расходы, издержки They will pack your things **for a** small charge. What **are** the charges **for** a room and meals at this hotel? **Phr.** free of charge бесплатно; charge 1. vt поручать, вверять to charge smb with a task (a mission, etc.) 2. vi назначать, взимать цену How much do they charge for a room (repairing a TV set, etc.)

comfort *n* 1. комфорт, удобство She likes comfort. 2. утешение; поддержка (моральная) His letters were a great comfort **to** her. comfort vt

утешать, успокаивать Go and comfort her. She is upset, comfortable *a* 1. удобный, уютный a comfortable seat (chair, rccm, train, etc.); Are you, comfortable there? Вам удобно? **Phr**. make oneself comfortable удобно расположиться, устроиться 2. утешительный, успокоительный a comfortable thought (piece of news, etc.)

separate *a* отдельный, отдельно взятый; сссбый a separate country (part, room, sentence, etc.); separate vtlvi отедлять(ся); разделяться); расходить(ся) England is separated **from** the Continent by the English Channel. They separated two years ago. separately *adv* отделыно, по одному to travel (live, etc.) separately. The matter was to be dealt with separately.

WORD COMBINATIONS

in the shade в тени (деревьев и т.п.)

make a good doctor (engineer, etc.) из него (ее и т.п.) выйдет хороший врач (инженер и т.п.)

fall in (out of) love with smb влюбиться в (разлюбить) кого-л.

get over a shock (a blow, a fright, a surprise, one's failure, etc.) пережить, прийти в себя, оправиться после (удара, испуга и т.п.)

EXERCISES ON THE TEXT

Ex. 1. Answer the following questions.

1. How does the story begin? 2. What are the main characters of the story? 3. What was it like in the train? 4. What did the American lady tell the author and his wife about her daughter? 5. Why did she buy a canary for her daughter? 6. Why couldn't she have her daughter marry a foreigner? 7. What did the author's wife remember of Vevey? 8. Why were the author and his wife returning to Paris?

Ex. 2. Find in the text the English for:

а) 1. в тени; 2. платить долларами; 3. время от времени; 4. ровные поля; 5. газетный киоск; 6. типичная американка средних лет; 7. солнечный свет; 8. рекламный плакат; 9. выйти замуж за иностранца; 10. в определенные часы; 11. вверить себя чьим-л заботам; 12. проститься с кем-л; 13. разъехаться на разные квартиры.

б) 1. в поезде; 2. купе вагона; 3. замедлить ход; 4. по одному из бесчисленных путей подойти к вокзалу; 5. перрон; 6. подножка вагона; 7. сигнал отправления; 8. сесть в поезд; 9. сойти с поезда; 10. проводник

вагона; 11. откинуть койку; 12. идти на большой скорости; 13. крушение поезда; 14. вагон-ресторан; 15. спальный вагон; 16. на вагонах были таблички «Париж—Рим»; 17. вагон пригородного сообщения; 18. снимать багаж (с полки); 19. удобный поезд; 20. носильщик; 21. тележка для багажа; 22. нагрузить багаж; 23. выход (в конце платформы); 24. билет.

Ex. 3. Give the four forms of the following verbs:

cut, pay, sing, lie (лежать), shake, eat, sleep, say, set, spread, speed, hang, travel, bring.

Ex. 4. Translate the following into English, use the construction: "can't (shan't, won' t) have smb do/doing smth".

1. Я возражаю против того, чтобы вы вносили какие-либо изменения в наши планы в последнюю минуту. 2. Нельзя допускать, чтобы он бросил занятия живописью. 3. Я не могу допустить, чтобы вы взяли все заботы на себя. 4. Пойдемте и поговорим с ней. Нельзя допустить, чтобы она распространяла подобные слухи. 5. Никто не разрешит вам говорить больше десяти минут на собрании. 6. Нельзя допустить, чтобы он пошел на такой риск. Надо предупредить его об опасности.

Ex. 5. Translate the following into English, use the construction,: "to make a (good, poor) painter, driver, etc".

1. Он как раз тот человек, который нам нужен. Из него выйдет прекрасный руководитель экспедиции, г.к. он и с людьми умеет работать и дело хорошо знает. 2. Чтобы из вас вышел хороший специалист, вы, прежде всего, должны любить свою работу. 3. Из тебя никогда не получится водителя, если ты не будешь хорошо знать правил уличного движения. 4. Из нее со временем выйдет прекрасная учительница — посмотрите, как она терпелива и в то же время тверда со своими младшими братьями и сестрами. 5. У него хорошее чувство цвета, у него задатки художника. 6. Он никогда не будет таким хорошим охотником, каким был его отец: у него не хватает терпения. 7. Вряд ли из нее получится хорошая спортсменка, она не уделяет достаточно времени ежедневным тренировкам.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBS

Ex. 6. Study the following phrases, a) recall the sentences in which they are used in the text, and b) use them when retelling the text.

in the shade (sun, etc.); **against** the rocks; to pay **in** dollars; **in/on** the train; slow **down**; get **on/off** the train; next **to**; **in/out** of the draught; **in** spite **of**; **in** a

little while; fall **in/out of** love **with** smb; be **in** love; get **over**; interest **in**; **at** certain hours; **in** charge **of**; **at** the end **of** (the platform, corridor, etc.).

Ex. 7. Fill in the blanks with prepositions or adverbs.

A. 1. Having been in the country ... only a couple ... months she very quickly got ... the language difficulty. 2. His main interest lies ... research, don't charge him ... managerial work. 3. ... the two sisters the younger was a much better actress, always leaving the elder sister ... the shade. 4. The medicine ought to be taken ... definite hours... a glass... warm milk. 5. Don't sit ... the draught, or you'll catch a cold. 6. ... spite ... the early hour we found a restaurant already open and went ... ... a quick meal. 7. His report would have been more ... the point if he hadn't gone ... details and hadn't departed ... the subject. 8. Though he was doing his best to hide his feelings, it was obvious that he was very much ... love ... the girl. 9. The last time we met was ... the occasion ... some family meeting. 10. It's all so sudden. I can't join the party, I'm not dressed ... the occasion. 11. She got ... the shock ... a speed I never expected ... her. 12. The new model ... the car looks much more beautiful ... the old model. 13. The little boy was left ... the charge ... his sister only ... one occasion, and they both enjoyed themselves a lot. The day started and ended ... ice-cream, and no dinner. 14. She took the new life ... its difficulties very hard, as she had always lived ... comfort. 15. This problem can't be dealt ... separately ... the rest. 16. I must have my TV set repaired. Do you happen to know how much they charge ... repairing this particular model?

B. ARRIVING... LONDON

The train was no longer going ... a great speed.

"We shall be ... London ... five minutes now," said Alban looking ... ... the window … the white smoke ... the engine ... the grey London sky.

The train slowed ... and followed one track ... many others ... the station. Alban put'... his hat and took ... ... the racks the things; then he pulled the window ... and waved his arm ... a porter. The train pulled ... ... the platform. A porter opened the deer and Alban handed him ... one suit-case ... another. Then, ... his polite way, having jumped ... ... the platform, he gave his hand to Anne to help her ... . The porter went to fetch a truck. When he came ... ... the truck, the luggage was piled ... it, and they followed the porter ... the cement platform ... the gate.

When the taxi came, the luggage was placed next ... the driver. Alban gave the porter half-a-crown and they drove ... .

(after "The Door of Opportunity" by W. S. Maugham)

Ex. 8. Give the English for the following phrases, using the preposition "with" in

its different meanings. Use the phrases in sentences of your own.

I. а) дом с садом; женщина с сумкой в руке; человек с портфелем; девушка с голубыми глазами;

б) с волнением в голосе; с удивлением во взгляде; говорить с акцентом.

II. а) вместе с товарищем; приехать с семьей; пообедать с кем.л; поиграть с собакой; поехать за город с детьми;

б) говорить (беседовать, спорить, соглашаться) с кем-л; иметь дело (торговать, иметь договоренность) с кем-л; подружиться (ладить, поссориться), с кем-л; влюбиться в кого-л.

III. а) писать ручкой (карандашом); резать ножом (ножницами); ударить молотком (камнем, веслом); толкнуть плечом (ногой, рукой); наполнить водой; покрыть одеялом; украсить цветами;

б) сделать (построить) собственными руками.

IV. а) работать с энтузиазмом; наблюдать с интересом; говорить с раздражением; смотреть на кого-л с восхищением (удивлением, безразличием);

б) быть вне себя от возбуждения; дрожать от холода; обезуметь от радости; побледнеть от ужаса (ярости); покраснеть от стыда (гнева); ослабеть от голода; устать от шума; кричать от боли.

V. быть удовлетворенным (недовольным) результатами; быть сердитым (раздраженным) на кого-л; быть разочарованным чем-л; потерять терпение с кем-л.

MISCELLANEOUS PHRASES

начать со вступления; закончить доклад словами благодарности; пожать кому-л руку; связаться с кем-л по телефону; купить что-л на деньги; набить чемодан книгами; попасть в аварию; с самыми добрыми намерениями; при всем желании; взять телеграмму дрожащими руками.

EXERCISES ON LEXICOLOGY

Ex. 9. Paraphrase the following sentences using an adjective with the suffix "-able (-ibie)". Make other necessary changes.

M o d e l I: We were prepared to accept the terms offered. The terms offered were acceptable.

1. She was used to living in **comfort**. 2. There seems to be a lot of **sense** in his suggestion. 3. He says that he has all the illnesses that one can only **imagine**. 4. Be careful with the vase, it's easy to **break**. 5. The weather in England **changes** several times a day. 6. The old coal mine can still be **worked**. 7. My **advice** is that you should get in touch with the manager. 8. The idea can be

easily put into **practice**.

M o d e l II: I could hardly recognize him.
He was unrecognizable.

1. The child was difficult to **manage**. 2. I saw no **reason** in his demands. 3. He had no words to **describe** the joy he felt. 4. The beer tastes flat, it's not fit to **drink**. 5. His sufferings were difficult to **imagine**. 6. There is no **possibility** to get a ticket for the show. 7. There was no **mistaking** the pride with which he spoke of his son. 8. The question had no **answer**. 9. His behaviour was impossible to **explain**.

Ex. 10. Fill in the blanks with a suitable word from the list: below. asleep, awake, alone, alike, ashamed, alive

1. The pain in the leg kept her ... all night. 2. He settled down comfortably in an armchair and never noticed how he fell... . 3. The two brothers were very much ... . 4. The noisy company had departed and he was ... at last. 5. He was more dead than ... with fear. 6. He was ... of his behaviour.

Ex. 11. Give words of the same roots in Russian. Compare the meaning.

canary, palm (tree), breeze, platform, signal, comfortable, cement, separate, residence.

Ex. 12. Translate the following, using suitable phrasal verbs from the list below.

L I s t: to set up; to fill up; to keep up; to clear up; to cheer up; to turn up (2); toj make up; to take up (2); to grow up; to wash-up;

1. Памятник герою был **установлен** на центральной площади города. 2. Бланк оказался **заполненным** неправильно. 3. Часы пробили семь, пора было **вставать**. 4. Дети **выросли**, но все еще часто обращались к родителям за практическим советом. 5. Когда он наконец **появился**, обсуждение уже подходило к концу. 6. Случай, описанный в книге, не **придуман**. Все так и было на самом деле. 7. Профессор почему-то настаивал, чтобы именно я **занялся** этой проблемой. 8. После ужина она сразу же пошла на кухню помочь матери **вымыть посуду**. 9. Ей не хотелось вступать в спор, не **выяснив до конца** всех подробностей дела. 10. Я несколько раз безуспешно пытался **завести с ним разговор** на тему о моей будущей поездке. Он каждый раз отмалчивался. 11. Иногда бывает достаточно одного слова, чтобы **приободрить** человека. 12. Наконец-то **подвернулась** работа, которая полностью отвечала его вкусам. 13. Уметь **поддержать** разговор — большое искусство.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 13. Fill in the blanks with a suitable word in the correct form. Translate the sentences into Russian.

to charge; charge (2); to comfort; comfort; comfortable; to depart (2); departure; flat (2); occasion (2); occasional (2); occasionally; separate; uncomfortable (2).

1. The hotel gave excellent service at perfectly reasonable ... . 2. All his attempts to learn the truth seemed to fall ... . 3. After the accident the car looked a poor sight and he wondered how much they would be ... him for repairs. 4. He had paid the matter little attention, never giving it more than an ... thought. 5. It was a small station where the trains arrived at and ... from the same platform. 6. I didn't see what was so funny about it. To my mind it was no ... for laughter. 7. He was not to be allowed to ... from the point at any price, for once started there would be no stopping him. 8. It was a dull sort of play, and the ... jokes thrown in did little to liven it up. 9. An ... night on board the plane made her fussy and ill-tempered. 10. We would meet ... to discuss some burning problem of the day. 11. The girl was so upset over her failure that there was no ... her. 12. The day of her friend's ... was nearing, and it made her sad. 13. The shoes, though pretty, were far from ... . 14. Modern trains combine speed and ... . 15. On the several ... I happened to meet him, he had always made a very good impression on me. 16. Something had definitely gone wrong. Her usually cheerful voice now sounded ... and lifeless. 17. He knew he was alone, yet he had the ... feeling of being watched. 18. He had been in ... of the department for years and had never, until now, given reason for dissatisfaction. 19. The sick boy was to be placed in a room ... from the rest of the children.

Ex. 14. Paraphrase the following, using words and word combinations from the text, and making all necessary changes.

to fall flat; flat; in spite of; on the occasion of; for all occasions; occasional; occasionally; to get over (2); to charge (2); in charge of; comfortable; can't have smb do(ing) smth; to depart

1. He would always remember the champagne **party that had been arranged to mark** his fiftieth birthday. 2. All his efforts to succeed seemed to **be wasted**. 3. **Though** he had received his warning, he went on as before, as if looking for trouble on purpose. 4. He was **head** of the expedition and quite prepared to take whatever action was necessary. 5. On the whole the weather was all we could wish for, warm and sunny, with **a bit of** rain **now and then**. 6. The dress in the shopwindow caught her attention at once. Yes, it was just what she needed, something that would do **both for everyday and formal wear**. 7. **Letting him** change his mind **was something** we couldn't **allow**. He was to be made to stick to his promise at any price. 8. The letters she got **from time to time** kept her well-informed as to how things were going in her native town. 9.

It took her several weeks to **recover fully from** her illness. 10. He was **set** the task of making a careful study of the problem and reporting on the results. 11. The food seemed **tasteless**. 12. He wondered if he wasn't running a temperature. 13. It was a different kind of life, easy and **free from all worries**. 14. It's difficult to follow him, he **never keeps to** the subject. 15. His failure in the exam was a hard blow to him. It would take time **getting used to**. 16. **The prices** for the garage services seemed to be quite reasonable.

Ex. 15. Speak on the following topics, using the words and phrases given below.

1. In the Train

An American lady; two other passengers; a fast train; a sleeping car; a compartment; a porter; to pull up (down) the window-blind; to make oneself comfortable; to have the seats made into beds for the night; to get off the train; to walk a little way along the platform; to stay near the steps of the car; for fear of; to be left behind; to leave with no signal of departure; to be afraid of the speed (a wreck).

2. From Palermo to Paris

to take a train; to travel first (second, etc) class; to speed across the country; to cover many miles; in the south; to see the sea occasionally; far below against the rocks; further north; to change (of the city); flat fields of grapes; greystone hills; on the way; to stop at Marseilles, Avignon; to slow down; to follow one track through many others; to pull into (out of) the station; to cross a river; to pass through many outside of Paris towns; big advertisements on the walls toward the train; to near Paris.

5. Arrival In Paris

to come into Paris; to arrive safely; to have a comfortable journey; to have no complaints about the service; to get down the bags; to hand the bags to the porter; to pile the luggage on a truck; to go out on to the platform; to say goodbye to one's fellow-passengers; to give up one's ticket to the man at the gate.

4. The American Lady

to look very wholesome, middle-aged and American; respectable; middle-class; narrow-minded; to be used to having one's own way; to push one's ideas on smb; to stick to one's ideas; to be dissatisfied with smb's choice; to be firm with smb; to leave nothing to chance; not to recognize smb's right to happiness; to ruin smb's life; to set the date of departure; to take smb away; to try to comfort smb; to buy a canary as a present.

5. The Story of the American Lady's Daughter

to go on a trip to the Continent; to stop at a hotel; to fall in love with smb at first sight; to be happy in one's love; a hard blow; to give up easily; not to fight for one's happiness; to be taken away; to suffer; to be used to; to respect smb's wishes; to obey smb's orders; to lose interest in life; to become flat (of life); to take smth hard; not to care about things; not to get over smth.

6. The Story of the Author And His Wife

to listen with half an ear; to be at a loss what to say; to have one's own worries; to be full of one's own thoughts; to go wrong (of the marriage); impossible to put smth right; to be smb's fault; to realize that smth is hopeless; the reason for smth; to return to Paris with a definite purpose in mind; to set up separate residences; not to breathe a word to smb about smth.

SPECIAL DIFFICULTIES

Ex. 16. Translate the following sentences using "occasion" or "event" according to the sense.

1. Почему бы нам не отметить такое важное **событие**? 2. Какое **событие** было поворотным пунктом в вашей жизни? 3. День был полон **событий**. 4. Приезд сына на каникулы был всегда большим **событием** в их семье.

Ex. 17. Translate the following sentences using the word. "idea".

1. **Я понятия не имею**, что он за человек. Мне никогда не приходилось иметь с ним дела. 2. Они не **представляли**, что поездка окажется такой продолжительной. 3. Он **не думал**, что операция пройдет так быстро. 4. Я **не знаю**, что он имел в виду. 5. Мы **не ожидали**, что мальчик так хорошо играет в шахматы. Ему нет равных в школе. 6. С какой платформы отправляется поезд? — **Понятия** не имею. 7. Они **не предполагали**, что им придется делать пересадку в пути. 8. Мы **не ожидали**, что из него выйдет такой отличный специалист. 9. Я и **понятия** не имел, что он когда-то был известным боксером.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

The Gerund

1. The Syntactic Function of the Gerund

Ex. 18. Study the following chart. Translate the sentences into Russian.

subject	1. It's no use arguing with her. 2. His* being so slow is very annoying.
predi-cative	3. What annoys me is his being careless.
direct object	4. I don't mind your including this book in the list. 5. He suggests getting in touch with her as soon as possible.
prepo-sitional object	6. He insists on doing the job himself. 7. I am thinking of writing to him.
attri-bute	8. I don't see the reason for his complaining about it.

Ex. 19. Paraphrase the parts in bold type using gerundial phrases, mind the prepositions.

1. That she is so fussy is not a little unpleasant. 2. What surprised everybody was that he was able to do it. 3. The doctor insists that she should put off the trip. 4. We don't mind if we go there by train. 5. He suspected that I knew the truth. 6. There is no doubt that he is intelligent. 7. He suggests that we should watch the football match oh TV instead of going to the stadium.

Ex. 20. Make one sentence out of the following pairs of sentences by using gerundial phrases. The part in bold type is to become the predicate.

1. He is clever. There is no doubt about it. 2. Why waste time on such things? There is no sense in that. 3. He solves cross-word puzzles very well. He is good at it. 4. He likes to talk music. He gets pleasure out of it. 5. The child usually drinks milk before going to bed. He'ls used to it. 6. He has an annoying habit. He mispronounces names. 7. You were running a risk. You might have caught cold. 8. You can't tfeat him like a child. It's no use.

Ex. 21. Make up sentences using gerundial phrases according to the model.

M o d e l: (a) to be tired of (b) to argue

* A possessive pronoun or a noun in the possessive case before {he gerund denotes the doer of the action expressed by the gerund. Compare:

(a) I insist on writing to him myself.

(b) 1 insist on your writing to him.

I am tired of arguing.

1. (a) to be good at (b) to make friends. 2. (a) to be busy* (b) to arrange an exhibition of the best photos of the year. 3. (a) to be proud of (b) to be a pilot. 4. (a) to be tired (b) to quarrel with smb. 5. (a) to be afraid of** (b) to catch a cold. 6. (a) to be fond of (b) to dance. 7. (a) to be sure of (b) to be ill. 8. to be ashamed of*** (b) to be impolite to smb. 9. (a) to be worth (b) to remember.

*Ex. 22. Study the following char.**** Translate the sentences into Russian.*

an adverbial modifier of time	1. On (upon) seeing me on the other side of the street he shouted to me. 2. In copying the text he missed a line. 3. After finishing his work he went for a walk. 4. Before taking action you had better make inquiries.
an adverbial modifier of manner or attending circumstances	5. He left without letting us know. 6. I upset all their plans by refusing to come.

A. An Adverbial Modifier of time

Ex. 23. Replace adverbial clauses of time by gerundial phrases.

1. When he arrived at the airport, he went to the left-luggage office first thing. 2. When he was looking through the documents he came across a very interesting photograph. 3. After he had packed all the things he phoned for a taxi. 4. She hesitated before she entered the room. 5. When I was passing their house, I noticed that all the windows were dark. 6. After they settled down they started enjoying the place. 7. When I learned the results of the competition I rushed to the telephone-booth. 8. When he reached the village, he slowed down.

---

* No preposition is used after "to be busy" when it is followed by the gerund, e.g. He is busy looking through the morning mail. Compare: I am busy with my work.

** An infinitive, not a gerund, is used after to be afraid, if it denotes dare not бояться = не осмеливаться, e.g. I am afraid to ask him about it. Compare: I am a-fraid of failing at the examination.

*** An infinitive, not a gerund, is used after to be ashamed when it refers to something that hasn't taken place yet, e.g. I'd be ashamed to ask him for help.

**** The gerund may also be used in the function of an adverbial modifier of- 1) concession, e.g. In spite of being busy, she came to the party. 2) condition, e.g Don't enter without being invited. 3) purpose, e.g. His method is used for teaching children. 4) cause or reason, e.g. He kept silent for fear of making a mistake.

9. Before she rose from table she made me a sign to follow her. 10. When she left school, she got a job at the post-office.

B. An Adverbial Modifier of Manner or Attending Circmnstcnces

Ex. 24. Answer the following questions using gerundial phrases according to the model.

M o d e 1 : (a) How did he manage to calm her? (to promise to return soon). He managed to calm her by promising to return soon.

(b) How did they listen to her? (not to interrupt) They listened to her without interrupting.

1. How did you learn to speak the language so well? (to speak) 2. How did the committee accept the terms? (not to argue) 3. How did the teacher find the way to the child's heart? (to treat kindly) 4. How did he leave? (not to say good-bye) 5. How did she learn to play the piano so well? (to practise a lot) 6. How did he tell you about the accident? (not to go into details) 7. How did they manage to get such excellent results? (to use a new method) 8. How did the delegate manage to get there in time? (to take a plane)

Ex. 25. Supply the missing prepositions to suit the syntactic junction of the gerund.

1. I stopped, ... opening the door. 2. This time he felt no surprise ... meeting his friend. 3. ... washing up she settled down in a comfortable armchair before TV. 4. As the visitor looked through the open doorway, ... passing, he stopped short. 5. What did she mean ... being busy? 6. He tore the note into pieces ... reading it. 7. The Gadfly couldn't run the risk ... being seen. 8. I insist ... remaining here. 9. Outside it kept ... raining. 10. The child nodded his head ... replying. 11.1 kept her ... falling down. 12. He went ... saying the things that meant nothing at all, but which were, somehow, better than silence. 13. ... washing up she broke a cup.

Ex. 26. Translate the following sentences using the gerund in the function of an adverbial modifier.

1. Он включил меня в список экскурсантов без лишних разговоров. 2. Она уговорила меня ехать, сказав, что она присоединится ко мне через неделю. 3. Тем, что ты будешь надоедать ему, ты только рассердишь его еще больше. 4. Она уладила этот вопрос, не поднимая лишнего шума. 5. Проснувшись, я не сразу понял, где нахожусь. 6. Проходя мимо их дома, он решил зайти. 7. После окончания школы она стала работать секретарем. 8. Не вдаваясь в подробности, он сразу перешел к существу дела. 9. Упаковывая вещи, он вдруг вспомнил, что совершенно машинально (не

думая) вместе с документами упаковал и билет. 10. Мы чувствовали себя бодро, несмотря на то, что были очень голодные. 11. Перед тем как лечь спать, он решил написать письмо домой.

II. The Forms of the Gerund

Ex. 27. Study the forms of the gerund.

form	active	passive
non-perfect	The American lady lay without sleeping. My watch needs repairing.*	He had a feeling of being watched.
perfect	The American lady looked wholesome in spite of not having slept.**	I've never heard of the house having been painted*** once since it was built.

Ex. 28. Use the correct form of the gerund.

1. I think I'll have a chance of (to introduce) you to my friends. 2. I've just had the pleasure of (to introduce) to your sister. 3. Everybody was surprised at her (to leave) so soon. 4. I am tired of (to treat) like a child. 5. You've changed so much that he might be excused for not (to recognize) you. 6. She had to leave the house without (to see) by anybody. 7. I remember (to be) on friendly terms with him. 8. This matter wants (to clear up). 9. She was dancing wonderfully. I couldn't help (to impress). 10. Boys always enjoy (to swim). 11. The children were annoyed at (to tell) to leave. 12. She looked disappointed. We suspected him of (to tell) her the sad news.

Ex. 29. Translate the following sentences using gerundial phrases.

1. Прежде чем заполнять анкету, ознакомьтесь с ней. 2. Я помню, как а) я был огорчен его неудачей; б) он был огорчен моей неудачей. 3. Вы не возражаете, если я присоединюсь к вашей компании? 4. Перестань надоедать ей глупыми вопросами. 5. Мы сократили путь, переплыв' реку. 6. Увидев вдали автобус, я бросился бежать к остановке. 7. Прежде чем давать окончательный ответ, хорошенько подумай. 8. Товарищи внимательно слушали и не прерывали ее. 9. Овод рисковал быть узнанным. 10. Он разорвал письмо, не читая его. 11. Он хорошо разгадывает

---

* After the verbs to need, to want, to require and the adjective worth the gerund is used in the active form though it is passive in meaning.

** The non-perfect form of the gerund is often used in place of the perfect form, e. g. I remember seeing the film. Your refusing to help them was a shock to everybody. He mentioned speaking to them on the subject.

*** The perfect form of the gerund, passive voice, is practically not used.

кроссворды. 12. Мой любимый спорт плавание. 13. Я боюсь провалиться на экзамене. 14. Ребенок боялся, что его оставят одного дома. 15. Она просто не может не опаздывать. 16. Этот факт стоит запомнить. 17. Она рассказывала мне об этом, не глядя мне в глаза. 18. Он далеко не простой человек, и с ним трудно договориться. 19. Нет смысла обсуждать этот вопрос в его отсутствии.

MIXED BAG

Ex. 30. Paraphrase the following sentences using "to forget" or "to remember" followed by either an infinitive or a gerund; mind the explanation given in the model.

M o d e l: He forgot to post the letter (He didn't post it. He forgot.)
He forgot mentioning the fact to her (He mentioned the fact to her and forgot about it.)
I remembered to post the letter (I didn't forget to post it.)
I remember posting the letter (I remember that I posted it.)

1. Do you remember you beat him at chess once? 2. Please, remember that you must ring me up on Saturday. 3. I didn't return the book I had borrowed from him, I quite forgot. 4. She forgot that she had given him her telephone number and was surprised to hear his voice on the phone. 5. She quite forgot that she had asked you to book the tickets. 6. She said that she remembered that she had had a talk with him on the subject. 7. I remember I enjoyed this film. 8. Don't forget that you must write a letter. 9. Did she remember that she was to get in touch with him? 10. She forgot that she had postponed the appointment.

Ex. 31. Fill in the blanks with "not" or "without "* thus using either Participle 1 or gerund.

1. ... knowing the answer, she continued to puzzle over the problem. 2. He looked at me ... recognizing me. 3. ... recognizing me she passed by. 4. He received the news calmly ... making a fuss about it. 5. I kept silent ... wishing to attract attention. 6. ... having noticed the mistake he could not understand why they were laughing at him. 7. She departed ... once turning her head. 8. She felt lonely ... having any friends there. 9. He left the house ... waking anyone. 10. I hung up the phone ... waiting for her answer.

Ex. 32. Translate the following sentences using the gerund, the infinitive or Participle I according to the sense.

1. Ему стыдно, что он вышел из себя. 2. Ему было стыдно признаться (сказать), что он не сдал экзамен по английскому языку. 3. Я боюсь, что

* without + gerund is an adverbial modifier of manner or attending circum stances, not + Participle I is an adverbial modifier of reason.

мне зададут этот вопрос. 4. Я боюсь сидеть на сквозняке. 5. Я помню, что ему предлагали эту работу. 6. Я забыл предложить ему чашку чая. 7. Он не забыл навести справки об условиях приема в институт. 8. Она заявила, что уже включила его в список. 9. Они остановились, чтобы перекусить. 10. Они перестали спорить. Они поняли, что это потеря времени. 11. Не желая ссориться с ним, она переменила тему разговора. 12. Они могли спорить, не ссорясь. 13. Ножницы используются для стрижки волос, разрезания бумаги, ткани и т.п. 14. Я воспользовалась ножом, чтобы разрезать книгу.

Ex. 33. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of a verbal (gerund, participle or infinitive).

Dora got into the train. It was now very full indeed and people were sitting four a side. Before ... (to sit down) she inspected herself quickly in the mirror. She looked good in spite of ... (not to sleep). She turned towards her seat. A large elderly lady moved a little ... (to make room). (It was a devilish hot day). She thought that she was lucky ... (to have a seat) and with a certain satisfaction watched the corridor ... (to fill) with people who had no seats.

Another elderly lady, ... (to make one's way) through the crowd reached the door of Dora's carriage and addressed her neighbour. "Ah, there you are, dear, I thought you were nearer the front." They looked at each other rather sadly. The ... (to stand) lady had her feet ... (to catch) in the luggage. They began a conversation about how they had never seen the train so full.

Dora stopped ... (to listen), ... (to strike) by a terrible thought. She ought to give up her seat. She refused to believe the thought but it came back. There was no doubt about it. The elderly lady who was standing looked very weak indeed, and it was only proper that Dora, who was young and healthy, should give her seat to the lady who could then sit next to her friend. Dora felt the blood ... (to rush) to her face. She sat still ... (to think over) the matter. There was no point in ... (to be hasty). It was possible of course that while clearly ... (to understand) that she ought to give up her seat she might nevertheless simply not do so out of pure selfishness. On the other side of the ... (to stand) lady a man was sitting. He was reading his newspaper and didn't seem ... (to think) about his duty. There was another aspect to the matter. She had taken the trouble of ... (to arrive) early, and surely ought ... (to reward) for this. Though perhaps the two ladies had arrived as early as they could? There was no ... (to know). But in any case there was an elementary justice in the first comers ... (to have) their seats. She thought of her state of mind as neurotic. She decided not to give up her seat.

She got up and said to the lady "Do sit down here, please. I'm not going far, and I'd much rather ... (to stand)."

"How very kind of you!" said the lady. "Now I can sit next to my friend. I have a seat of my own further down, you know. Perhaps we can just exchange seats? Do let me ... (to help) you to move your luggage." The train began ... (to move).

On ... (to reach) the other carriage Dora at once saw an empty corner seat by the window. The elderly lady departed and Dora settled down.

(after "The Bell" by Iris Murdoch)

Ex. 34. Test Translation.

1. По случаю окончания института мы организовали вечер. 2. Я мало знаю его. Мы встречаемся от случая к случаю, и разговор у нас обычно бывает только об учебе. 3. На мой взгляд это был не повод для шуток. 4. После большого и шумного города жизнь в деревне показалась им скучной и однообразной. 5. Если у вас плоскостопие, то вам лучше бы сделать туфли на заказ. 6. Невзирая на все доводы, он наотрез отказался принять наши условия. 7. Чем был вызван его поспешный отъезд? — Трудно сказать. 8. Еще до сих пор не назначен день отъезда. А ведь нам надо подумать о билетах. 9. Несмотря на то, что результаты работы были хорошими по сравнению с прошлогодними, главный инженер сказал, что надо добиться того, чтобы они были еще лучше. 10. Вам стоит починить холодильник. Он вполне еще может послужить. Ремонт обойдется недорого. 11. Из него определенно вышел бы хороший спортсмен, если бы он больше тренировался. 12. Я чувствую себя неловко в этом пальто. Оно мне велико. Мне надо было бы купить другое, на размер меньше. 13. Книги были единственным утешением для него во время болезни. 14. Этим вопросом следует заняться отдельно. Он требует изучения. 15. Они знали, что все трудности уже были позади, и это была очень утешительная мысль. 16. Ему, вероятно, потребуется немало времени, чтобы придти в себя после такого потрясения. 17. Просят, чтобы выступающие не отклонялись от темы, а говорили по существу. 18. Цена за товар не включает упаковку. Плата за упаковку взимается отдельно.

SPEECH EXERCISES

Ex. 35. Retell in narrative form.

I went to Grand Central Station to see off my uncle's family. There the train came in a little before twelve. I helped my uncle take the things into the compartment. It seemed as if only a few minutes had passed, but it was time for me to get off the train. I kissed my little cousins good-bye and gave them each a box of chocolates. "I'll miss you, Frankie," Irene, the older one, said. "I'll miss you too," I said. I turned to my uncle and held out my hand. We shook. "Good-bye, uncle. Good luck."

He smiled. "So long, Frankie. Be a good boy. It won't be long before we are back again."

My aunt was next. She put her arms around me and kissed me. She was

crying. "I wish you were coming with us, Frankie," she said.

"I do, too," I said. I could hardly keep from crying, I tried not to because I didn't want them to feel bad. "Thanks for everything."

I didn't know what to say. Just then the porter touched me on the shoulder. "You'd better be getting off, sir. We're going to start any minute."

I nodded to him. I stood up and looked at them. "Well," I said, "so long." I could feel the tears coming into my eyes in spite of all my efforts, so I turned and got off the train.

I heard their good-bye in my ears as I walked down the platform to where their window was and waved to them. The girls had their noses flat against the glass. My uncle was trying to say something, but I couldn't hear him through the closed window. The signal of departure was given and the train started.

Ex. 36. Answer the following questions using the active vocabulary of the text. Sum up your answers.

1. The Railway

1. How old is the railway? 2. When did the first railway lines appear in Europe? 3. What two cities did the first railway line connect in Russia? 4. What are the main lines in our country now? 5. Why is it important that industrial centres should have more railway lines? 6. How are the tracks kept in order? Why is it necessary that they should be cleared of snow, etc? 7. What kinds of engines are used more often now: steam or diesel-oil-electric? 8. Why are lines electrified?

2. The Train

1. What does a modern train look like? 2. What kind of engines have: suburban, fast, goods trains*? 3. How many carriages are there in a suburban, fast, goods train? 4. In what way does a carriage of a local train differ from that of a fast train? 5. Why are there no compartments on a local train? 6. Why are there sleeping and restaurant cars only on long-distance trains? 7. How many passengers does a local train carriage (a long-distance train compartment) hold? 8. What does a goods train carry? 9. What is the speed of a suburban train, a fast train, a goods train? 10. What kind of service do you get on the train?

3. Travelling by Train

1. When do you book tickets beforehand? 2. When do people go to liie station to see off their friends? 3. When do you take a porter? 4. What's your idea of a comfortable journey? 5. Would you rather have a lower or an upper berth? 6. Would you rather travel facing the engine or with your back to the engine? 7. What has a news-stand to offer a traveller? Why do you buy

* goods train *(Am. E.)* = freight train

magazines or newspapers when going on a journey?

4. A Local (Suburban) Train

1. What do you call the trains that connect the suburbs with the city? 2. What is the usual speed of a local train? 3. How often do local trains run? 4. Who uses local trains? 5. What do the carriages of a local train look like?

5. Booking Tickets

1. How do you book tickets if you intend to go on a journey? 2. How do you reserve tickets by telephone? 3. When are tickets delivered to your home? 4. What is a single, season, return ticket, half ticket? 5. When are tickets booked on the day of the departure? 6. In what case do you return your ticket? 7. Why are travelling agencies to be found only in big cities?

6. A Railway Station

i. How does a big city railway station look different from a small station? 2. What are the duties of a porter? 3. What is a left-luggage department for? When do you use it? 4. What is a time-table for? 5. What is a waiting room for?

Ex. 37. Read the following, answer the questions using the vocabulary of the lesson. Give a name to the story and retell it.

A famous actor often had to travel by train. Of course, a lot of his fellow-passengers used to recognize him on his journeyes, and some them Tried to get into conversation with him, but lie was usually feeling tired after acting until late the night before, so he did not talk to them.

One day he had just got into the train with .ill hi.s luggage, when a young man came and sat down in the seat opposite him. The young man took out a book and began to read it, while the actor tried to get some sleep in his corner of the compartment.

When he opened his eyes, he found that the young man was looking at him wide-eyed and open-mouthed, his book forgotten. The actor shut his eyes and tried to go to sleep again, but every time he opened them he would see the young man staring at him. At last he gave up the attempt to sleep, took out a newspaper, put it up in front of him and began to read.

After a few moments the young man cleared his throat and spoke, 'I beg your pardon, sir,' he said, 'but haven't I seen you somewhere before?'

The actor did not answer. He did not even put his newspaper down. The young man said nothing more for several minutes, but then he tried again: 'I beg your pardon, sir,' he said, 'but are you going to San Francisco?'

The actor put his paper down this time, looked at the young man coldly without saying a word, and then put the paper up in front of him again.

This time there was an even longer pause before the young man spoke again. Then tie said in a la^t attempt to start a conversation with the great man, 'I am George P. Anderson of Wilmington, Vermont.'

This time the actor put his paper down and spoke. 'So am I,' he said.

That was the end of the conversation.

Questions

1. Did the actor make regular or occasional trips by train? 2. Why was he often recognized by his fellow-passengers? 3. Why would he usually be annoyed by their attempts to enter into conversation with him? 4. Why didn't he care to talk to them? 5. What happened on that particular occasion? 6. What did the young man realize on giving his fellow-passenger a closer look? 7. Did the actor give any sign to make the young man believe that he wanted to talk to him? 8. Any person would have felt extremely uncomfortable being stared at, wouldn't he? 9. Why did the actor's obvious unwillingness to talk make no impression on the young man? 10. Why did the young man introduce himself? 11. For what purpose, do you think, was the young man trying to-make conversation with the great actor? 12, Was the young man put off in any way by the actor's flat refusal to talk? 13. Do you believe that the actor's answer cured the young man of his annoying habit?

Ex. 38. Read the following, answer the questions and retell the passage in English.

СЛУЧАЙ С ТРАГИКОМ

Знаменитый трагик нигер Олдридж в 1860 году объехал всю Европу. Ему везде сопутствовал успех.

Находясь уже в Северной Америке, он получил приглашение из города Мобилэ, находящегося в южных штатах. Несмотря на то, что этот город был одним из центров расизма, Олдридж все же принял приглашение.

На третий день своего пребывания в Мобилэ, он решил повидаться со своим приятелем, жившим в Монтгомери, и взял туда билет первого класса. Кассир на вокзале, узнав знаменитого актера, конечно, не подумал сказать ему то, что обыкновенно говорил всем чернокожим: «Ваше место в вагоне для негров».

Артист вошел в пустой вагон, удобно уселся и погрузился в чтение газеты, скрывавшей его лицо. Вагон постепенно наполнялся пассажирами. Раздался свисток, и поезд двинулся.

Через некоторое время Олдридж опустил газету. Пассажир, сидевший напротив, вскочил и потребовал, чтобы кондуктор вывел из вагона негра, сказав, что если он этого не сделает, то потеряет работу, т.к. он Франциск

Парри — член правления этой дороги.

Вскоре поезд остановился у маленькой сіанции.

—Сэр, вы видите, я должен вас просить... —сказал кондуктор. Так как артист отказался наотрез выйти, то пришлось вывести его из вагона.

Артист стоял на платформе, тяжело дыша. Поезд ушел. К вечеру Олдридж вернулся в Мобилэ, Он был так потрясен происшедшим, что решил немедленно покинуть южные штаты и отправился в театр переговорить с директором. Увидев Олдриджа, директор бросился к нему с радостным криком;

— Это вы, Олдридж? Вы живы? Вы ведь сегодня уехали утром в Монтгомери?

— Да, но одно происшествие, о котором я вам сейчас расскажу, вынудило меня покинуть поезд.

— Так благодарите это происшествие за то, что вы живы. Поезд, в котором вы ехали, потерпел крушение около Монтгомери. Среди пассажиров много убитых. Прочтите в вечерней газете.

Олдридж схватил газету. В списках погибших он прочел имена Франциска Парри и знаменитого трагика Олдриджа...

Questions

1. What was Aldridge? 2. When did he tour Europe? 3. How great was his success in Europe? 4. What invitation did he receive one day? 5. Where did it come from? 6. Why did he accept the invitation in spite of the fact that Mobile, a town in one of the southern states, was a centre of racism? 7. What did he decide to do on the third day of his stay in the town? 8. Where did his friend live? 9. How did he intend to travel? 10. Why did the booking-dark make no mention of the "Jim Crow" car? 11. What did Aldridge do on taking his seat in the train? 12. Why didn't his fellow-passengers notice at first that they were travelling in the same car with a Negro? 13. What happened when Aldridge put down his paper? 14. Why did the passenger sitting opposite Aldridge demand that the actor should be immediately thrown out of the car? 15. Why couldn't the porter disobey an order coming from Francisco Parry, a member of the Railroad Board? 16. What happened when the train stopped at a small station? 17. Why did Aldridge refuse flatly to leave the car? 18. What feelings rose in him? 19. How was Aldridge removed from the car? 20. Aldridge was badly shaken by what had happened, wasn't he? 21. Why was it impossible for him to remain in the South after the incident? 22. Why was the director filled with joy to see Aldridge back? 23. What occurred as the train was approaching Montgomery? 24. What did Aldridge read in the evening paper?

Ex. 39. Read and retell the text.

ON TIME

After John O'Hara.

Laura was the first person to take a seat in the Pullman. It was always that way with Laura. Whether for a train, a dentist appointment, the theatre, a dinner-party, Laura was always punctual. In her home town, her friends would look out of their windows, and seeing Laura on her way to a luncheon or other meeting, they would say, "We have plenty of time. Laura's just leaving." Her punctuality meant that she often had to wait for people. In fact, some time ago, she had been kept waiting a very long time. And now here was the man who had made her wait, taking his seat at the other end of the car.

After ten years, she still knew him before she saw his face. She was annoyed with herself because the sight of him made her realize that she still cared. Just in time she pretended to shade her eyes with her hand as he turned around before sitting down.

The train started. Frank was deep in his paper and a dozen Pullman chairs away from him, Laura was left with her memory of an afternoon a decade ago, an afternoon when she had waited, and waited alone. He had arranged to meet her at Luigi's. He had chosen the place with great care, it was a place where no one knew her. "I'll telephone them to expect you, and you go straight through the bar to the last booth. You won't know anybody, but just in case."

When she went into the place, the owner seemed to recognize her. "Yes, lady, you are meeting Mr. Hillman. Right this way, please." He led her to the booth, took her order for the first drink. She had left her bags in the front of the restaurant, and there was not the slightest doubt in her mind that the owner knew what was going on. He was very polite, very attentive as though every afternoon at four, he greeted young women who were walking out on their husbands because they had fallen madly in love with someone else.

There was admiration but no disrespect in his eyes as he brought her the first drink. The admiration gave way to pity after she had waited two hours and had taken her sixth drink. Then she went home. Frank had tried to get in touch with her, but all his attempts were unsuccessful because she had never replied.

"Would you like to have lunch with me in the dining car?" Frank was standing over her with his easy charming smile.

"Why, Frank," she said, pleased that she did not sound as frightened as she felt. "Why, yes, thanks." She got up and they went to the diner. They did not speak until they had ordered. She hoped that the years had changed her as little as they had him. He was still very handsome.

"I'm very pleased," he said.

"Why? At what?"

"That you speak to me. For ten years I've wanted to tell you about that awful day. I know you think I should at least have telephoned. but you never

gave me a chance to tell you what happened. Do you know what happened?"

"What happened, Frank?"

"I met with an accident on my way to Luigi's, I was run down by a taxi. When I woke up in the hospital it was too late to call you even if I could have got out of bed, which I didn't for nearly three months."

"Really?" she said.

"And of course there was no one I could ask to phone you. No one else knew."

All at once she saw a way to wipe out the humiliation of those ten years and that one afternoon. '-Frank, I've got to tell you something. 1 wasn't there." She looked at him and, she knew, convincingly.

"What?"

"I never went to the place. I did come to New York. I was going to meet you, but at the last minute I was afraid."

"But, Laura," he said, "when I got out of the hospital, I asked Lui-gi. He said yes, he remembered a lady waiting for me."

"It wasn't I. I just couldn't do it. I couldn't walk out on Bob that way. Then when I went home I was ashamed for being such a coward. That's why I never returned your calls. I was too cowardly."

"You weren't there." He said in a flat voice. "I can't believe it. I can't believe it."

"It worked out better this way," she said. She was heartless, cruel, but she got some comfort out of what she had said.

"Well, I suppose so," he said. He was taking it very well. He couldn't have her see what a hard blow it was for him. "Punctual Laura, on the one occasion when you really should have been on time, you didn't turn up at all."

"Well, better never than late, as they say," she said sweetly.

Ex. 40. Use the following words and phrases in situations.

1. A Trip

to intend to go on a trip some place; to set a day for the departure; to choose to travel by railway; to make inquiries about smth by phone; to book a return ticket in a sleeping car; to start packing one's luggage; an eventful day; to fuss about smth; to turn one's flat upside down; at smb's suggestion; to take smth along; to be on the safe side; finally; to set out; to take a taxi; to arrive at the station safe; to hire a porter; to pile one's luggage on a truck; to have one's luggage put in a luggage van; to catch sight of smb; to come to seesmboff; towishsmb a comfortable journey; to be in high spirits; a signal of departure; to pull out of the station; to wave good-bye to smb; to move slowly; to pick up speed; to be out of sight; to settle down to enjoy smth

2. At a Railway Station

an impressive building outside; to be equally impressive inside a large main hall; on one side; a booking office; news-stands; an information bureau (inquiry office); on the opposite side; a left-luggage office; a restaurant; waiting rooms; all kinds of signs and advertisements; to help smb in every possible way; to include; time-table boards; to go outside; departure and arrival platforms; to be covered with roofs; porters with trucks; to rush in all directions; judging by; the atmosphere and spirit; a picture of a busy life

3. Travelling Companions

A. to go on a holiday; to go by train; to have a seat facing the engine; to address oneself to smb; to make a polite remark on the weather; to receive only a nod in return; to suspect; to be a little deaf; to raise one's voice; to be eyed with suspicion; to feel uncomfortable; to have no idea; to mean; after all; to have the best of intentions; not to notice; to approach a big station; to see smb get down his luggage; to depart in a hurry; to remain alone.

B. on one occasion; to travel on business; to be charged with an important mission; lost in thought; to be directed to (about one's thoughts); to be interrupted; to have the seat opposite; to remark on the weather; to be obvious; to start a conversation; to have no intentions; to keep up the conversation; to nod politely in reply; in spite of; not to be put off; to inquire about smth; to mumble smth back; a sign of displeasure; to get annoyed with smb; luckily; to come to an end

4. A Careless Driver

heavy traffic; to cross the road; to take care not to get run down; to hear a car braking; at full speed; another second and...; to be the driver's fault; to break the speed-limit; to feel more dead than alive; to show presence of mind; to get over the shock; to calm down

5. A Fault-finder

to have occasional quarrels; to find fault with smb; to have unreasonable demands; besides; to have a quick temper; to make things still worse; to be deaf to reason; to suffer greatly; to lose one's patience; after all; to show common sense; to make one's intentions clear to smb; judging by; to realize; to apologize to smb for smth

Ex. 41. Tell the story of the picture.

It's these new divorce laws—you get half each!

Ex.42. Subjects for oral and written composition.

1. Retell the story as if you were: a) the American lady; b) the author; c) the author's wife; d) the American lady's daughter.
2. Give a character-sketch of the American lady.
3. Say whether you believe the girl would ever get over her love for the young Swiss.
4. Say whether you think the canary would comfort the girl.
5. Explain the title of the story.
6. Tell a story of true love that wins in spite of all difficulties.
7. Tell a story to illustrate each of the following proverbs:" "Love is blind"; "He who hesitates is lost."
8. Express your point of view as to the say parents should have in such matters as marriage of their grown-up children.
9. Describe a journey by train.
10. Tell a story you have heard from a fellow-passenger during a trip.
11. Write your impressions of a journey by train in the form of travel notes.

Lesson Seven

Text: "Ball of Paper" by William Cooper[1]
Grammar: Modal Verbs must, can (could)

Ball of Paper

I was in my lab[2] one afternoon. It must have been about half-past five, anyway, time to think about going home. There were a couple of observations I wanted to make before I went and it was a quarter of an hour before I could make the second check. During that quarter of an hour the wretched Johnson incident happened.

I decided to use the spare time filling up a form. This form was to do with Johnson's'promotion. Johnson had got to go up for an interview[3] and he couldn't go till the form was completed. I'd given our Establishment Officer[4] my word that I'd definitely do it before I went home this afternoon. I was Johnson's senior officer[4] and whoever read that particular bit of paper was probably going to pay some attention to what I said on it. I hoped they would anyway.

Since Johnson came to me he'd done a good job as an Experimental Officer.[4] I could put my hand on my heart and say that. But he was not everything he ought to be. He was inconsistent, inconsistent in a way I just somehow couldn't put up with.

I'm not consistent at all myself. I work in bursts and keep irregular hours. But I can see the sense in that. I couldn't see the sense in the way Johnson went on. He wasn't consistent intellectually. He wasn't consistent in his attitude either. More than once I caught him going behind my back for something he wanted. In fact, he'd have done me one or two dirty tricks if I hadn't found out and stopped him. But that's the personal side of it. What really bothered me was the way he was erratic in his ideas.

To be fair to the man, I've got to admit that he'd had a lot of experience. He had some good ideas as well. I'd even go so far as to say one or two of them were really good, far beyond what you could expect from an E.O.[4] He'd also had quite a few bad ones, in fact bad is hardly the word for them. They were blunders. On top of all he had an ungovernable temper.

It was a very difficult decision to make. Moving Johnson up from E.O. to S.S.O.[4] was risky. A man as erratic as Johnson is a risk anywhere. In our kind of work he's a menace. But I had to admit that as the years went by he was getting more sensible. He was having his good ideas just as often and he was making blunders less frequently. I was coming round to thinking the risk might be worth

taking. These were the lines I was thinking along, and I should have gone on thinking along them if Johnson hadn't come into the room that evening just at the critical moment.

I suppose you must have guessed that Johnson thought the reason he hadn't succeeded in getting promoted already was because I'd given him a bad write-up,[5] that I was responsible for the delay. Mind you, it was a difficult thing to do, to get the kind of appointment he was aiming at. Johnson had it fixed in his head that a poor write-up from me would not permit our people to promote him. As usual he was exaggerating. I'd first reported impartially on his actual work, and then given my personal opinion of the risk of making him an S.S.O. After that it was up to them.

On the last two occasions the Commission had come down on my side of the line. Now I'd come to the conclusion that the line didn't quite stand where it did. The man was definitely taking himself in hand, both in his ideas and in his personal behaviour. I thought the risk was definitely less than it had been, and I was prepared to say so. And that, I thought, might mean that this time Johnson would get what he wanted.

1 picked up my pen. Now I'd got down to it, the job was not as disagreeable as it might have been.

I was just reading the form over before I put my name to it when the door flew open. It was Johnson. I could tell by the look in his eyes that he knew what I was doing.

I shall now have to describe the lab. It was what's called a hot lab.[6] This means there are radio-active substances about the place that can do you serious harm if you expose yourself to too much radiation from them. You've probably seen pictures of people working in hot labs, handling things by remote control, wearing protective clothing and all the rest of it. The labs are air-conditioned, they don't have any windows and they are constantly being swept and polished.

What caught your eye when you came into my lab was an object called a coffin[7] in the middle of the floor. A coffin is a large brick-shaped block of solid lead with a cavity on the top. Lead is one of the best materials for stopping radiation. At the bottom of the cavity lay a uranium slug — that's where the radiation was coming from. The slug was fresh from the reactor.

What goes on in an atomic pile is this. Bars of uranium, called slugs, are pushed along channels through the reactor, and while they're there fission of the uranium takes place, so that when they come out at the other end they've been partly transformed into plutonium and fission products. What I have to draw your attention to is that the longer the slug has been in the pile, the more active it's likely to be when it comes out.

I can't describe the experiments I was doing because they are secret. The only two things you need to know I actually can tell you. First, the slugs I was experimenting with had been kept in the reactor a long time. Second, the coffin I was using was one I had designed myself, and it gave very little protection. I

didn't like that, naturally. But I couldn't do the experiments on the slug that I wanted to do unless I had that design of coffin. So there it was. When we weren't doing any experiments we covered the cavity over with lead bricks. When the bricks were off you had to keep way.

So there we were, Johnson and I facing each other.

Johnson's eyes were bulging. His specs[2] were slipping off his nose.

"Oh, hello," I said. I put down my pen.

"Hello, Curtis."

He spoke in a menacing tone and what's more he dared to come and stand not far from my elbow. I was used to dealing with him in this mood. I said:

"You've just come in time, Johnson. The next observation is due at —" I don't remember now actually what time it was, but I told him then.

"O.K.," he said. "That leaves us eight minutes. I wanted to have a word with you about that, Curtis."

"About what?" I said.

"About that confidential report on me." There was no denying it.

"I'm not going to pretend it's not what you think it is, Johnson." I said. "It is."

He came still nearer. His eyes were now popping out of his head, not at me, but in an effort to read what I'd written.

"What I'd like to know," he said, "is whether you're going to wreck my chances again."

"Who said I wrecked your chances before?"

"Come off it,[8] Curtis; you know you did. That's why I'm going to have it out with you now. I want to know where I stand."

"You seem to know more than I do."

"For once I don't."

I was pretty fed up[9] with him.

"I'm going to tell you what I've written about you, and then you can judge for yourself. It'll be up to you then to decide whether I'm wrecking your chances or not. I've given a very fair account of what you've done so far. I've said I think there's a risk in putting you up to S.S.O. but"—I paused--"I'd be willing to take it."

"If that's what you've written, let me see it!"

I lost my temper with him. I don't lie. Nothing would make me lie. Not about that sort of thing, anyway.

"You're not going to see it."

"Then that proves my point!" He jumped towards me and seized the form.

"Give that back!" I jumped up.

To stop me getting it he crushed it into a ball between his hands.

"Give it back!" I pulled at his forearm and he pulled it away. The

ball flew out of his hands, through the air, across the floor till it came to the coffin.

"Come back!"

He was already picking the ball of paper up, opening it, READING IT WHERE HE WAS STANDING.

I'd got the telephone receiver off and was asking for Health Physics[10] before I knew what I was doing. I was telling Health Physics what he'd done. I looked at him and put the telephone down.

"They're going to be here for you in about three minutes!"

He said nothing and neither did I. When he did speak his eyes were fixed on my face.

"Do you think I've got it?"

I said: "I think you've had something." I don't know why, but I suddenly thought about his wife and kids.

I noticed him touching the film-holder on the lapel, as if he was making sure it was there. It was the sort of badge we all wear. It contains a piece of photographic film between two thin sheets of lead with windows in the front one. When the Health Physics people develop the film they can tell the amount of radiation that has fallen on it. I suppose the first thing they'd do when they took him away now was develop his film. He must have been thinking the same thing.

Johnson couldn't have had a fatal dose,[11] I was convinced of that:

If he'd had the sort of dose I thought he'd probably get away with it. Then another thought occurred to me — it was a hundred to one the medicals would say he wasn't to come near any more radiation for quite a time. And it was beyond my power to do anything either. He had put himself out of just the job he wanted and just the job he was most useful for.

NOTES

1. **William Cooper** (1910): a modern English writer, critic and expert on atomic energy. His main works are: "Scenes from Provincial Life" (1950); "Scenes of Married Life" (1961); "The Novel and Anti-novel" (1961).

2. **lab** *(coll.)*: an abbreviated form of "laboratory". Note also:

specs: spectacles; doc: doctor; bike: bicycle.

3. **interview**: a meeting to test the suitability of a candidate for a post.

4. **Experimental Officer, Senior Scientific Officer; Establishment Officer**: terms loosely corresponding to the Russian: младший, старший научный сотрудник; работник отдела кадров

5. **write-up**: *(зд.)* характеристика

6. **a hot lab**: лаборатория для исследования радиоактивных веществ

7. **coffin**: *(зд.)* контейнер, хранилище

8. **Come off it**! **(coll.)**: Stop pretending!

9. **fed up**: *(sl.)*. sick and tired (of)

10. Health Physics study the ill-effects of ionizing radiation on humans

and their protection from them дозиметристы

11. the fatal dose for man is put down at 400 r. (r.=roentgen=-Rtgn.) Roentgen W.K. (1845—1923) German physicist, discoverer of X-rays.

VOCABULARY

observe *v*t 1. наблюдать, следить (за) to observe planets (changes, smb's behaviour, etc.) 2. соблюдать, придерживаться to observe a rule (law, order, etc.); observation *n* наблюдение **Phr**. make an observation (**of** smth) делать, проводить наблюдение; (un/in)observant *a* (не)наблюдательный, (не)внимательный

check *vt* 1. проверять, контролировать to check facts (figures. money, luggage, speed, etc.) 2. останавливать, сдерживать, препятствовать to check one's anger (progress, inflation, etc.); check (-up) n проверка, контроль

spare *a* свободный, лишний, запасной spare time (money, etc.); a spare ticket (notebook, room, etc.); spare parts запасные части; spare *vt* уделять, располагать (временем и т.п.) I have no time to spare today. Can you spare me a minute (a cigarette, a pen, etc.)?

establish *vt* устанавливать (истину, факты и т.п.); основывать, создавать (государство, научный центр и т.п.) to establish the truth (a fact, etc.; a theory, a law, a rule, a custom, contacts, etc.; a state, a new scientific centre, etc.) The law of gravity was established by the English scientist Newton.

attitude *n* позиция, отношение What's your attitude **to (towards)** the question? **Phr**. take an attitude занять позицию (в отношении вопроса и т.п.)

bother *vt/vi* надоедать; беспокоить(ся), волновать(ся) Don't bother me with your questions. You needn't bother **about** such little things. Don't bother to do it now, it can wait. He even did not bother to answer my question, bother *n* беспокойство, хлопоты We had much bother driving through the fog. The boy seemed to be quite a bother to his parents.

fair *a* честный, справедливый a fair demand (attitude, treatment, arrangement, price, compensation, etc.); to be fair **to** smb; to be fair **in** one's judgement (attitude, etc.); unfair a нечестный, несправедливый

admit *vt* 1. признавать, сознавать (ошибку, вину и т.п.) He admitted his mistake (having made a mistake; that he had made a mistake). 2. впускать (в помещение) Visitors are not admitted **into** the office after working hours. 3. принимать (в институт, клуб и т.п.) He was admitted **to** the pilot school after medical examination, admission *n* 1. признание (вины и т.п.) He refused to make an admission **of** his fault. 2. вход, допуск, доступ Admission is free (**by** tickets, etc.) 3. прием (в учебное заведение и т.п.) Admission **to** the institute is **by** examination.

beyond *prep* по ту сторону, за; вне, сверх, выше The village is beyond the forest, beyond doubt (suspicion, recognition, reason, etc.) What are you saying is beyond me (my understanding).

experience *n* 1. опыт (жизненный, трудовой) He has much (little, no, etc.) experience **in** life (teaching, etc.). **Phr. by/from** experience по опыту 2. переживание; ощущение to have a pleasant (interesting, unusual, etc.) experience; He told us about his experiences in the Arctic. experience *vt* ощущать, испытывать to experience joy (pain, disappointment, etc.) (in/un)experienced a (не)опытный an experienced doctor (teacher, driver, etc.)

guess *vt/vi* 1. угадать, отгадать to guess an answer (smb's age, smb's intentions, etc.); You guessed right (wrong). I could not guess what he meant. 2. *(Am. coll.)* полагать, считать I guess you are right.

responsible *a* ответственный a responsible post (position, decision, etc.); to be responsible **for** smth/smb **to** smb. responsibility *n* ответственность

delay *vt* задерживать The train was delayed **by** the heavy snowfall. delay *n* задержка, промедление We must start without delay.

appoint *vt* 1. назначать, определять (на должность) He was appointed director of the automobile works. 2. назначать (время, встречу и т.п.) The meeting was appointed **for** five o'clock. They all came at the appointed time. appointment *n* 1. назначение; должность He was highly pleased with his new appointment. 2. свидание, условленная встреча (деловая) to have (make, keep, break, miss, etc.) an appointment **with** smb

aim *n* 1. цель, намерение His aim **in** life is to be useful to people. **Phr**. reach one's aim достигать цели; aim vt стремиться (к чему-л);

нацеливаться (на что-л) Soviet foreign policy aims **at** promoting friendship among nations.

fix *vt* 1. укреплять, устанавливать; фиксировать Help me fix the shelf **to** the wall. The fact (event, day, etc.) was fixed **in** my mind. **Phr**. fix one's eyes (one's attention, one's mind) **on** smth/smb остановить взгляд (внимание) на чем-л/ком-л 2. назначать (цену и т.п.) to fix a price (a date, etc.) 3. *(coll.)* чинить, исправлять; приводить в порядок to fix a watch (a machine, a TV set; one's hair, etc.)

opinion *n* мнение, взгляд to have a good (bad, etc.) opinion **of/about** smb/smth **in** my opinion he is right. What is your opinion **on** the matter? I am **of** the opinion that this matter should be dealt with without delay. **Phr**. public opinion общественное мнение

permit *vt* разрешать, позволять; давать возможность Smoking is not permitted here. The new model of the engine permits a speed of one hundred kilometres, permission n разрешение to ask (give, get, etc.) permission. He needed the professor's permission to make the experiment.

conclude *vt/vi* 1. заканчивать, завершать; делать вывод to conclude a speech (a lecture, an experiment, etc.) As he did not come at the appointed time we concluded that he was ill. 2. заключать (договор и т.п.) to conclude a contract (an agreement, etc.); conclusion *n* 1. окончание, завершение; вывод **Phr**. **in** conclusion в заключение What did he say **in** conclusion? come **to** (arrive **at**, reach) a conclusion прийти к выводу, заключению; make (draw) a

conclusion сделать вывод, заключение 2. заключение (договора) The conclusion of the new agreement was of great importance to both countries.

expose *vt* 1. подвергать (опасности и т.п.) to expose oneself/smb to danger (unnecessary risks, difficulties, suspicion, criticism, etc.) 2. разоблачать (кого-л/что-л); to expose smb (smb's intentions, a plan, a secret, etc.);-He lived in fear of being exposed.

tell (told) *vt* (used generally with **can**) отличать, различать; узнавать, определять и т.п. to tell one thing **from** the other; to tell the difference **between** (the) colours, etc.; I could tell **by** his tone that he was annoyed.

handle *vt* обращаться с (кем-л/чем-л); управлять to handle a person (a child, a tape-recorder, a yacht, etc.) Handle the box with care, please.

constant *a* 1. постоянный, неизменный a constant visitor (noise, demand, complaint, habit, fear, etc.); to be constant **in** one's idea (principles, tastes, etc.); inconstant *a* непостоянный

mood *n* настроение; расположение духа to be in a good (cheerful, joyful, bad, nasty, etc.) mood; to be **in** a (the; no) mood **for** smth (doing smth) He was not **in** the mood **for** talking business that night.

due *a* 1. должный, надлежащий due respect (attention, etc.) They treated him with due respect. **Phr**. **in** due time в свое время, своевременно 2. ожидаемый The plane was due at the airport at six o'clock. to be due to do smth The meeting was due to start at five o'clock. **Phr**. due **to**=because of The delay in the arrival of the ship was due **to** the thick fog.

deny *vt* отрицать; отвергать; отказываться to deny one's words (signature, etc.) He flatly denied that he had said it (having said it). denial *n* отрицание, опровержение

pretend *vt* притворяться, делать вид, симулировать He pretended to be asleep (ill, surprised, etc.); pretence *n* отговорка, притворство Don't believe him, that's all pretence.

dare *vt (модальный глагол, употр. в вопросит, и отрицат. предложениях)* сметь, осмелиться, отважиться He dared not say a word against the arrangement. She did not dare to go there alone. How dare you say that?

account *vt* отчитываться; объяснять to account **to** smb **for** smth. His illness accounts **for** his absence, account n отчет; счет (денежный) They gave a detailed account of the work done. Do you have an account **with** a bank? **Phr**. take smth **into** account принимать во внимание (в расчет), учесть что-л You should take all these facts into account. on account **of** из-за, вследствие He missed classes on account of his illness.

convince *vt* убеждать; доводить до сознания She was difficult to convince. We finally convinced him that he should give up smoking. (in)convincing *a* (не)убедительный a convincing fact (argument, tone, etc.); conviction *n* убеждение, убежденность

power *n* 1. сила, мощь; энергия water (electric, atomic, etc.) power I can't

help you, it's **beyond** my power. 2. власть, могущество; полномочие Which party is **in** power in Great Britain now? He was charged with special powers. 3. держава, государство the Great Powers великие державы; powerful a мощный, могущественный, сильный a powerful person (position, argument, imagination, blow, etc.); powerless a бессильный He was powerless to do anything.

WORD COMBINATIONS

do with smb/smth иметь отношение к кому-л/чему-л, касаться кого-л/чего-л

do a good (poor, etc.) job хорошо (плохо) справиться с работой

put up with smb/smth терпеть, мириться с кем-л/чем-л

work in bursts работать рывками

catch smb doing smth застать кого-л (на месте преступления)

come round to thinking склоняться к мысли

take oneself in hand взять себя в руки

all the rest of it и всё такое прочее

catch the/one's eye попасть в поле зрения, попасться на глаза

fresh from (school, the country, etc.) только что (со школьной скамьи, из деревни и т.п.)

draw smb's attention to smb/smth=call smb's attention to smb/smth

have a word with smb переговорить с кем-л (по делу)

have it (a question, a matter) out with smb выяснить (вопрос, дело) до конца с кем-л

for (this) once на этот раз, в виде исключения

judge (see) for oneself убедиться самому

be willing to do smth быть готовым сделать что-л охотно

make sure убедиться, удостовериться

get away with (it) сойти с рук, остаться безнаказанным, выйти сухим из воды

so far as настолько; поскольку

so far до сих пор, пока

prove one's point доказать свою правоту

EXERCISES ON THE TEXT

Ex. 1. Answer the following questions.

1. What kept Curtis busy at the lab? 2. Why was it so difficult for him to make up his mind about recommending Johnson for promotion? 3. What was wrong with Johnson in Curtis's opinion? 4. What reasons did Curtis have to doubt Johnson's sense of responsibility? 5. What made Curtis come to the

conclusion that the risk might after all be worth taking? 6. What did Johnson think were the reasons for the delay in his promotion? 7. What brought Johnson to the lab? 8. What was the lab like inside? 9. Why was Johnson beside himself with nervous excitement? 10. What accounted for the aggressiveness of Jonhson's mood? 11. Was Johnson right in his suspicions about Curtis's role in delaying his promotion? 12. What actually set off the argument? 13. Why wouldn't Curtis show Johnson the write-up? 14. How did Johnson get hold of the form? 15. How did it happen that the form, crushed into a ball, came to rest beside the coffin? 16. Why was it dangerous to be near the coffin? 17. Why didn't the coffin offer adequate protection against radiation? 18. Why did Curtis call Health Physics at once? 19. What made Curtis suddenly think of Johnson's wife and kids? 20. How would Health Physics establish the exact amount of radiation Johnson had exposed himself to? 21. Whose fault was it actually that Johnson lost his job? 22. Knowing Johnson for what he was, did Curtis do right in not showing him the write-up? 23. Would the accident have occurred if Curtis had shown Johnson the write-up immediately on his request?

Ex 2. Find in the text the English for:

a) 1. неприятный инцидент; 2. использовать свободное время; 3. пройти собеседование; 4. дать слово кому-л; 5. хорошо проявить себя; 6. сказать что-л с полной ответственностью; 7. не придерживаться режима; 8. поймать (с поличным); 9. «подложить свинью»; 10. справедливости ради; 11. склоняться к мысли; 12. дать плохую характеристику; 13. вбить себе в голову; 14. дать объективную оценку проделанной работе; 15. выразить личное мнение; 16. определить по выражению глаз; 17. бросаться в глаза; 18. держаться подальше от чего-л; 19. испортить чьи-либо шансы; 20. справедливая оценка; 21. выйти из себя; 22. смять в комок; 23. не сводить глаз с чьего-л лица; 24. лацкан пиджака

b) 1. проводить наблюдение; 2. проверка; 3. лаборатория для исследования высокоактивных веществ; 4. подвергнуться облучению; 5. дистанционное управление; 6. защитная одежда; 7. чистый свинец; 8. поглощать радиацию; 9. урановый стержень; 10. атомный реактор; 11. расщепление (атомного ядра); 12. превратиться в плутоний и продукты распада; 13. ставить опыт; 14. кассета; 15. свинцовая пластинка; 16. проявить пленку; 17. определить дозу облучения.

Ex. 3, Give the four forms of the following verbs:

pay, keep, catch, find, stop, admit, think, permit, mean, fly, handle, wear, sweep, lie, push, draw, need, slip, deal, deny, feed, lie (лежать), fall, occur, dare.

Ex. 4. Begin or complete each sentence with "there is (was) no+gerund",

translate the sentences into Russian.

M o d e l: (to mistake)..., it was his fault.
There is no mistaking it was his fault.

1. (to tell) ... how it all would have ended. 2. (to get away)... from the fact that he is seriously ill. 3. (to know) ... what he will" do next. 4. Now he will talk for hours, ... (to stop him). 5. She was right, ... (to argue about it). 6. It was a hard blow, ... (to get over it). 7. He is an expert in art, ... (to deny it). 8. She seems to like this combination of colours, ... (to account) for tastes.

Ex. 5. Translate the following sentences according to the model.

M o d e l: 1) "... **the longer** the slug has been in the pile **the more** active it is likelv to be when it comes out."
2) **The more** he reads**, the better** he will know the subject.

1. Чем меньше он будет волноваться, тем скорее поправится. 2. Чем больше ребенок находится на воздухе, тем лучше для его здоровья. 3. Чем скорее вы поймете это, тем лучше. 4. Чем дешевле вещь, тем скорее она изнашивается. 5. Чем скорее он признает свою ошибку, тем лучше будет для него. 6. Чем больше старания, тем лучше результат.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBS

Ex. 6. Study the following phrases: a) recall the sentences in which they are used in the text, and b) use them when retelling the text.

do **with** smth/smb; put **up with**; work **in** bursts; sense in smth/doing smth; erratic (inconsistent, mistaken, etc.) **in** smth; be fair **to** smb; come **(round) to** thinking; **at** the critical moment; responsible **for** smth/ smb; aim at smth/doing smth; have smth fixed in one's head; come **to** the conclusion; take oneself **in** hand; get **down to** (work, business, etc.); put one's name **to** (a document, paper, etc.); tell **by** (the look, smb's words, etc.); expose oneself **to** (radiation, light, etc.); **by** remote control; all the rest **of** it; fresh **from**; transform **into** smth; draw smb's attention **to** smth/smb; make/do experiments **on** smth; keep **away (from)**; speak **in** a (menacing, etc.) tone; be used **to** doing smth; **in** a mood; be due **at**; have a word **with** smb; a report **on** smb/smth; **in** an effort to do smth; **for** once; have it **out with** smb; be fed **up with** smb/smth; to judge **for** oneself; pull **at** (the arm, sleeve, etc); be convinced **of** smth; get **away with** (it); a hundred **to** one.

Ex. 7. Fill in the blanks with prepositions or adverbs.

A. 1. To be fair ... her, she handled the situation expertly. 2. Hasn't it ever occurred ... you that you might have been the one responsible ... the accident? 3.

Though I've been following you ... the greatest attention, I must admit that I don't quite see what your suggestions are aimed ... . 4. It was a painful minute before the colour came ... to his face and he took himself ... hand. 5. Having filled ... the form he put his name ... it and handed it ... the Customs Officer. 6. Nobody was admitted ... the laboratory while the experiment was ... , and pictures ... what was going ... inside were taken ... a remote-control camera. 7. The train is due ... five, that leaves us twenty minutes ... a quick meal. 8. Before writing an account ... the incident, I thought I had better get a clear picture ... my mind ... what exactly had happened. 9. May I have a word ... you ... a business matter? 10. Don't bother ... the tea. I've just had mine. 11. I have an appointment ... the head engineer which I can't break even ... account ... your arrival. 12. Your story doesn't sound true enough, you won't be getting ... ... it. 13. The sooner he gets ... ... work, the better. 14. The matter ought to be dealt ... ... delay. 15. ... judging of the results ...the experiment we must take ... account the fact that he has been working under great difficulties ... several months. 16 Trains ... Rockwell may be up to twenty minutes late... account ... repairs to the track. 17. I always found his attitude ... me rather puzzling. 18. His chances ... recovery after the operation were a hundred ... one, but he did get well. 19. He clearly felt that he couldn't put ... ... such unfair treatment any longer and decided to have it ... ... the manager that same afternoon. 20. There is no better way ... learning something than ... experience. 21. If he gets something fixed ... his head there's no power ... earth that can stop him.

B. THE NEW LABORATORY

Joyce had great respect ... science but no understanding. Often she would ask Martin to explain his work, but when he started on some subject, ... the most interesting moment, she would interrupt him. Her serious face would transform ... a charming smile, and ... a sweet voice, she would ask him to light a cigarette ... her, and Martin could tell ... the look ... her eyes that her thoughts had been far away.

Martin was fed ... ... the constant parties Joyce had ... the house, and he didn't want to have anything to do ... all these wealthy* people who didn't care ... his work.

He worked ... bursts, sometimes ... night. Joyce saw no sense ... the way he went ... and pointed it ... more than once. She had it fixed ... her head that he worked evenings because he didn't w'-ant to stay ... her guests, which was true, ... a way.

"But I've got to work evenings and nights; when I get down ... some experiment I just can't interrupt it, don't you see!"

"I know but — Darling, couldn't you put ... your work just ... once so that we could—"

* состоятельный

Time went ... and Joyce seemed to have got used ... his late hours. She kept ... ... the laboratory and Martin came ... ... thinking that Joyce had finally learnt to put ... ... her husband's work.

Joyce was wealthy and energetic and Martin never suspected what she was doing ... his back until one day Joyce came ... the laboratory with: "I've got a surprise ... you."

She led him ... the spare room they had over the garage. There she had set... ... him the best bacteriological laboratory he had ever seen: white floor and enamelled walls, ice-box and incubator and all the rest ... it.

"There!" sang Joyce ... a triumphant smile. "Now when you simply must work evenings and nights you won't have to go ... the university'.

If you don't want to stay ... my guests all evening, you can slip* ... here, and work as late as you please. Have I done it right? I tried so hard — I got the best men I could to do the job."

"Now," Martin was thinking, "I'll never be able to get ... ... here."

(after "Martin Arrowsmith" by Sinclair Lewis)

Ex. 8. Give the English for the following phrases, using the preposition "about" in its different meanings. Use the phrases in sentences of your own.

I. ходить по комнате; бродить по лесу; разъезжать по городу на машине; путешествовать по стране; бегать по саду; искать по всему дому; осматриваться.

II. около двух часов; приблизительно 4 км; около 30 человек;

III. а) говорить (рассказывать, болтать, спорить) о чем-л; читать (писать) о чем-л;

б) думать о чем-л; слышать о чем-л; знать (узнать, разузнать, спрашивать, наводить справки) о чем-л.

IV. беспокоиться (волноваться, заботиться) о чем-л; нервничать по какому-л поводу; докучать кому-л чем-л; суетиться из-за чего-л; быть привередливым/разборчивым в чем-л.

V. что-то странное (необычное, неприятное, примечательное) в чьем-л поведении (внешности, манерах).

MISCELLANEOUS PHRASES

собираться сделать что-л; иметь сомнения относительно чего-л; жаловаться на что-л; носить всегда при себе; находиться где-то поблизости

EXERCISES IN LEXICOLOGY

Ex. 9. Study the following sentences. Give the meaning of the prefix "fore-".

1. He had a nasty fall and put out his **forearm**. 2. The boy pointed at the map with his **forefinger**. 3. The horse slipped on the ice and broke its **foreleg**. 4. His **forehead** was heavily lined. 5. Judging by the **foreword** the book promises to be interesting. 6. Having been **forewarned** about the change in the arrangement he rearranged his time-table. 7. Have you heard the weather **forecast** for tomorrow? 8. It's his fault that the project failed. He ought to have **foreseen** the difficulties. 9. The results were easy to **foretell**. 10. If you had had more **foresight**, you would have saved yourself a lot of trouble. 11. The work of the builders' team was directed by a **foreman**.

Ex. 10. Recast using verbs instead, of nouns with the suffix "-ment". Make other necessary changes.

1. The **establishment** of business contacts between the Soviet Union and Great Britain took place in 1924. 2. They all agreed to the **post-ponement** of the experiment till a later date. 3. The **payment** for the goods was to be made by the buyers within fifteen days after signing the contract. 4. How long does the **development** of a photographic film take? 5. Schoolboys usually take great **enjoyment** in reading science fiction. 6. The failure of the business was due to improper **management**. 7. His **appointment** as head of the department came as a surprise to many of us. 8. It did not take them long to come to **an agreement** about the most important question under discussion.

Ex. 11. Paraphrase the following sentences using a noun instead of an adjective. Make other necessary changes.

M o d e l: They were convinced that the decision was important.
They were convinced of the importance of the decision.

1. The professor was convinced that the operation was **necessary**. 2. The members of the expedition were convinced that the discovery they had made was **important**. 3. I am firmly convinced that he is an **honest** person. 4. Are you convinced that the experiment will be **successful**? 5. He was convinced that the argument was **useless**. 6. They were convinced that the conclusions they had drawn were **correct**.

Ex. 12. Give words of the same root in Russian. Compare the meaning.

observatory, fix, radio-active, substance, serious, exposition, radiation, control, protection, reactor, atomic, transform, naturally, actually, pause, fatal, dose, container, trick.

Ex. 13. In the following groups of sentences compare the meaning of the words in bold type. Translate the sentences into Russian. Give your own

---

* ускользнуть

examples.

A. 1-a) The boy **looked up** to watch the plane going out of sight. b) The Browns are old friends of the family and my brother could not have left town without **looking them up**. 2. a) There was little sense in **putting off** what had to be done. b) It must have been the responsibility going with the appointment that put him off. 3. a) The man moved up and I took my seat beside him. b) On the way home he wondered if they would dare to move Nicholls up over his head. 4. a) On finishing school he gave away all his textbooks saying he had no further use for them. b) We guessed he was an American. It was his accent that gave him away. 5. a) In the end I found out what was wrong with my TV set. b) Being convinced that we would never find him out, he went on practising his little jokes on us.

B. 1. a) He said he had caught an enormous fish but it got away. b) He's constantly missing classes. It's a wonder how he manages to get away with it. 2. a) We had already crossed the river and were well into the forest when he caught up. b) He had missed a whole term and would have to work hard to catch up with the class. 3. a) I could tell by the look in his eye that he was fed up. b) We were all fed up with this wet weather.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 14. Fill in the blanks with a suitable word in the correct form. Translate the sentences into Russian.

to account; admission; to admit; to aim; aim; to appoint; appointment; attitude (2); to bother (2); to check; check; conclusion (2); conviction; convincing; to dare; to delay; delay; to deny; experience (2); to fix; to guess; guess; mood; observation (2); opinion; permit; responsible; responsibility; to tell (2)

1. ... of the moon's surface made by the Luniks ... the scientists to draw important ... about the origin and age of the moon. 2. Directing the work of a chemical laboratory was a highly ... job. 3. For one who has spent his life in town a trip into the mountains could prove an unforgettable .... 4. He ... at quick results and, therefore, could not be bothered with details. In my ... it was just this that ... for his failure with the experiment. 5. You can hardly expect a frank ... from a person who has made a habit of lying. 6. He had done what he believed to be right and was fully prepared to take the ... for his action. 7. Before drawing any ... he intended to make a careful ... of the facts connected with the case. 8. Once he had set himself an ... there could be no doubt whatever that sooner or later he would reach it. 9. It had always been his firm ... that the best way to learn was to learn by ... . 10. Unable to ... his annoyance at the unforeseen ..., he struck the table with his fist. 11. People suffering from colour blindness can't ... colours. 12. His reasons for taking that particular ... to the problem were not

difficult to .... 13. He felt restless, though he knew that everything was taken care of and there was no need for him to .... 14. The doctor's instructions on leaving were that the patient should be kept under constant ... . 15. When questioned, the night watchman flatly ... having seen or heard anything suspicious. 16. From where I stood it was difficult to ... the exact distance to the mountain top. I could only make a rough ... . 17. Though the story may have sounded ... enough, I still had my doubts. 18. The thought that he may have misjudged his friend kept ... him. 19. He had been unexpectedly ... at the office and was now in a hurry to keep his ...with the dentist. 20. Looking back on the incident he had to ... that he had mishandled the job. 21. Her quickly changing ... made her a difficult companion. 22. His beliefs and ... were something he did not care to discuss in company. 23. She would never ... to disobey her mother's orders. 24. My friend's ... to the matter puzzled me beyond words. 25. You ought to have a specialist look at your radio. Maybe he could ... it. 26. He wondered who would be ... chairman of the newly-established committee.

Ex. 15. Paraphrase the following, using words and word combinations from the text. Make all other necessary changes.

to check (4); to handle (2); to fix; to pretend; to bother; to put up with; to aim (at); to have to do with; to have it out with smb; to convince; conviction; to make sure; fresh from; opinion; experience; responsible (for); to account (for).

1. **Having just finished** school, the girl was inexperienced in any kind of work. 2. He **looked over** the luggage piled at his feet **to see if** it was all there. 3. The fellow **was after** easy success. 4. After going through the facts once more, my doubts turned into firm belief. 5. We were all interested in, what the professor would say about the article since it dealt with the very problem he was working at. 6. Seeing the ., puzzled expression on his face I nearly burst out laughing, but stopped myself in time. 7. There was really no way of making'him realize that what he intended to do meant exposing himself to a great risk for noth- „^ ing. 8. The experiment had failed and the professor wondered whose " ', fault it couJd have been. 9. It had not been an easy job, but the practical knowledge he got proved well worth, the time and the effort. 10. He was warned to be careful in working with the apparatus since there was a danger that if^it broke down there would be no one to put it right. 11. The job was connected with things I hardly knew anything about when I first started on it. 12. She tried to look indifferent as if she weren't in the least interested in my attitude. 13. The thought of the children, alone in the house, gave her no peace. 14. He had been treated unfairly, and he wouldn't'stand it. 15. There was no way to explain his strange behaviour. 16. I wished I had settled the misunderstanding with him then and there.

Ex. 16. Speak on the following topics, using the words and expressions given below.

1. Inside the Hot Lab

radio-active substances; to handle things by remote control; to wear protective clothing; air-conditioned; windowless; to be swept and polished constantly; to take care not to expose oneself to too much radiation; extremely dangerous; to catch one's eye; in the middle of the floor; a coffin of a particular design; a large brick-shaped block of solid lead; the best material to stop radiation; to give very little protection against radiation; a cavity; a uranium slug; fresh from the reactor; atomic pile; to be pushed along the channels; to take place (of fission); to transform partly into plutonium and fission products; to experiment with slugs; the longer the slug has been in the pile, the more active it's likely to be when it comes out; to do (make) an experiment; to be off (of the lead bricks); to make observations; to check smth; to read the instruments; to have everything under control

2. Curtis Faces a Difficult Decision

a senior officer; to be responsible for smth; to give smb a write-up; to treat smth seriously; to give one's word to the Establishment Officer; to fill up a form; to have to do with smb's promotion; to go up for an interview; a spare quarter of an hour; a difficult decision to make; to show a responsible attitude; to report impartially on smb's actual work; to give a fair account of smth; not to hesitate to give one's personal opinion; to be up to the Commission (to decide)

3. Johnson's Chances of Promotion

to have one's good (bad) points; difficult to handle; to put it mildly; a nasty temper; unaccountable; to be inconsistent intellectually, in one's behaviour; to see no sense in the way smb goes on; to catch smb going behind one's back; to do smb a dirty trick; no sense of responsibility; to be erratic in one's ideas; a blunder; a risk; a menace; to be more than one can put up with; to go by (of the years); to be fair to smb; to become more sensible; to do a good job as Experimental Officer; to have everything in one to make a good Senior Scientific Officer; to have a lot of experience; to take oneself in hand as to one's ideas and personal behaviour; to come to the conclusion; to move smb up; the risk might be worth taking

4. Johnson Comes to Have it Out With Curtis

Johnson: to aim at an appointment; to have it fixed in one's head; the delay in one's promotion; to be smb's fault; to have strong suspicions (about); to be determined to get hold of the confidential report at any price; to expose smb; to burst in; to be beside oneself with anger; to speak in a menacing tone; to demand

an explanation; to be convinced that ...; to wreck smb's chances of promotion; to want to know where one stands; to take the wrong attitude;

Curtis: to look up at smb in mild surprise; to guess the purpose of smb's visit; to be used to dealing with smb in such a mood; to tell by the look in smb's eye; to mean trouble; to try to calm smb down; not to deny; to admit willingly; to give an account of what was written in the write-up; to draw smb's attention to smth; to give smb a chance to judge for oneself about smth; to conclude by saying that ...; in spite of smth; to be perfectly willing to take the risk; to expect smb to re-sspect one's judgement; to catch smb looking over one's shoulder; to lose one's temper with smb; to be unable to check one's anger; to be fed up with smb; to wonder how smb can dare to doubt smb's word; to refuse to put up with smth

5. The Ball of Paper

to jump (towards); to seize the form; to pull away; to crush the form into a ball of paper between one's hands; to let smth fly; to come to rest beside the coffin; to rush forward; to pay no attention to the cry of warning; to be blind to danger; to be deaf to reason; to pick up the ball of paper; to expose oneself to radiation; to be at a loss

6. Johnson Wrecks His Own Chances

to act without delay; to call up Health Physics; to feel sorry for smb; a painful sight; to notice smb touching the film-holder on the lapel; as if to make sure; to contain; a piece of photographic film; between two sheets of lead with windows in the front one; to have the film developed; to tell the amount of radiation; a medical check-up; to be convinced of smth; not a fatal dose; to be a hundred to one (of the chances); to get away with it; not to permit smb to work with smth; to put oneself out of a job; to realize that all is lost; a heavy blow; to be hard hit by smth

SPECIAL DIFFICULTIES

Ex. 17. Translate the following sentences using "what" or "that" according to the sense.

1 а) Я знаю, что он мог сказать, б) Я знаю, что он сказал правду. 2. а) Главный инженер объяснил нам, что значит практический опыт. б) Главный инженер объяснил молодым специалистам, что опыт в их работе значит многое. 3. а) Я видел, что читала девушка, сидящая рядом со мной. б) Я видел, что она читала научный журнал. 4. а) Мы не могли догадаться, что беспокоило ребенка. б> Мы не знали, что наше молчание очень беспокоило наших друзей. 5. а) Он продолжал отрицать то, что сказал накануне, б) Он продолжал отрицать, что сказал это.

Ex. 18. Translate the following sentences using phrases with "beyond".

1. За последние годы наш город изменился до неузнаваемости. 2. Такое замечательное произведение искусства ни с чем нельзя сравнить. 3. То, о чем вы меня просите, не в моей власти. 4. Мы без сомнения справимся с заданием в срок. 5. Радость, которую он испытывал в ту минуту, нельзя описать словами. 6. То, что вы говорите, недоступно их пониманию. 7. Цель, которую он наметил, была недосягаема. 8. Он полагал, что его действия вне подозрения. 9. Ваши часы уже нельзя починить. 10. То, что он предлагает, не укладывается в голове (не поддается разумному объяснению).

Ex. 19. Translate the following sentences using the verb "tell".

1. Вы можете определить расстояние отсюда до противоположного берега озера? 2. Я никогда не различаю братьев, они так похожи друг на друга, 3. По выражению его лица я понял, что он чем-то недоволен. 4. Этого актера всегда можно узнать по голосу. 5. По вашим часам очень трудно определить время. Они очень маленькие.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Modal Verbs

I. Must* (in the meaning of supposition of high probability)

Ex. 20. Study the meaning of the verb "must" and the tense relations expressed by the forms of the infinitive.

1. She **must be** about twenty five now. She went to school with my sister.	1. **Должно быть**, ей сейчас около двадцати пяти лет. Она училась в школе с моей сестрой.
2. It's five o'clock. He must **be working** in the garden.	2. Сейчас пять часов. Он, **должно быть (вероятно)**, работает в саду.
3. Something **must have happened**. He has never been late before.	3. **Должно быть**, что-то случилось. Он раньше никогда не опаздывал.
4. The visitor is still here. He **must have been waiting** for an hour.	4. Посетитель все еще здесь. Он ждет **по всей вероятности** уже час.

Ex. 21. Watch the meaning of the verb "must", translate the sentences into Russian.

* **Must** is not used in the meaning of supposition of high probability with reference to the future, **to be likely** or **probably** is used instead, e.g. He is likely to arrive tomorrow.

1. (a) She must be very careful. The work at the laboratory is very dangerous, (b) She must be very careless if she left, forgetting to lock the flat. 2. (a) She must wait for us at the metro station, (b) She must be waiting for us at the metro station. 3. (a) The matter must be settled before his arrival, (b) The matter must have been settled before his departure. 4. (a) She must know nothing about it. It will only make her suffer, (b) She must know nothing about it, if she says the task is easy,

Ex. 22. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the infinitive.

1. The roofs and streets are wet. It must ... (to rain). 2. The book must ... worth reading if he has read it twice (to be). 3. The house must ••• in the middle ages. The walls are very thick and the windows narrow (to build). 4. We must ... a wrong turning. I don't recognize the road (to take). 5. Judging by the expression of his face he must ... by what he heard (.to impress). 6. Something serious must ... him (to delay). He should have been here at least an hour ago. 7. He must ... a lot if he was able to show such good results (to practise). 8. You must ... the answer by now (to guess). 9. She must ... with his rough manner, that's why she lost her temper (to be fed up). 10. She must... very unobservant if she didn't notice the change in him (to be). 11. Judging by his story he must ... to many dangers and ... his life more than once (to expose; to risk). 12. She must ... the shock by now (to get over).

Ex. 23. Answer the following questions, using "must", mind the tense form of tlie infinitive.

M o d e l: Why didn't he come? (to be ill)
He **must have been ill**.

1. Why isn't he here? (to delay) 2. What would you say he is, judging by his appearance? (to be a painter) 3. How old was he when he set out on his first expedition to the North? (thirty) 4. Why are they never seen together now? (to quarrel) 5. What's all that knocking in the next room? (to fix a shelf to the wall) 6. Where is she? (to wait for us at the entrance to the Museum) 7. How did he manage to arrive so soon? (to come by plane) 8. What accounts for their delay? (the fog) 9. Why didn't he join in the discussion of the problem? (to have no interest in the subject) 10. Why is the photograph so pale? (the film; to expose to light) 11. Why was he so impolite? (to be annoyed with smb for disturbing him)

Ex. 24. Paraphrase the following sentences using "must".

1. It looks as if he were out of practice, that's why he lost the game. 2. I see a crowd of people before the door. No doubt something has happened. 3. He has obviously been working at this Research Institute for a long time. Everybody

seems to know him. 4. Evidently* they were getting ready for another experiment. They wanted no strangers at the laboratory. 5. Obviously he was speaking from his own experience. He sounded very convincing. 6. Judging by the frosted windows the weather to-day is surely far from warm. 7. Evidently she was ashamed of her behaviour.

Ex. 25. Translate the following sentences using "must".

1. Вы, должно быть, только что вернулись из деревни. Вы прекрасно выглядите. 2. По всей вероятности он забыл, что раньше он придерживался другого мнения. 3. Я не думаю, чтобы он сердился на вас. Он, должно быть, был в плохом настроении. 4. Сейчас еще рано звонить ему. Вероятно он еще спит. 5. Какой прекрасный телевизор. Должно быть вы за него много заплатили. 6. Ты, должно быть, очень голоден. Ведь ты не ел с утра. 7. Я плохо себя чувствую. У меня, должно быть, температура. 8. Не случайно вас остановил милиционер. Вы, должно быть, превысили дозволенную скорость (лимит скорости). 9. Он, должно быть, давно болен. Он все время жаловался на плохое самочувствие. 10. Она, должно быть, задумалась и не заметила, как проехала свою остановку.

Ex. 26. Study how negation is expressed in the following sentences, translate them into Russian.

1. **Nobody** must have noticed him leave. 2. He must have left the door unlocked on purpose. 3. He thought that he must have taken the wrong train, because the names of the stations they were passing seemed unfamiliar. 4. The news must have never reached him. He never says a word about it. 5. He must have failed to see his mistake, for he didn't stop to correct it. 6. He must have refused the offer. 7. He denied having spoken to her on the subject. 8. He seemed to be a very quiet child. He must have given you no trouble at all. 9. They must have been unwilling to leave so early. 10. They treated our offer with suspicion. They must have misunderstood our intentions. 11. Such a possibility must have never occurred to him. 12. He must have failed to prove his point. 13. They must have missed the train. They had left too late.

Ex. 27. Change the following sentences making them opposite in meaning, make all other necessary changes.

1. The student must have given the right answer. The teacher was pleased. 2. Everybody must have noticed her turn pale. 3. He must have recognized me for he nodded my way. 4. She must have taken herself in hand. She never said a word. 5. He must be very observant. He always notices a new dress when I have one. 6. He must have admitted the truth. 7. He must have kept his promise. 8.

* evidently очевидно (по всей вероятности)

She must be very patient with children, they like her. 9. They must have caught the train.

Ex.. 28. Translate into English.

1. Должно быть, он не смог прийти в условленное время. 2. Должно быть, вы были несправедливы к нему. 3. Вероятно, ему не сообщили, что собрание перенесено. 4. Должно быть, вы не наблюдательны, если вы не заметили у нас никаких перемен. 5. Вероятно, он еще ничего не знает о своем новом назначении. 6. Должно быть, не удалось установить фактов и обсуждение вопроса было отложено. 7. Вероятно, на этот раз ему это не сошло с рук. 8. Цифры, должно быть, "е были проверены. Они вызвали большое сомнение. 9. Вероятно, он еще неопытен в решении таких вопросов. 10. Должно быть, не было смысла дожидаться его приезда. 11. Мои слова, должно быть, "е убедили его. Он продолжал спорить. 12. Должно быть, ему не Удалось доказать свою точку зрения. У него расстроенный вид.

II. Can (could) in the meaning of supposition with implied surprise, disbelief, great doubt

Ex. 29. Study the meaning of the verb "can (could)" and the tense relations expressed by the forms of the infinitive.

1. It **can't*** **(couldn't)**** **be** true.	1. **Не может быть**, чтобы это **была правда**.
2. **Can (could)** it **be** true?	2. **Неужели** это правда?
3. **He can't (couldn't)** have said such a thing.	3. **Не может быть**, чтобы он сказал такую вещь. (Он не мог сказать такую вещь)
4. She **can't (couldn't) have failed** to get in touch with them.	4. **Не может быть**, чтобы ей не удалось связаться с ними.
5. **Can (could)** he **have reserved** rooms in the hotel?	5. **Неужели** он **забронировал** ком наты в отеле?
6. **Can (could)** he **have lailed** to get her on the phone?	6. **Неужели** он не **дозвонился** ей?
7. Who **could have thought** that he wouldn't come?	7. **Разве** кто-нибудь **мог подумать**,что он не придет?

* can in the meaning of supposition very seldom occurs in positive sentences
** could, the Subjunctive mood of can, makes the statement less categorical, milder

Ex. 30. Translate the following sentences into Russian, mind the meaning of the verb "can (could)".

1. I can't open the door, it seems to have got stuck. 2. Something must have happened. He can't be late. 3. Can he use the car in your absence? 4. Can he have used the car in my absence? 5. Who could have thought that he could leave without letting us know? 6. When he was young he could cover great distances on foot without getting tired. 7. He offered his help in good time. Nothing could have been more useful to her at the moment. 8. He couldn't have received the news with indifference. 9. You can't judge of things you don't understand. 10. He can't have failed to notice you. 11. Can they have failed to let her know that they were not coming? 12. A person of common sense can't have acted like this. 13. He is over eighty but can still read without glasses. 14. It was more than I could put up with. 15. With the best will in the world I couldn't show him more respect.

Ex. 31. Express doubt, surprise or disbelief using the verb "can (could)"[*] according to the model, give reasons for your disbelief, surprise etc.

M o d e l I: It looks as if she were still sleeping.
Can she be still sleeping?
She can't be still sleeping. It's time she were at work.

1. He seems **to be still writing** his course-paper. 2. They say he is **a fair man**. The film is said **to be very bad**. 4. It seems she **is silent** on the matter for fear of making him angry. 5. He is **said to be good company**. 6. He appears **to be still waiting** for her. 7. They say she **is completely cured**. 8. Leave me alone. **I am tired**. 9. He **is still hesitating** about our offer. 10. They say he **is still a student**. 11. They say he **is very experienced.**

M o d e l II: They say he put his idea into practice.
Can he have put this idea into practice?
He **can't have put** his idea into practice. It's quite impracticable.

1. I hear they treated her unkindly. 2. Everybody thinks her remark was intended for you. 3. He is said to have given up music. 4. Believe it or not, she hesitated before accepting his proposal of marriage. 5. I hear people say he has made a good doctor. 6. He was appointed secretary of the committee, they say. 7. He is said to have been promoted again. 8. She seems to have missed the joke. 9. I hear he sharply criticized your suggestion. 10. They put him off with some excuse and they gave the job to a different man. 11. He has guessed about our intentions, I think.

---

[*] In all these cases where can is used could is also possible. Couldn't, however, must be used if the finite verb in the principal clause is in the past.
e. g. She **said** that he **couldn't** have done it.

Ex. 32. Translate the following sentences according to the model.

M o d e l I: **Не может быть**, чтобы он **не** пришел в условленное время.
He **can't have failed** to come **at** the appointed time.

1. Не может быть, чтобы она не заметила, что он был расстроен. 2. Не может быть, чтобы он не проверил аппарат перед включением. 3. Не может быть, чтобы она не поняла, какую цель мы преследовали. 4. Не может быть, чтобы он не предусмотрел эту трудность. 5. Не может быть, чтобы они не убедили его. 6. Не может быть, чтобы она не изменила своего мнения после нашего разговора.

M o d e l II: Неужели телеграмма не дошла до них?
Can the telegram have failed to reach them?

1. Неужели он не смог доказать свою точку зрения? 2. Неужели она не поняла его шутку? 3. Неужели он не проверил багаж прежде чем отправить его на станцию? 4. Неужели она так и не увидела разницы между оригиналом и копией?

Ex. 33. Paraphrase the following sentences using "can (could)"; mind the form of the infinitive.

1. It is impossible that he should put pleasure before duty. 2. Is it possible that he should have broken the appointment? 3. I don't believe that he failed to reach his purpose. 4. It's hardly likely that he should have been denied what he had a right to. 5. It is unbelievable that she should have said nothing to account for her absence. 6. Is it possible that he should have guessed what they were after? 7. It's very doubtful that they should have come to the same conclusion. 8. Is it possible that he should be of the same opinion? 9. Are they still arguing?

Ex. 33. Translate into English using "can (could)".

1. Неужели ты засветил пленку? 2. Не может быть, чтобы он так разговаривал с вами. Он умеет держать себя в руках. 3. Вряд ли он примирился с такой ситуацией. 4. Неужели он не признал свою ошибку? 5. Разве 'мог кто-нибудь подумать, что ему удастся опять выйти сухим из воды?! 6. Неужели он не догадался о ваших намерениях? 7. Не может быть, чтобы он не смог доказать своей правоты. 8. Не может быть, чтобы она не заметила, что он остался при своем мнении. 9. Разве мог кто-нибудь подумать, что он вернется в спорт после автомобильной катастрофы. 10. Не может быть, чтобы ошибка осталась незамеченной.

Ex. 35. Test translation.

1. Цель переговоров была достигнута. Обе стороны подписали

соглашение о дальнейшем развитии внешней торговли. 2. В результате наблюдений, проведенных над планетами, польский астроном Коперник (Copernicus 1473—1543) пришел к выводу, что земля и другие планеты движутся вокруг солнца. 3. После проверки результатов опыта ученые-медики убедились, что новый метод лечения сердечных заболеваний эффективен. 4. Если бы он был более наблюдателен во время проведения опыта, он бы не пропустил такую важную деталь. 5. Он уже хотел сказать ей о своей неудаче, но во-время сдержал себя, увидев, что она и без того чем-то расстроена. 6. Он подумал, что ему лучше не высказывать своего отношения к данному вопросу, поскольку он еще недостаточно хорошо изучил его. 7. Не беспокойтесь о билетах, я обо всем позабочусь сам. 8. Вам бы лучше не беспокоить его своими вопросами. Он очень занят. 9. Их требования совершенно справедливы. В этом нет никакого сомнения. 10. По моему мнению вы не совсем справедливы в своем отношении к нему. Необходимо учесть, что он работает у нас недавно и поэтому у него еще нет достаточного опыта. 11. Не может быть, чтобы она не признала того, что ошибка произошла по ее вине. 12. Он успешно сдал вступительные экзамены, и его приняли в институт. 13. Справедливости ради, нам следует признать, что без его помощи нам бы не удалось установить истину. 14. Он обещал прийти сегодня пораньше, но его все нет. Должно быть, важные дела задержали его на работе. 15. Задержка в поставке товара произошла из-за неблагоприятной погоды. 16. Весной у студентов нет ни минуты свободного времени. Они заняты подготовкой к экзаменам. 17. Пойдем с нами в кино, у нас есть лишний билет. 18. У него большой опыт работы, и его вполне можно назначить на должность директора фирмы. 19. Судя по его ответу он, должно быть, догадался о наших намерениях. 20. После тщательного изучения нового метода мы пришли к выводу, что его стоит применить (внедрить) в нашей работе. 21. Не может быть, чтобы он не учел наши замечания. Он всегда прислушивается к мнению своих товарищей. 22. У него, должно быть, не было веских аргументов, поэтому он не осмелился выступить против нашего предложения. 23. Я не в настроении сегодня говорить о делах. Я бы предпочел послушать музыку. 24. Не может быть, чтобы он ушел без разрешения. Это на него не похоже. 25. Поезд должен быть в пять часов, так что есть еще время, чтобы проверить, все ли готово к отъезду. 26. Странный она человек, постоянно чем-то недовольна. 27. Будьте осторожны в обращении с огнем. Не подвергайте себя опасности. 28. Не может быть, чтобы он отказался от своих слов.

PRECIS WRITING*

Ex. 36- Learn to write a precis. Use the following as a model.

* precis ['preisi:] writing — реферирование

M o d e l: *a) Read the passage and give it a title.*

From Switzerland comes news of a robot telephone which can announce its number, the name of its absent owner and its willingness to record automatically any information given to it. When the called person returns, he has to push a button and the phone recites what has been said to it during his absence.

(55 words)

b) Give brief answers to the following questions in your own words as far as possible.

1. What can an automatic Swiss telephone do? An automatic Swiss telephone gives its absent owner's name and number. 2. What is it meant for? It is meant to record messages. 3. How does the owner learn the message? The telephone repeats the message when the owner returns.

c) Write a precis summing up the answers (in 20 words).

An automatic Swiss telephone gives its absent owner's name and number, and records messages to repeat them when he returns.

(20 words)

Ex. 37. a) Read the passage; b) Do the assignments following the passage.

a) The hidden face of the moon has so long been a mystery that the first successful attempt to show it will probably go down in history as one of the most important steps man has made to enlarge his knowledge of outer space. What the voyage of Columbus was to the world in the fifteenth century, the journey of the rocket, *Lunik 3*, might well be to the twentieth.

Lunik 3 was shaped like a cone and weighed about 614 pounds. It travelled from the earth to the south side of the moon and continued its journey for some 400 miles beyond the other side before the moon's attraction made it change its path, making it turn round. When this occurred, the rocket was in a direct line between the sun and the moon and a great number of things happened. At a signal from the earth, the rocket stopped turning and a cover opened at its nose. Two cameras appeared, one of which magnified* the moon two and a half times more than the other. The film that was used to take the pictures had special markings on it so that the photographing of the moon's far side could be controlled from the earth. When the pictures had been taken, they were developed automatically by a special device** designed to work under conditions of weightlessness.*** Now it was time for the rocket to move again, and another signal from the earth set it turning once more, for there was danger that if it

---

* увеличивать
** приспособление, механизм
*** невесомость

remained still, its underside would freeze and its topside become too hot and so do irreparable harm to the delicate instruments within. The rocket then continued its journey round the moon, and on its way back to earth began to send the photographs that had been taken, with the help of a special television-camera which translated the lines on the pictures into radio signals. In this way, the hidden face of the moon became known to everybody. Those few who had expected to hear of strange animals or lost civilizations may have been disappointed. But for most people, the photographs solved an age-old mystery and gave the first really exciting glimpse of outer space.

b*) 1. Give the passage a title.*

2. Give brief answers to these questions in your own words as far as possible. Use one complete sentence for each answer, a. With what voyage is the journey of the rocket, "Lunik 3", compared? b. Why did the rocket turn round and face the moon when it reached the other side? c. What caused the rocket to stop turning? d. How were the photographs taken by the cameras in the rocket sent back to the earth?

3. Describe in not more than 80 words everything that happened to the rocket from the moment it left the earth to when it sent back photographs. Use your own words and do not include anything that is not in the passage.

SPEECH EXERCISES

Ex. 38. Retell in narrative form.

STOLEN FAME

When Paul i rushed to Jane among the crowd leaving the train and dragged her into a small restaurant near the station, Jane at once saw that Pauli was very nervous.

When they were seated in a quiet corner Pauli said to the waiter:

"Two coffees, please." Jane said: "I've got your telegram. Now, please, what is the matter?"

Pauli watched the waiter go back to the counter, then took a newspaper out of her handbag. She passed it to Jane with her finger marking one of the pages. It was the news of Framm's discovery.

"I've read it on the train," Jane said. "What does Brad have to say about it?"

"That's just the point," Pauli tried hard to be calm. "He refuses to do anything. But it is ... it is his own discovery ... Brad's ... and Hugo Framm has stolen it. It's Brad's work, not Framm's at all."

"That's pretty serious," Jane said at last. "How are you going to prove it?"

"I have hundreds of proofs. Pages and pages of Brad's notes. I have been

copying them for him every night when he came home from the laboratory — every night for months. And I know his work well enough to realise that all the conclusions are the same."

Jane's silence made her exclaim: "You do not think I speak the truth? You think it is impossible!" But Jane was convinced that Pauli was speaking the truth.

"Of course not. I just can't get over it — the idea of Brad doing all the work and Framm getting all the fame."

"Oh, no... I'm not going to let that happen. Something must be done. Do you think I would stand by and see my husband ruined?"

(after "Nothing So Strange" by J. Hilton)

Ex. 39. Answer the following questions, using the active vocabulary of the text. Sum up your answers.

1. Atom For Peace

1. Why did Roentgen's discovery of X-rays open a new era in medicine? 2. How do X-rays help to diagnose a case? 3. What diseases are treated by X-rays? 4. Is there any cure for leukemia*? 5. Why should you have your lungs X-rayed from time to time? 6. What does an X-ray room look like? 7. Why do doctors, nurses and technicians working there wear special clothes? 8. What is the purpose of the screen? 9. What other safety measures are taken in an X-ray room?

2. Protection Against Radiation

1. What is the best protection against radiation? 2. Why do people working with radio-active substances wear protective clothes.? 3. Why do they have film-holders on the lapels of their coats? 4. How do Health Physics establish the amount of radiation? 5. What is the fatal dose? 6. Why are things in hot labs handled by remote control? 7. What else is done to protect people from radiation in hot labs?

3. A Research Laboratory

1. What purpose does a laboratory serve? 2. What kind of laboratories do you know? 3. What does the inside of a laboratory look like? 4. How does an ordinary kind of laboratory differ from a hot lab? 5. Why is a hot lab usually housed in a separate building? 6. Why does a research worker sometimes design his own equipment**? 7. What may careless handling of equipment in a laboratory lead to? 8. Why does work in a laboratory need constant attention? 9. Why is it important that instruments should be checked before starting an

---

* [lu:'ki:mia] белокровие, лейкемия

** оборудование

experiment? 10. Why must a laboratory be spotlessly clean and have good ventilation?

4. On Observatories

1. What kind of work is done in an observatory? 2. What do you call the scientists who watch the movements of stars and planets? 3. What are the biggest observatories in our country? in the world? 4. Why are observatories usually situated a long distance from big industrial centres? 5. What instruments help astronomers make their observations? 6. What has greatly helped the astronomers in their work in the last decade? 7. How much do we know now about the Moon, Mars, etc.?

5. On Hobbies

1. What do you do in your spare time? 2. What is your hobby? 3. In what way do hobbies (such as stamp-collecting, etc.) develop (broaden) the mind? 4. What information do stamps, picture post-cards, badges, etc. contain? 5. Why is it important that a system should be worked out in collecting them? 6. What makes a stamp unique? 6. What is your opinion of hobbies?

Ex. 40. Read. the following, answer the questions, using the vocabulary of the lesson, and retell the passage.

VICTORY OVER DEATH

It is impossible to say what death is worse. But, probably worst of all, is to feel quite healthy and, yet, know that you must die.

It happened in September, 1958, in the Yugoslav Atomic Centre. Six scientists were looking over the switched off atomic pile. Suddenly the signal lights flashed red, the instrument indicators started their mad dance: the reactor had gone into action. There were no cries, no blood, no pain; beyond the lab walls work went on as usual, people walked unhurriedly along the corridors. "It was as if nothing had happened, "reads a note in the diary of one of the six made at a later date. "Only after reading the Geiger counter did I realize that it was the end."

The scientists were rushed to Paris by plane. There they were admitted to the hospital of the Pierre Curie Institute in d'Ulm Street. The six men were given a careful check-up to establish the exact amount of radiation they had exposed themselves to. The instruments showed that five of them had received 700 r and hardly had a chance. There was hope for only one of them.

The scientists, however, did not lose courage.* In the quiet hospital wards they studied French, listened to the radio and played chess. At first there were

* мужество

no outward signs of the disease, yet it was quietly stealing up on them. Nothing seemed to help: neither frequent blood transfusions,* nor large doses of antibiotics.

But the doctors would not admit failure. When the patients had only some two or three days to live the Medical Centre called a consilium. In an effort to save the lives of the six scientists it was decided to try a bone-marrow transplant.** It was certainly a risk, but a risk well worth taking.

Four Frenchmen volunteered to act as donors and give the marrow necessary for injection. Now there was nothing to do but wait.

Several days passed. One of the patients died. but the other five lived. Death was defeated.*** The daring experiment was a success.

The miracle in d'Ulm Street gives hope that medical science will learn to fight leukemia — this terrible and still incurable disease.

Questions

1. When and where did the accident occur? 2. How did it happen that the scientists were exposed to an overdose of radiation? 3. Ordinarily things would be checked by remote control, wouldn't they? 4. What happened when the reactor went into action? 5. What told the scientists of the extreme danger? 6. What instrument is used to establish the amount of radiation? 7. What conclusion did the scientists make on reading the Geiger counter? 8. Why was it necessary to act without delay? 9. What hospital were they admitted to? 10. What did the check-up show? 11. What were the chances of the six scientists to live? 12. How did the scientists take the doctors' verdict? 13. What was life like for them in the hospital wards? 14. What did they do in their spare time? 15. Why was it important to keep the patients under constant observation? 16. What treatments were tried? 17. What decision was finally taken in an effort to save the lives of the scientists? 18. What was the purpose of a bone-marrow transplant? 19. Why was a bone-marrow transplant believed to be risky? 20. Could anyone guess what the result of the operation might be? 21. Who volunteered to act as donors? 22. What was the effect of the treatment on the patients? 23. Why was the experiment described as daring? 24. What sort of hope does the success of the experiment give to people? 25. Can it be said with conviction that a cure has been found for leukemia?

Ex. 41. Read the following, answer the questions, and retell the passage in English.

---

* переливание крови

** пересадка костного мозга

*** побеждена

СВЕТ НАД РОССИЕЙ

Глеб Максимилианович Кржижановский, член партии с 1893 г., отбывал ссылку в Сибири, в далеком Минусинском округе.

Сибирские села Шушенское и Тесинское, куда были сосланы Ленин и Кржижановский, находились неподалеку друг от друга, и это позволяло им часто видеться, обсуждать политические вопросы. Совместная работа Кржижановского с Лениным в петербургских революционных кружках, а затем годы, проведенные в ссылке, определили весь его дальнейший жизненный путь.

После поражения революции 1905 года, активным участником которой стал по возвращении из ссылки Кржижановский, царское правительство лишило его права проживать во всех промышленных центрах и университетских городах. В Петербурге он проживал нелегально.

Когда в стране победила пролетарская революция, Кржижановский, понимая, как важна ленинская идея электрификации России, принимает самое активное участие в разработке и осуществлении Государственного плана электрификации России.

Выдающийся английский романист Герберт Уэллс, посетивший Советскую страну в 1920 году, писал, что осуществление такого дерзновенного проекта в России «можно представить себе только с помощью сверхфантазии».

В 1924 году вступила в строй Кизеловская ГРЭС, в 1925 — Горьковская, Балахнинская, Шатурская... План ГОЭЛРО успешно претворялся в жизнь.

В 1921 году, по рекомендации Ленина, Кржижановский становится первым председателем Госплана, в чью задачу входило внедрение планирования в народное хозяйство страны.

Questions

1. Where was Krzhizhanovsky exiled? 2. How was it possible that while in exile, Lenin and Krzhizhanovsky should frequently meet to discuss political matters? 3. What factors determined Krzhizhanov-sky's choice of his road in life? 4. Where did Krzhizhanovsky return after exile? 5. What was his part in preparing the Revolution of 1905? 6. What happened after the Revolution was defeated? 7. Why was Krzhizhanovsky denied the right to live in industrial centres and university towns? 8. How soon after the victory of the proletarian revolution did work start on the State Plan for the Electrification of Russia? 9. Why did Krzhizhanovsky believe it all-important to have the plan worked out and put into practice without delay? 10. What was the attitude of Herbert Wells, the famous English novelist, to Lenin's daring project? 11. Why did he believe

that the project was impracticable? 12. Why did Wells speak of "superimagination" in connection with this project? 13. What facts were there to prove that the plan for the electrification of the country was being successfully put into practice? 14. When was the Kizelov hydro-electric power station commissioned? 15. What electric power stations were commissioned in 1925? 16. When was the State Planning Commission set up? 17. On whose recommendation was Krzhizhanovsky appointed chairman of the Commission? 18. Why was it important to introduce planning in the country's national economy?

Ex. 42. Retell the following in English.

АТОМ УЧИТСЯ РАБОТАТЬ

«Не входи!» Надпись весьма категорична. Но я смело вхожу в лабораторию. Стрелка индикатора, укрепленного на лацкане белого халата, абсолютно спокойна.

То, что найдет геолог, часто бывает загадкой, даже если он нашел то, что искал. Сколько руда содержит металла или минерала? Насколько велико месторождение? Ответ на эти вопросы будет получен в лаборатории. В большинстве случаев проводится химический анализ, который известен еще с древних времен. Хотя методы его менялись, но все-таки он занимает пока часы, а то и дни-

И вот передо мной первый электронный циклотрон с детектирующим устройством.

Главной целью лаборатории, созданной десять лет назад, был и остается поиск методов анализа руд одновременно на многие элементы. Наиболее быстро и точно это можно сделать с помощью радиоактивного облучения. Новый циклотрон определяет одновременно и с большой точностью количественное содержание в руде нескольких элементов.

Так, шаг за шагом, усилиями ученых мирный атом все глубже входит в нашу жизнь.

to serve the needs of man; No admittance; boldly; a geologist; to remain a mystery; ore; to contain; a deposit; an electronic cyclotron with a detecting device; to test ore for elements; radioactive irradiation; to establish the exact amount of smth in smth; step by step.

Ex. 43. Read and retell the following. Use the text as a starting point in speaking of Soviet successes in space research.

108 MINUTES

Gagarin lay strapped down* in his seat in a tunnel of instruments, each one humming, clicking, buzzing, flashing. It was zero plus 100 seconds, and the pressure** was getting less. To his left, without moving his head, which felt as though it was bursting, he read the altimeter: 7,000 metres. Another five seconds ticked by. Now he was higher than any birds had ever flown, speeding upwards faster than any man had travelled.

9.11 Moscow time. Gagarin had left the Earth's atmosphere. The second stage had separated and fallen away. Temperature and speed dropped sharply. He was in orbit.

Gagarin pulled his body towards the cabin window and the light beyond. "I can see the Earth in a haze.*** Feeling fine." He added, after a second look, "How beautiful..."

Now he was able to move for the first time, and he loosened his straps. At once his body rose from the seat and he was floating.**** Already he had been in a state of zero gravity, in flight,***** longer than any man had experienced. To him it meant nothing; there was no unpleasantness, nothing unexpected.

Outside Vostok there was complete silence, absolute silence, as the ship, now a satellite, fell around the Earth like a stone dropping down a bottomless well.******

10.15. He reported: "Over Africa." At 10.16 a red light went on to let him know that he would be going down in ten minutes. Quickly he checked his instruments again, reported once more that all was well.

Even firmly strapped in, Gagarin felt the atmosphere around him in the cabin change. Overload******* was greater than on the way up; the pressure was painful in the extreme. Instruments began to swim in front of his eyes, but through it all the clock was seen ... 10.27. There were twenty-eight minutes to go. Then he was warned by orange lights and radio to prepare for landing. Gagarin felt a powerful push on the chest as the parachutes opened up high above the capsule.

Two women working in the fields were staring at the sky. The dot******** grew larger, changing from black to white. Frightened but determined, they ran towards the object as it floated over the trees and hit the earth in the middle of a field. As they ran a door opened and a head appeared, followed by a body in a sky-blue suit. Gagarin smiled and called:"Hallo, give me a hand." At the realization of what they had seen one of the women burst into giggling, while

---

* привязанный (ремнями)
** давление
*** дымка
**** парить
***** полет
****** колодец
******* перегрузка
******** точка

the other almost collapsed with shock. A man arrived and shook Gagarin's hand. The little party was still standing, looking at each other with delight, when the first car came speeding up ...

Ex. 44. Use the following words and phrases in situations.

1. Making the Atom Serve the Needs of Man

to establish a research centre; leadings-scientists; to take part (in); to carry out research work; to make experiments; to study the possibilities of using the atom for scientific and industrial purposes; to aim (at); the peaceful uses of atomic power; to develop in two directions; power (nuclear power stations and motors) and non-power (the use of radioactive substances and their radiation in industry and science); to build the world's first industrial nuclear power station (in 1954); a gramme of uranium 235; to produce during fission as much energy as 2.5 tons of the best coal; the daily amount used; to be equal to 30 grammes; a cheap way of producing electrical energy; to design bigger nuclear power stations; to use

2. Research Work

to carry out research in the field of; to make a study of the problem; to make experiments; to have to do (with); to be successful; to establish important facts; judging by; to come round to thinking; to be worth; to go into details; to make several observations; to come to the conclusion; to put the project into practice; beyond doubt; to be convinced; an important discovery

3. The Man Who Foresaw ...

the brilliant Russian scientist Vladimir Ivanovich Vernadsky; to l-'ve a long and active life; to become famous all over the world; to solve L'mdreds of important problems; to develop new sciences; to develop the theory of neosphere; to argue that; to be part of cosmos; to be the first to explain the role of man on our planet; to warn smb that ...; to approach a turning point in the life of man; to foresee great changes; to live in an atomic age; to use the power of atomic energy; to be in the hands of man; to have possible effects; to be the duty of scientists; to direct the efforts of scientists in the right channels; to be responsible for the results; to make science serve the needs of man

4. What Makes a Good Specialist

to believe what one is doing; to see one's aim clearly; to be convinced of smth; to be firm in one's principles; not to be put off by difficulties; to make an experiment; to be observant; to give constant attention to smth; not to expose oneself to unnecessary risks; to check the results of the experiment; to take all

the factors into account; to draw the right conclusion; to go on with one's research; to be satisfied with the results.

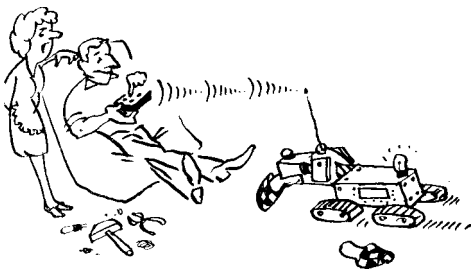
5. A Business Appointment

to have some problem to solve; to need smb's advice; to telephone to inquire about smth; to make an appointment with smb; to fix the time; to introduce oneself; to state the purpose of one's visit; in the course of the discussion; to discover; to have a different opinion on the subject; to use the argument that ..., to draw smb's attention (to); to explain one's attitude (towards); to be convincing; to come down on sinb's side; in conclusion; to admit; to arrive at a sensible solution

6. A Business Interview

to expect a visitor coming to see smb; to arrange for the interview-through the secretary; to be made an offer; to sound rather promising; to get interested in smth; to ask for additional information; to be satisfied with the terms; to talk the matter over; to discuss the details; to agree about the terms and conditions; to be fair; to fix prices; to be reasonable; to attend to smth without delay

Ex. 45. Tell the story of each of the pictures.



to be keen on cybernetics; to design a robot; the latest achievements in science and technology; remote control; to push buttons; to bring smb down to earth.

to sell the family car; to go out of fashion; to look around for a second-hand spaceship; safe; easy to handle; a week-end trip.

Ex. 46. Subjects for oral and written composition.

1. The life story of a great Soviet physicist.
2. An important discovery in physics, chemistry or biology
3. A new science that has appeared in recent years.
4. Science in our life.
5. Soviet successes in scientific development.
6. Soviet scientists work for peace.
7. Retell the story as if you were a) Curtis; b) Johnson; c) the Establishment Officer; d) Johnson's wife.
8. Write a summary of the story.
9. Say whether you think Curtis was partial or impartial in his attitude towards Johnson.
10. Express your own opinion about the incident. Say who you think was actually responsible for the tragic occurrence and if it could have been prevented.
11. Try to imagine what happened further—after Johnson came out of hospital.
12. Speak on the qualities that you believe are necessary to make a good research worker.
13. Explain why it is important at all times to be master of one's emotions.

Lesson Eight

Text: "The Case for the Defence", G. Greene[1]
Grammar: Modal Verbs (contd.) May (might)

The Case For the Defence[2]

It was the strangest murder trial I ever attended. They named it the Peckham murder in the headlines, though Northwood Street, where the old woman was found murdered, was not strictly speaking in Peck-ham. This was not one of those cases of circumstantial evidence in which you feel the jurymen's[3] anxiety — because mistakes HAVE been made. No, this murderer was all but found with the body; no one present when the Crown counsel[4] outlined his case believed that the man in the dock[5] stood any chance at all.

He was a heavy stout man with bulging bloodshot eyes. All his muscles seemed to be in his thighs. Yes, an ugly customer[6] one you wouldn't forget in a hurry — and that was an important point because the Crown[4] proposed to call four witnesses[7] who hadn't forgotten him, who had seen him hurrying away from the little red villa in Northwood Street. The clock had just struck two in the morning.

Mrs. Salmon in 15 Northwood Street had been unable to sleep; she heard a door click shut and thought it was her own gate. So she went to the window and saw Adams (that was his name) on the steps of Mrs. Parker's house. He had just come out and he was wearing gloves. He had a hammer in his hand and she saw him drop it into the laurel bushes by the front gate. But before he moved away, he had looked up—at her window. The fatal instinct that tells a man when he is watched exposed him in the light of a street-lamp to her gaze — his eyes full of horrifying and brutal fear, like an animal's when you raise a whip.

I talked afterwards to Mrs. Salmon, who naturally after the astonishing verdict[8] went in fear herself. As I imagine did all the witnesses — Henry MacDougall, who had been driving home from Benfleet late and nearly ran Adams down at the corner of Northwocd Street. Adams was walking in the middle of the road looking dazed. And old Mrs. Wheeler, who lived next door to Mrs. Parker, at No 12, and was wakened by a noise — like a chair falling — through the thin-as-paper villa wall, and got up and looked out of the window, just as Mrs. Salmon had done, saw Adams' back and, as he turned, those bulging eyes. In Laurel Avenue he had been seen by yet another witness — his luck was badly out; he might as well have committed the crime in broad daylight.

"I understand," counsel said, "that the defence proposes to plead mistaken

identity.[9] Adams' wife will tell you that he was with her at two in the morning on February 14, but after you have heard the witnesses for the Crown and examined carefully the features of the prisoner, I do not think you will be prepared to admit the possibility of a mistake."

It was all over, you would have said, but the hanging.

After the formal evidence[10] had been given by the policeman who had found the body and the surgeon who examined it, Mrs. Salmon was called. She was the ideal witness, with her slight Scotch accent and her expression of honesty, care and kindness.

The prosecuting counsel brought the story gently out. She spoke very firmly. There was no malice in her, and no sense of importance at standing there in the Central Criminal Court[11] with a judge in scarlet[12] hanging on her words and the reporters writing them down. Yes, she said, and then she had gone downstairs and rung up the police station.

"And do you see the man here in court?"[13]

She looked straight across at the big man in the dock, who stared hard at her with his Pekingese eyes[14] without emotion.

"Yes," she said, "there he is."

"You are quite certain?"

She said simply, "I couldn't be mistaken, Sir."

It was all as easy as that.

"Thank you, Mrs. Salmon."

Counsel for the defence rose to cross-examine. If you had reported as many murder trials as I have you would have known beforehand what line he would take. And I was right, up to a point.

"Now, Mrs. Salmon, you must remember that a man's life may depend on your evidence."

"I do remember it, sir."

"Is your eyesight good?"

"I have never had to wear spectacles, sir."

"You are a woman of fifty-five?"

"Fifty-six, sir."

"And the man you saw was on the other side of the road?"

"Yes, sir."

"And it was two o'clock in the morning. You must have remarkable eyes, Mrs. Salmon?"

"No, sir. There was moonlight, and when the man looked up, he had the lamplight on his face."

"And you have no doubt whatever that the man you saw is the prisoner?"

I couldn't make out what he was at. He couldn't have expected any other answer than the one he got.

"None whatever, sir. It isn't a face one forgets."

Counsel took a look round the court for a moment. Then he said, "Do you

mind, Mrs. Salmon, examining again the people in court? No, not the prisoner. Stand up, please, Mr. Adams," and there at the back of the court, with thick stout body and muscular legs and a pair of bulging eyes, was the exact image of the man in the dock. He was even dressed the same — tight blue suit and striped tie.

"Now think very carefully, Mrs. Salmon. Can you still swear that the man you saw drop the hammer in Mrs. Parker's garden was the prisoner — and not this man, who is his twin brother?"

Of course she couldn't. She looked from one to the other and didn't say a word.

There the big brute sat in the dock with his legs crossed and there he stood too at the back of the court and they both stared at Mrs. Salmon. She shook her head.

What we saw then was the end of the case. There wasn't a witness prepared to answer that it was the man charged with murder he'd seen. And the brother? He had his alibi,[15] too; he was with his wife.

And so the case was dismissed; the man was acquitted for lack of evidence. But whether — if he did the murder and not his brother — he was punished or not, I don't know. That extraordinary day had an extraordinary end. I followed Mrs. Salmon out of court and we got caught in the crowd who were waiting, of course, for the twins. The police tried to drive the crowd away, but all they could do was keep the roadway clear for traffic. I learned later that they tried to get the twins to leave by a back way, but they wouldn't. One of them — no one knew which — said, "I've been acquitted, haven't I?" and they walked bang out of the front entrance. Then it happened. I don't know how; though I was only six feet away. The crowd moved and somehow one of the twins got pushed on to the road right in front of a bus.

He gave a squeal like a rabbit and that was all; he was dead, his skull smashed just as Mrs. Parker's had been. Divine vengeance?[16] I wish I knew. There was the other Adams getting on his feet from beside the body and looking straight over at Mrs. Salmon. He was crying, but whether he was the guilty or the innocent man, nobody will ever be able to tell. But if you were Mrs. Salmon, could you sleep at night?

NOTES

1. **Graham Greene**, an English writer, born in 1904. Educated at Balliol College, Oxford. He wrote for *The Times* and *The Spectator*. His first novel *The Man Within* appeared in 1929. He established his reputation as a writer with his fourth novel *Stamboul Train* (1932). After a visit to Mexico in 1938 he wrote *The Power and the Glory*. Among his post war works are: *The Heart of the Matter, The Quiet American, Our Man in Havana, The End of the Affair*. In all he has published some thirty novels, plays and collections of stories. The greater part of his novels has been screened.

2. **The Case for the Defence** — дело, выигранное защитой

3. **juryman**—juror, a member of the jury. The jury is a body of 12 persons who decide in a court of justice whether the person accused of a crime is guilty or innocent

4. **the Crown counsel**: counsel (lawyer) at a criminal trial representing the Crown, or, in other words, the prosecution обвинитель, прокурор (на суде)

5. **the dock**: place for a criminal in a criminal court; the man in the dock—the prisoner

6. **customer** *(coll)*: fellow, chap — тип, личность, субъект; **an ugly** (rough, slippery, etc.) **customer**: опасный (грубый, скользкий и т. д.) тип

7. When a witness is called to give evidence he, with his hand on the Book (the Bible), gives an oath (клятва): "I swear by All Mighty God that the evidence that I shall give shall be the truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth."

8. **verdict**: decision reached by a jury of "Guilty" or "Not Guilty" on a question of fact.

9. **to plead mistaken identity**: выдвинуть аргумент о неправильном опознании личности

10.**formal evidence**—показания официальных лиц

11.**the Central Criminal Court**, or the Old Bailey (from the name of the street where it is situated) is the chief criminal court in London. The sessions are held once a month, and four courts are held at a time. The trials are open to the public.

12.**a judge in scarlet**: судья в красной мантии

13.**court, as market, school, hospital, prison**, etc, when meaning a place used for the purpose for which it was primarily intended, is **not** used with the definite article. Compare: 1. The matter was decided **in court**. Вопрос был решен на суде (в судебном порядке). 2. **The court** was full. Зал суда был полон. 3. It was a decision of **the court**. Это было решение суда (судьи, коллегии судей).

14. **Pekingese eyes**: выпуклые глаза, как у китайского мопса (порода собак)

15. **alibi** [‘ælibai]: the argument or proof that one was in another place (when a crime was committed).

16. **Divine vengeance**: провидение, божья кара

VOCABULARY

defend *vt* 1, защищать, оборонять to defend peace (freedom, one's country, one's rights, a point of view, etc.); to defend oneself (smb/smth) against/from smb/smth. 2. *юр*. защищать (в суде) to defend a case; He had a lawyer to defend him. defence *n* 1. защита, оборона national defence государственная оборона He gave his life in defence of his country. 2. защита

(также юр.) He had nothing to say in (his) defence. **Phr**. Counsel **for** the defence защитник обвиняемого

trial *n* судебный процесс, судебное разбирательство The trial of the criminal lasted two weeks. He was on trial for robbery **Phr**. hold a trial вести судебное разбирательство; try *vt* судить, слушать судебное разбирательство to try (to hear) a case in court He was tried for murder (breaking the law, etc.)

strict *a* строгий; требовательный a strict order (rule, etc.); strict parents, etc. strictly *adv* строго The instructions should be strictly observed. strictly confidential (legal, etc.) строго секретно (в соответствии с законом и т. д.) **Phr**. strictly speaking строго говоря

circumstance *(usu. pl.)* обстоятельство, случай, факт a particular (unforeseen, etc.) circumstance; the circumstances of one's life (an accident, etc.) **Phr**. in (under) the circumstances при сложившихся обстоятельствах; in (under) no circumstances ни при каких условиях, никогда

evidence *(sing.) n* показание/-я, улика/-и His evidence against (for) the man was convincing. **Phr**. circumstantial evidence косвенные улики; direct evidence прямые улики

anxiety *n* тревога, беспокойство, опасение They waited for the results of the operation with anxiety, anxious *a* 1. тревожный, беспокойный; озабоченный an anxious day (time; look, etc.); **Phr**. be (feel) anxious (about smb/smth) беспокоиться (о ком-л/чем-л) 2. страстно желающий (чего-л) He is anxious for success. They were anxious to win the game.

witness *n* свидетель; очевидец He was called in court as a witness for the prosecution. She happened to be the only witness to the accident. witness *vt* 1. давать показания (на суде) to witness against (for) smb 2. быть свидетелем чего-л to witness an accident (a scene, etc.)

feature *n* 1. *pl*. черты лица (ir)regular (sharp, soft, remarkable, etc.) features 2. особенность, характерная черта a feature of one's character (a writer's style, a country's economy, etc.)

slight *a* незначительный, легкий, слабый a slight accent (mistake, doubt, difference, hesitation, etc.)

beforehand *adv* заранее, вперед; заблаговременно It was thoughtful of you to have made all the arrangements beforehand.

depend *vt/vi* 1. зависеть Great Britain depends on other countries for food products. Everything depended on the results of the experiment. 2. полагаться, рассчитывать Can I depend on this railway timetable? He depended on us to help him. (independence *n* (независимость; dependent *a* зависимый Children are usually dependent on their parents. independent *a* независимый to be **of** independent character (way of thinking, etc.); She is independent **of** others in her ideas (judgement, taste, etc.)

remarkable *a* замечательный, удивительный a remarkable person (scientist, discovery, victory, event, feature, speech, etc.)

accuse *vt* обвинять to accuse smb of a crime (dishonesty, breaking the law,

etc.); accusation *n* обвинение **Phr**. make (bring) an accusation against smb выдвинуть обвинение против кого-л; accused *n* обвиняемый

make out (made) *vt* понять, разгадать; разобрать, разглядеть I can't make him out. It was difficult to make out the signature on the paper.

tight *a* тесный (о платье, обуви) a tight coat (suit, etc.) The jacket is tight across the shoulders.

charge *vt* обвинять to charge smb with robbery (murder, etc.); charge *n* обвинение What is the charge **against** the man? He was arrested on a charge of murder. **Phr**. bring a charge (**of** smth) against smb выдвинуть против кого-л обвинение (в чем-л)

swear (swore, sworn) *vt/vi* 1. клясться; присягать He swore that he had told the truth. I swear to be frank with you. **Phr**. swear an oath показывать под присягой; давать клятву swear in a witness привести свидетеля к присяге 2. ругаться, ругать (кого-л) Don't swear at him.

dismiss *vt* 1. увольнять (с работы) to dismiss a worker (a clerk, a servant, etc.) 2. прекращать (судебное дело и т. п.); отклонять to dismiss a case (a charge, a complaint, a subject, etc.) 3. гнать от себя (мысль,. заботы и т. п.) to dismiss a thought (a suspicion, worries, etc.)

acquit *vt* оправдывать (в суде) He was acquitted of the crime, acquittal *n* оправдание (по суду)

lack *n* недостаток, нужда; отсутствие чего-л lack of experience (knowledge, information, time, tact, patience, etc.) **Phr**. for lack of из-за отсутствия, из-за недостатка; lack *vt* испытывать недостаток; не иметь to lack knowledge (experience, etc.)

punish *vt* наказывать He should be punished for disobedience (breaking the rules, etc.)

guilt *n* вина, виновность His guilt was not difficult to establish. guilty *a* 1. виновный; преступный He was tried and found guilty. He-was guilty of murder. **Phr**. plead (not) guilty (не) признавать себя виновным 2. виноватый a guilty look (feeling, etc.)

innocent *n* невиновный He was proved innocent of the crime, innocence *n* невиновность His innocence was beyond, doubt.

WORD COMBINATIONS

all but почти, едва не

stand no chance не иметь надежды

in broad daylight средь бела дня

commit a murder (a crime, a mistake, etc.) совершить убийство (преступление, ошибку и т. п.); **commit suicide** покончить жизнь самоубийством

hang on smb's words внимательно слушать кого-л

up to a point до некоторой степени, почти

be at smth добиваться чего-л, клонить к чему-л

EXERCISES ON THE TEXT

Ex. 1. Answer the following questions.

1. What case was being tried in court? 2. Why did it look as if the prisoner's guilt was proved even before the actual hearing of the case had started? 3. What witnesses did the Crown propose to call? 4. What was Mrs. Salmon's evidence? 5. What was Henry MacDougall's story? 6. What did old Mrs Wheeler have to say at the trial? 7. Why did the prosecuting counsel along with all those present in court believe that there could be no mistake as to the identity of the murderer? 8. Who was the first of the witnesses to be cross-examined by the defence counsel? 9. What made Mrs Salmon the ideal witness? 10. Why couldn't Mrs Salmon or, in fact, any of the witnesses swear that the man in the dock was the murderer? 11. What had made it possible for the defence counsel to plead mistaken identity? 12. What alibis did the twin brothers have? 13. How did it happen that the jury returned a verdict of "not guilty" though murder had actually been committed by one of the brothers? '14. Why did the twins insist on leaving the court building by the front door? 15. How did it happen that one of the twins got pushed under a bus? 16. Why was it impossible to tell whether the innocent or the guilty man had been killed in the accident? 17. Which of the twins do you think was killed? 18. Was there actually any reason for Mrs Salmon to be afraid for her life after one of the twins had got killed in the accident?

Ex. 2. Find in the text the English for:

а) 1. строго говоря; 2. изложить дело в общих чертах; 3. отвратительный тип; 4. немаловажное обстоятельство; 5. два часа ночи; 6. при свете уличного фонаря; 7. животный ужас; 8. чуть не сбить кого-то машиной; 9. с остановившимся взглядом; 10. идти посередине улицы; 11. ему явно не везло; 12. средь бела дня; 13. внимательно рассмотреть; 14. черты лица; 15. допустить возможность ошибки; 16. легкий акцент; 17. с выражением честности, озабоченности и доброты на лице; 18. говорить уверенно; 19. ловить каждое слово; 20. смотреть в упор; 21. заранее предположить; 22. занять позицию; 23. необыкновенно острое зрение; 24. не понимать к чему кто-то клонит; 25. костюм в обтяжку; 26. галстук в полоску; 27. переводить взгляд с одного на другого; 28. сидеть нога на ногу; 29. покачать головой; 30. попасть в толпу; 31. расчистить проезжую часть дороги;

б) 1. дело, выигранное защитой; 2. судебный процесс по делу об убийстве; 3. присутствовать на суде; 4. косвенные улики; 5. присяжные заседатели; 6. прокурор; 7. скамья подсудимых; 8. вызвать свидетелей; 9. решение присяжных; 10. совершить преступление; 11. выдвинуть довод об

ошибке в установлении личности; 12. свидетель обвинения; 13. свидетельские показания официальных лиц; 14. уголовный суд; 15. судья; 16. полицейский участок; 17. в зале суда; 18. защитник; 19. подвергать перекрестному допросу; 20. свидетельские показания; 21. подсудимый; 22. присягнуть; 23. алиби; 24. оправдать за недостатком улик; 25. совершить убийство; 26. понести наказание; 27. невиновный человек.

Ex. 3. Give the four forms of the verbs:

find, feel, get, forget, hurry, strike, wear, raise, drive, commit, admit, bring, hang, rise, swear, acquit, try.

Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences using "might as well+-perfect infinitive".

1. Мы затратили столько времени на поиски такси, что мы с тем же успехом могли бы поехать туда и на автобусе. 2. Не знаю чего вы добились, споря с ним. Вы могли бы с тем же успехом и помолчать. 3. Лекарство совершенно не помогло мне. Я с тем же успехом мог пить бы воду вместо него. 4. Он совершенно меня не слушал. Я мог бы с тем же успехом говорить со стенкой. 5. Встреча была для них полным разочарованием. Они с тем же успехом могли бы не видеться еще десять лет. 6. Непонятно, зачем вы приехали в спортлагерь, если вы не хотите идти с нами в горы. Вы с тем же успехом могли бы остаться дома. 7. Я не получил от поездки за город никакого удовольствия. Я с тем же успехом мог бы остаться в городе. 8. Мы с тем же успехом могли бы и не ходить (пропустить) на эту лекцию. Она нам ничего не дала. 9. Мы бы могли с тем же успехом и не ходить на этот концерт. Мы не получили никакого удовольствия.

Ex. 5. Give the meaning of "but" and "but-phrases". Express the following without using "but" or "but-phrases'".

1. You shouldn't have taken his words too close to heart. It was nothing **but** a joke. 2. He was **all but** killed in the accident. 3. You can't expect her to know about such things, she's **but** a child. 4. I **could not but** agree with him. 5. **But for** his help I would have never managed the task, 6. **But** for a few details the picture of what had occurred in his absence was complete. 7. I was in no position to choose and could **but** accept the terms. 8. Everybody seems to know it **but** you. 9. He could **but** try to convince us that he had acted with the best of intentions. 10. There is **but** one man who can answer your question.

Ex. 6. Translate the following into English, using "but" and "but-phrases".

1. До отъезда оставалось **всего лишь** два дня. 2. Мы **не могли не** восхищаться той твердостью и решительностью, которые он проявил в

этих довольно трудных обстоятельствах. 3. Он мог **лишь** пытаться доказать свою правоту. 4. Она **чуть** не расплакалась, узнав о категорическом отказе. 5. Вначале это было **лишь** подозрение, которое затем перешло в уверенность. 6. Когда она вернулась домой, то уже весь багаж, **за исключением** нескольких коробок, был отправлен на станцию. 7. Оставалось **лишь еще** одно обстоятельство, которое требовало выяснения. 8. Оказалось, что все уже знали о его новом назначении, **кроме** меня. 9. **Если бы не** его предупреждение, то я бы мог оказаться в очень неприятном положении.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBS

Ex. 7. Study the following phrases. Recall the sentences in which they are used in the text and use them when retelling the text.

in the headlines; in the dock; **in** court; hurry (move, step, run, etc.) **away from**; **in** fear; run smb **down**: **in** broad daylight; speak **with** an accent; hang **on** smb's words; **up to** a point; depend **on** smth/smb; make **out** smth/smb; **at** the back **of**; look **from** one **to** the other; **for** lack **of** evidence (knowledge, money, etc.); get caught **in** the crowd (the rain, the rush hour, etc.); leave **by** a back way (door); get **on** one's feet.

Ex. 8. Fill in the blanks with prepositions or adverbs.

A. 1. Good health depends ... good food, regular hours and fresh air. 2. Though gentle ... manner and speech, she was a woman ... firm and independent character. 3. I'd been correct ... my suspicions ... the sad role he had played ... the incident, but only ... ... a point, as I was later to find ... .4. The child had to be taken ... hospital and the mother was beside herself ... anxiety. 5. Anxious ... the success ... our team we cheered them as loudly as we could. 6. She was strict but fair ... the children, so when she happened to punish them ... disobedience they didn't seem to mind it much. 7. We all knew that when the old man was ... ... temper, we'd better keep ... ... him. 8. His luck was .... there was no doubt ... it. He never seemed to succeed ... anything he did any more. 9. The boy was pale and weak ... lack ... fresh air and exercise. 10. The stranger spoke ... such a heavy accent that ... times I caught myself wondering if I'd ever be able to make ... what he wanted. 11. He was still uncertain ... the line he should take ... defending his point of view. 12. He would have never cleared himself ... the suspicion if a witness hadn't turned ... ... the last moment to prove his alibi. 13. He could not have acted differently ... the circumstances. 14. She was ashamed to admit she was still dependent ... her parents ... help. 15. I asked him to repeat his request, I couldn't make ... what he was ... . 16. There were several cases ... scarlet fever ... our neighbourhood and we lived ... fear that our children might have it, too. 17. You could have heard a pin drop ... court when the counsel ...

the defence said: "I firmly believe the accused to be innocent ... the crime. I'll do everything ... my power to see that he is acquitted." 18. I wonder what everybody finds ... him, What is there so remarkable ... him that people will hang ... his every word? 19. ... an attempt to clear himself ... suspicion he said he had an alibi ... the time ... the accident. 20. It was called a "Hit and Run" case ... the headlines. The article was ... a drunken driver who ran ... a cyclist and drove ... ... the place ... the accident never stopping to give the man help or report ... the police. 21. It's quite unbelievable that she shouldn't have said anything ... her defence. 22. What he said was, ... fact, an admission ... guilt.

B. SIR CHARLES SEES THE HOUND OF THE BASKERVILLES

Holmes was hanging ... the Doctor's words, interrupting him only to bring ... this or that detail ... the case.

Finally Dr. Mortimer said: "These are the public facts, Mr. Holmes, ... connection ... the death ... Sir Charles. Now permit me to tell you some private ones."

"I well remember driving ... ... his house ... the evening, some three weeks before the fatal event and finding him ... the steps ... the house.

"As I stood talking ... front ... him I saw his eyes fixed ... something over my shoulder ... an expression ... terror. I turned ... just ... time to catch a glimpse ... something, which I took ... a large black calf, moving away on the other side ... the road. I couldn't make ... what it was. Sir Charles was so excited and frightened that I hurried ... the direction ... the wood where the animal had been and looked around ... it. It was gone, however, and the incident appeared to make the worst impression ... Sir Charles' mind. It gave him quite a shock and I felt he wouldn't be able to get ... it ... some time.

"So I stayed ... him all the evening and it was ... this occasion that he told me the legend ... the Hound of the Baskervilles. I wouldn't have mentioned this small episode but for Sir Charles' tragic death. His body was found lying flat ... the ground .... first I didn't observe any footprints ... the ground ... the body. But some little distance ... I saw fresh and clear footprints ... a gigantic hound."

(after "The Hound of the Baskervilles", by A. Conan Doyle)

Ex. 9. Give the English for the following phrases, using the preposition "of" in its different meanings. Use the phrases in sentences of your own.

I. а) город Москва; порт Севастополь; деревня Холмогоры; остров Шпицберген; озеро Байкал;

б) президент страны; председатель комиссии; начальник отдела; автор книги; редактор газеты; столица республики;

в) имя владельца; роль Гамлета; портрет героя; цель визита; обложка книги; заголовок статьи; середина дороги; конец года; другая

сторона улицы; свет фонаря; размер ковра; цвет материала.

II. а) запах цветов; вкус меда;

б) чашка чая; стакан молока; килограмм конфет; пригорошня ягод; тарелка супа; кусок хлеба (сахара, мыла); коробка спичек; ящик апельсинов.

III. а) сделанный из металла; построенный из кирпича; сшитый из шелка;

б) человек слова (действия); человек с характером.

IV. а) из всех вещей (книг, фильмов); из моих друзей; один из трех; каждый из них; они оба; все остальные; лучший (худший, первый) из людей; основная часть группы (студентов);

б) малое (большое) количество чего-л; множество; десятки тысяч; сотни книг.

V. а) знать (слышать, говорить, думать, иметь представление) о чем-л;

б) быть уверенным (не уверенным) в чем-л; уверять (убеждать) кого-л в чем-л; быть убежденным в чем-л; подозревать кого-л в чем-л.

VI. избавиться от кого-л/чего-л; очистить от снега; вылечить от болезни.

VII. мило (внимательно, любезно, предусмотрительно, глупо) с чьей-л стороны.

VIII. гордиться чем-л; любить что-л; быть независимым от кого-л; стыдиться чего-л; бояться кого-л/чего-л.

MISCELLANEOUS PHRASES

воспользоваться советом; ожидать от кого-л/что-л; обвинять кого-л в чем-л; фотографировать кого-л/что-л; позаботиться о билетах; возможность сделать что-л; полный надежд; отсутствие знаний (опыта); присутствие духа; представлять интерес (ценность, важность)

EXERCISES IN LEXICOLOGY

Ex. 10. Recast the following sentences, using adjectives with appropriate negative prefixes "in-, im-, il-, ir-" instead, of the words in bold type. Make all other necessary changes.

1. I heard the woman repeat her request a little louder, she was obviously losing **patience**. 2. Her English, though not **perfect**, was extremely pleasing to the ear. 3. He had always worked in bursts, never keeping **regular** hours. 4. I don't believe he can be of any help to you, he's new here and not **experienced** in matters of this kind. 5. It was suspected that his activities weren't strictly **legal**. 6. He seemed lost in thought and not **attending** to his work. 7. His arguments struck me as lacking in **logic**. 8. Such behaviour he knew was not **permissible**, but he had lost control of himself. 9. The picture of what had led to the accident

was still far from **complete**. 10. She was not **observant** and noticed little of what went on around her. 11. There was no **direct** evidence against the prisoner and, therefore, no **possibility** of proving his guilt. 12. She was going to work Monday next. She would no longer be **dependent** on her parents for a living. 13. The girl obviously lacked a sense of **responsibility**, she was forever leaving things to chance. 14. Dealing with a man who was not **consistent** in his ideas was a trying experience.

Ex. 11. Paraphrase the following sentences using a noun with the suffix "-al" instead of a verb. Make other necessary changes.

1. When are the delegates to the conference expected to **arrive**? 2. The doctor insisted that the boy should be **removed** from school on account of poor health. 3. It was not difficult to guess the reason why she **refused** to join their company. 4. Everybody must have been surprised to hear the prisoner **deny** his guilt. 5. The prisoner was expected to be **acquitted**. 6. The case was to be **tried** on Tuesday.

Ex. 12. Give words of the same root in Russian. Compare the meaning.

jury, laurel, fatal, instinct, verdict, formal, ideal, accent, criminal, emotion, muscular, alibi, extraordinary.

Ex. 13. Translate the following into English, using a suitable phrasal verb from the list below.

make out (3); bring out; turn out (3); keep out; set out; call out; find out; leave out (2); point out; move out; hold out; pick out; write out; hand out; cut out; go out; come out

1. Когда я наконец собрался к ним с визитом, то **оказалось**, что они уже **выехали из старой квартиры**. Нового же адреса никто не знал. 2. Увидев меня, она с радостной улыбкой **протянула** мне руку. 3. Взяв в руки ножницы, ребенок начал **вырезать** картинки. 4. Начальник экспедиции **указал** на трудности, с которыми группе придется встретиться в ходе работы. 5. Он рассказал о случившемся в нескольких словах, **выпустив** все подробности. 6. Вы случайно не знаете, когда **выходит** книга молодого поэта Сидорова? 7. Все **оказалось** значительно проще, чем мы предполагали. Руководитель группы **называл** фамилии, а его помощник **раздавал** бланки, которые мы тут же заполняли. 8. Ему поручили **выяснить**, почему свидетель отказался давать показания на суде. 9. Иногда бывает очень трудно **разобраться** в человеке. 10. Он подумал, что напрасно не **выписал** даты, они бы лучше запомнились. 11. По-моему, они правильно **выбрали** актера на главную роль в пьесе. Ему удалось выявить те черты в характере героя, которые особенно важны для

понимания его поступков. 12. В поисках билета он **вывернул** все карманы. 13. Неожиданно **погас** свет. 14. Она с трудом **разобрала** адрес на конверте. 15. Когда же вы **отправляетесь** в путь? 16. Он подошел к концу разговора и сначала никак не мог **понять**, о чем идет речь. 17. По причине, которую ему так и не удалось установить, его фамилия **не значилась в списке** (оказалась выпущенной). 18. Его сразу же предупредили, чтобы он **не вмешивался** (оставался в стороне).

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 14. Fill in the blanks with a suitable word in the correct form. Translate the sentences into Russian.

anxious; beforehand; circumstance; defence; to depend (2); dependent; evidence; feature (2); guilt; guilty; independence; innocent; to lack; to propose; punishment; remarkable; slight: strict; strictly (2); to swear (2); to try (2); witness

1. Under the Soviet law the accused person is believed ... until his ... is proved by the prosecution. 2. Cases in Soviet courts are ... by a judge and two people's assessors. 3. Soviet justice aims at helping'a person back to the life of honest work, but it is strict in its ... of persons who are a menace to socialist order. 4. It was in 1972 that Bangladesh finally succeeded in winning its .... 5. Many of the new states that have appeared on the African continent are economically ... on foreign countries. 6. The transistor radio, that great wonder of modern technology, often no bigger than a matchbox, is surely one of the most ... inventions made by man. 7. Noise is one of the most unpleasant ... of life in a big modern city. 8. Though the ... seemed to point to the accused, the defence lawyer remained convinced of his ... . 9. He obviously ... the self-discipline so important for a man ... to succeed. 10. I have very often had the chance to observe that the motor-car brings out a man's worst ... . People who are normally quiet and gentle in manner may become unrecognizable when they are behind a wheel. They shout and..., they are ill-mannered, rough and aggressive. Present drinking and driving laws should be made ... . After all, the world is for people, not motor-cars. 11. The meaning of a word often ... on the context, the circumstances or the situation. 12. The details of the trip had been arranged ..., and he could take things easy for a while. 13. In due course the accussd was ... and found ... of having committed the crime. 14. But for a ... accent her English was perfect. 15. People often say that happiness is an attitude to life which ... partly on circumstances and partly on one's own character. 16. He always. stuck ... to his own business never showing the ... interest in what was going on around him. 17. The inspector ... that immediate steps should be taken to clear up the ... of the accident. The first thing to do was to find ..., that is those who had actually seen it happen. 18. For some unaccountable reason the

experiment had gone wrong, though we could all ... that we had ... followed the instructions.

Ex. 15. Paraphrase the following, using words and word combinations from the text. Make all other necessary changes.

to lack; to punish; to swear; to propose; to make out (2); circumstance (2); innocent; guilty; remarkable (2); anxious; tight; slight; slightly (2); beforehand; up to a point; strictly speaking (2)

1. When we left home it was still raining **a little**. 2. You might have let me know about the changes in the arrangements **earlier**. 3. The appearance of another witness at the trial was an unforeseen **development**. 4. I had been mistaken in my judgement of the man, **though not completely**. 5. She hadn't the **least** idea what all the fuss was about. 6. As the day of the trial approached he grew more and more **worried and afraid**. 7. I shouldn't advise you to judge his actions until you know the **facts**. 8. He wasn't disappointed **in the true** sense of the word, may be **a little** annoyed or upset. 9. He is definitely the wrong man to be charged with the task, he **has no** sense of responsibility. 10. At first sight there didn't seem to be anything **out of the ordinary** about the actress. 11. At the trial it was proved that the man **had had no part in the crime**. 12. She wasn't **exactly** anxious, just excited. 13. I couldn't **see** a thing in the darkness. 14. The painter's sense of colour is **marvelous**. 15. He could **put his hand on his heart and say** that he had never let a single word drop about their confidential talk. 16. He **intended** to spend a couple of days in the country. 17. It looked as if she were being **made to suffer** for something she hadn't done. 18. True enough, it was a smart coat, but a little too **close-fitting** for my taste. 19. He **has always been a puzzle** to me.

Ex. 16. Speak on the following topics, using the words and phrases given below.

1. The Man In the Dock

the prisoner; to commit a crime; to be tried for murder; the trial; to be held at the Central Criminal Court; the prisoner's appearance; an important point; a heavy stout man with bulging bloodshot eyes; muscular legs; features (of the face); an ugly customer; to show no signs of worry; to stare hard (at); without emotion; to sit with one's legs crossed; to wear a tight blue suit; a striped tie; to hire a lawyer; to plead not guilty; in spite of the facts; to murder smb in cold blood; to be all but found with the body; to have an alibi; to have one's innocence established; to be acquitted for lack of evidence; to get away with murder

2. Counsel For the Prosecution Presents His Case

to address the judge; the jury; to outline one's case; to present the charges; convincing proofs; to describe the circumstances; direct evidence against smb;

to call four witnesses; to cross-examine smb; to admit no possibility of mistake; to prove the prisoner's guilt beyond reasonable doubt; to conclude one's statement

3. Witnesses For the Prosecution Give Evidence

to be sworn in; to swear to tell the truth; the whole truth, and nothing but the truth; to give evidence at the trial; the witnessbox (stand);

Mrs Salmon: a woman of fifty-six; the ideal witness; a slight Scotch accent; an expression of honesty, care and kindness; to speak firmly; without malice; no sense of importance; to give a detailed account (of); to suffer from insomnia (sleep lessness); in the dead of night; to hear a door click shut; to observe smb; to follow smb's movements; to make out the prisoner's features clearly; to see the look of horrifying and brutal fear in his eyes; to ring up the police station; to identify the murderer; without hesitation; to be as simple as that;

Henry MacDougall: two o'clock in the morning; to be driving home; to all but run down the accused; to see the accused walking in the middle of the road looking dazed;

Mrs Wheeler: a next door neighbour; to be wakened; a noise coming through the thin-as-paper wall; to look out of the window; to see the prisoner's bulging eyes.

4. Events Take an Unexpected Turn

a reporter; to report (cover) trials; frequently; to attend murder trials; to have a lot of experience; to know beforehand what line Defence Counsel may take; to be right, up to a point; to plead mistaken identity; to follow the cross-examination carefully; to be unable to make out what smb is at; to remind Mrs Salmon that a man's life may depend on her evidence; to inquire about Mrs Salmon's eyesight; to invite the witness to examine the people in court; to draw smb's attention to smb; Adam's twin brother; identical twins; to be the exact image of smb; to be dressed the same; to have an alibi; to be unable to tell one brother from the other; to be puzzled; to look from one to the other; to shake; one's head; to be unable to swear to anything; to prove one's point; to win the case

5. The Extraordinary Day Has an Extraordinary End

an astonishing verdict; to be acquitted for lack of evidence; against common sense; an enormous crowd; to refuse to leave by a back way; to insist on leaving the court by the front entrance; to get caught in the crowd; to witness smth; one of the twins; by accident; to get pushed on to the road right in front of a bus; to be unable to tell whether the guilty or the innocent brother was

punished; to live in constant fear

SPECIAL DIFFICULTIES

Ex. 17. Translate the following sentences using "another, other, more, once more, still, yet, else" according to the sense.

1. Было еще одно обстоятельство, которое задержало его отъезд. 2. Какие еще сведения вы хотели бы получить по интересующему вас вопросу? 3. Какие еще достопримечательности вашего города вы могли бы показать нам? 4. Он не знал, что еще можно было бы сказать в свое оправдание. 5. Они все еще обсуждают новый проект, хотя должны были принять по нему решение еще вчера. 6. Вам бы лучше еще раз просмотреть материал перед собеседованием. 7. Дайте мне, пожалуйста, еще кусочек пирога, он очень вкусный. 8. Ему пришлось занять еще денег. 9. Еще нет никакого решения по его делу, т. к. следствие все еще продолжается. 10. Кто еще включен в состав команды? 11. Что еще вы хотели бы сказать в заключение? 12. Когда еще вы смогли бы прочитать нам лекцию по искусству?

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

III. May (might)[1] (in the meaning of uncertain supposition, reproach)

Ex. 18. Study the meaning of the verb "may (might)" and the tense relations expressed by the forms of the infinitive.

uncertain supposition	1. He **may (might) be** at home for all I know. 2. You **may (might)** like the place, who knows? 3. I've got to go. My friend **may (might)** be holding a taxi. 4. The telegram **may[2] (not) have reached** them.	1. **Может быть** он дома, откуда мне знать. 2. **Может быть (возможно**) вам и понравится то место, как знать? 3. Мне нужно идти. Мой друг, **возможно**, держит такси. 4. **Может быть** телеграмма (не) дошла до них.

[1] **might** (the subjunctive of may) doesn't change the meaning, it intensifies uncertainty of supposition.

[2] **might + perfect inf.** in the meaning of uncertain supposition is used in re' Ported speech or in past-time contexts e.g. He said that the telegram might (not) have reached him.

reproach	5. You **might be** more polite to her. 6. You **might have** let me know that the meeting was put off. Why didn't you? 7. Why did you sit in the draught? You **might have** caught a cold.	5. Вы **могли бы** быть с ней повежливее. 6. **Вы могли бы** предупредитьменя, что собрание отложено. Почему вы не сделали этого? 7. Зачем вы сидели на сквозняке? Вы **могли бы** простудиться

Ex. 19. Watch the meaning of the verb "may (might)", translate the sentences into Russian.

1. (a) She may work in my room. She won't disturb me. (b) She may be working in my room. She likes it. 2. (a) You may not keep library books more than a fortnight, (b) You may not know that she needs your help badly. 3. (a) He may have visited her, for all I know. (b) He might have visited her. He knew she was ill. 4. (a) You needn't worry. She may arrive yet. (b) You needn't worry. She may have arrived already. 5. (a) He may have mentioned this, but I don't remember, (b) He might have mentioned this to her, why didn't he? 6. (a) You may come early. I don't mind. (b) You might come earlier. Why are you always late? 7. (a) If you do your shopping on the way to the station you may miss the train, (b) Your shopping trip to town at the last moment was not a very clever thing to do. You might have missed the train home.

Ex. 20. Open the brackets using the correct form of the infinitive. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. He may ... a lot of experience but he is not easy to deal with (to have). 2. We had better drop the subject. She may not ... over the shock yet (to get). 3. He may still ... about the offer, you should help him to make a decision (to hesitate). 4. You might ... he did not want to speak to you (to guess). 5. He may ... powerless to change anything, it wasn't 1ike him to act against his principles (to be). 6. You might ...the doctor a long time ago, by putting off your visit to the doctor you make things still worse (to consult). 7. He may ... him a long time, yet he doesn't know him at all (to know). 8. What is John doing now? He may ... still for all I know (to sleep). 9. I may ... thus an hour or so, I lost all sense of time but it was quite dark in the room when I was brought to my senses by the door bell (to sit). 10. You might ... him somehow to make him realize his guilt. He behaves as if he were a hero (to punish).

Ex. 21. Paraphrase the following sentences using "may", mind the correct form of the infinitive.

1. I don't remember when I saw her last, it was perhaps ten years ago. 2. I'll stay with you. Perhaps she will not come. I don't want you to be alone. 3. Maybe she was in no mood for talk. We didn't exchange a word on the way back. 4.

"Who is this man, anyway?" "His name is Starfield. Possibly you have heard of him." 5. "If I need you I'll call for you," she said, "and maybe I'll need you."

Ex. 22. Translate the following sentences using "may (might)", mind the form of the infinitive.

1. Я давно потерял с ними связь. Как знать, может быть, они все еще живут на улице Горького. 2. Может быть он и видел ее на концерте, но он мог и ошибиться. Он ведь очень близорук. 3. Вы могли бы быть потверже с ребенком. Вы его портите. 4. Вы могли бы дать показания в пользу обвиняемого. Я был удивлен, когда увидел, что вас нет в суде. 5. Возможно у них не было достаточно улик, чтобы считать его виновным. 6. Никто не мог понять, как это произошло. Возможно он растерялся и вместо того, чтобы затормозить, он свернул вправо и наскочил на грузовик. 7. Может быть он крупный специалист, но он не знает, как обращаться с этими приборами. 8. Она была вне себя от беспокойства. Вы могли бы ей позвонить.

Ex. 23. Fill in the blanks with "may (might)", " can (could)" or "must". Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. She ... not have missed his remark. It was intended for her. 2. The solution ... have occurred to him too late. He was powerless to charge anything. 3. As you grow older you ... realize how wrong you were. 4. Who ... have thought then that the case would be lost? 5. He ... have said it but I ... hardly believe it. 6. You ... have done it for the sake of mother. 7. The mistake ... not have remained unnoticed. It was too bad. 8. You say you rang him up at five in the morning. He ... have been annoyed with you. 9. You ... have said something in your defence. Why didn't you? 10. I ... tell by the looks on their faces that they were interested in what I was saying. 11. He ... not have forgotten the events of the last few years. They ... be still fresh in his mind. 12. He ... have warned us. It's so much like him to leave without saying a word. 13. Don't forget summer is over and you ... catch cold sitting like this. Better come inside and while I fix coffee you... tell me all about your problem. 14. Judging by the manner people greet you, you ... be a big man here. 15. I ... not have been waiting for more than ten minutes but to me it seemed an age.

Ex. 24. Translate the following sentences using "must", "may (might)", "can (could)".

1. Он, должно быть, не очень покладистый человек. 2. Вы, наверное, уже знакомы. 3. Мы, должно быть, где-то встречались. Ваше лицо мне знакомо. 4. Неужели он не может подождать один день? 5. Может быть вы подумали, что я заинтересован в этом деле? 6. Ну, кто бы мог сказать, что месяц тому назад вы были тяжело больны? 7. Неужели нельзя без

шуточек? 8. Может быть, он и пообещал прийти, но я не очень уверен, что он придет. 9. Я не могла пропустить его. Мы точно договорились встретиться здесь. 10. У нее, должно быть, есть деньги. Она вчера мне одолжила сто рублей, не сказав ни слова. 11. Никто не мог сказать по его внешнему виду, что он болен. 12. Показания свидетелей были против него, и все же он не мог совершить преступления.

MIXED BAG

Ex. 25. Translate the following sentences using the correct modal verb "can (could), may (might), should, must, need, to have to, to be to".

1. Он должен нас ждать у входа в институт. 2. Он не пошел с нами, он должен был дождаться друга. 3. Почему он ушел? Он же должен был дождаться нас. 4. Он, должно быть, все еще ждет нас у входа в институт. 5. Он, должно быть, ждет нас уже час. 6. Он, должно быть, ждал нас. 7. Он, должно быть, совсем не ждал нас, мы опоздали на три минуты, и его уже не было. 8. Он, должно быть, не дождался нас и уехал один. Мы задержались слишком долго. 9. Неужели они ждали вас так долго? 10. Не может быть, чтобы он не ждал вас. 11. Можно я вас подожду в приемной? 12. Вы могли бы подождать меня пять минут. Я опоздал не по своей вине. 13. Возможно, они ждали нас. 14. Возможно, они не ждали вас. 15. Ему незачем было ждать нас. Мы не договаривались. 16. Нет необходимости ждать его. Он сам знает дорогу. 17. Вам следовало дождаться нас. Без вас нам было очень трудно найти дорогу. 18. Мне не следовало ждать тебя. Я с тем же успехом мог бы дожидаться кого-либо с того света (the other world). 19. Вы можете не ждать меня. Я приеду сам. 20. Вы можете подождать меня, если хотите. 21. Он не мог ждать нас, он спешил.

Ex. 26. Replace the Russian words by the correct modal verb. Retell the story.

THE MILLION DOLLAR BOND ROBBERY

"A young lady wants to see you, M. Poirot. Here's her card," said the landlady.

Poirot read: "Miss Elaine Smith" and nodded to the landlady to admit her. In another minute a very charming girl was shown in. She (должно быть) have been about five-and-twenty. Poirot politely offered her a seat and introduced Captain Hastings to her as his assistant in his little problems.

"I am afraid it is a big problem I have brought you today. Monsieur Poirot," said the girl. "You (возможно) have read about it in the papers, the robbery of Liberty Bonds[3] on board the Olympia." Great surprise (должно быть) have

[3] Liberty Bonds — первый выпуск облигаций (бон) в США в 1917—1919. гг.

shown itself on Poirot's face, for she continued quickly. "You see, I am engaged to Mr Philip Ridgeway, who was in charge of the bonds when they were stolen. He (не может) be guilty but his uncle, I know, insists that he (вероятно) carelessly have mentioned having them in his suitcase. It's a terrible set-back in his career. People (по всей вероятности) be suspecting that he stole them himself."

Miss Elaine also told them that the Olympia sailed from Liverpool on the 23rd and the bonds were handed over to Philip on the morning of that day by Mr Harper, Philip's uncle, and Mr Shaw, the two joint general managers of the Bank. Philip locked the bonds in his suitcase with a special lock fitted to it by Hubbs's[4] at Mr Shaw's request. The package (по всей видимости) have been stolen just a few hours before reaching New York.

The next thing was for Poirot to see Mr Ridgeway. The girl arranged the meeting at the Cheshire Cheese.

Mr Ridgeway was there before them. He was a nice-looking young man with a touch of greying hair at the temples, though he (не могло) have been much over thirty.

"You (должен) forgive my acting without consulting you, Philip," she said. "Let me introduce you to Mr Poirot, of whom you (вероятно) often have heard and his friend Captain Hastings." Philip looked very impressed.

"I hope Monsieur Poirot (сможет) to throw some light on this extraordinary puzzle, for I (должен) admit that I am nearly out of my mind with anxiety about it," Philip said.

"Well, well," said Poirot, "we'll see what (можно) be done."

Philip's story agreed with that of Miss Smith in every particular. The only addition was how he discovered his suitcase all cut about where they tried to force the lock but (не смогли) and in the end, they (должно быть) have got it unlocked somehow or other. The most puzzling fact was however they (не могли) have had the key. The key never left Mr Ridgeway day or night.

The bonds, which were a big package, (не могли) hardly have been hidden on board, and they weren't for they were offered for sale within half an hour of the Olympia's arrival.

Poirot's next step was to make a few inquiries at the London and Scotish Bank. On their arrival at the Bank Poirot and Captain Hastings were immediately received by Mr Harper and Mr Shaw, two respectable gentlemen. Poirot enquired for some details; the interview was short. At the end of it Poirot was decidedly disappointed. The case was perfectly clear, he even found it childishly simple. He knew who stole the bonds

but he wouldn't say a word to Hastings so far. He wanted further confirmation to his theory.

After the interview Poirot and Hastings set out for Liverpool where the

[4] Hubbs's—the name of a firm of locksmiths and safemakers.

Olympia was due to arrive. There Poirot interviewed four stewards and enquired after the passanger, one Mr Ventnor, who had occupied the cabin next to Philip's.

On the train speeding back towards London, Poirot reviewed the case. "The package of bonds was removed from the suitcase and thrown overboard." "But if the bonds were thrown overboard they (не могли) have been sold in New York," Hastings remarked. However the fact remained that the bonds were sold in New York which meant if the package was thrown overboard it (не мог) have contained the bonds. The bonds reappeared in New-York half an hour after the Olympia got in. The package was a dummy[5] and the moment of its substitution[6] (по всей вероятности) have been in the office in the Bank. The bonds were mailed to New York by the Gigantic which left Southampton on the same day as the Olympia, and was due in New-York the day before the Olympia arrived. The bonds were mailed to a confederate[7] in New-York, with instructions to sell as soon as the Olympia was in. Someone (должен был) to travel on the Olympia to stage the supposed moment of the robbery, to distract the attention from the London and Scotish Bank. This was nobody else but Mr Ventnor. He threw the package overboard and waited until the last to leave the boat. He didn't want to run the risk of meeting Ridgeway.

The reader (вероятно) have guessed by now that Mr Ventnor and Mr Shaw were the same person.

"There are criminals in high places sometimes, my friend," finished Poirot.

(after Agatha Christie)

Ex. 27. Test translation.

1. Во время Великой Отечественной войны весь Советский народ встал на защиту своей родины. 2. Суд над военными преступниками проходил в Нюренберге в 1946—47 гг. 3. Народы Африки активно борятся за свою независимость. 4. Он был строго наказан за нарушение правил уличного движения. 5. Правила вождения автомобиля должны строго соблюдаться. 6. На суде ему нечего было сказать в свое оправдание. Показания свидетелей были достаточно убедительны и полностью доказывали его виновность. 7. Возможно вы и правы, но мне трудно судить, не зная обстоятельств дела. 8. Его арестовали по обвинению в убийстве, но дело было прекращено за недостатком улик. 9. Я еще не знаю, смогу ли принять участие в конференции. Это будет зависеть от ряда обстоятельств. 10. Вполне вероятно, что она пришла к тем же выводам независимо от нас. 11. Что, по вашему мнению, является самой замечательной чертой характера человека? 12. Он человек независимых

[5] фикция
[6] подмена
[7] сообщник

взглядов и убеждений. 13. Мать была обеспокоена его здоровьем, но не показывала вида. 14. Подсудимый полностью отверг предъявленные ему обвинения. 15. Если вы думаете ехать на юг поездом, вам бы лучше заказать билеты заранее. 16. Дела у фирмы шли успешно. Недостатка в спросе на их товары не было. 17. Ваш друг не понимает шуток. Вероятно, у него нет чувства юмора. 18. Костюм оказался немного узким в плечах. Жаль, что я не примерил его в магазине. 19. Мы не сразу поняли, к чему он клонит.

PRECIS WRITING

Ex. 28. a) Read the passage, b) Write 3-5 questions covering the basic points of the passage, c) Give a title to the passage and write a precis.

The abolition of capital punishment in England in November 1965 was welcomed by most people with progressive ideas. Still the problem remains — the problem of how to prevent murders. The important thing in the prevention of murder is to eliminate as far as possible the weapons and instruments, the guns and knives, with which these crimes are committed and to stop the dangerous influence of violence in books, films and television.

We have plenty of examples from real life, in every country, to prove that few criminals are born: they are made by our standards of so-called entertainment; Cowboys and Indians, Wild West films which are only exciting when guns are shooting and bad men are being killed, spy stories of the James Bond type with death in every form, bank robberies and "perfect murder" stories with killings on every few pages or in every few minutes of film. Anybody who wants to commit a murder has no difficulty in buying a knife, a gun, or some "interesting" poison. Life is cheap in fiction; no matter how many people are killed — the more the merrier — the main thing is that the hero and the heroine remain alive to enjoy the happy end.

So the practical way of reducing the number of capital crimes is to close the gunshops and to make it a criminal offence for the man in the street to possess a lethal weapon.

SPEECH EXERCISES

Ex. 29. Retell in narrative form.

"We want evidence," the Chief Constable was saying. "Have you got evidence, M. Poirot?"

"You want evidence... definite evidence ... such as Lady Stubbs' pearls?"

Now it was the Chief Constable who stared.

"You have found Lady Stubbs' pearls?"

"Not actually found them... but I know where they are hidden. You shall go

to the spot, and when you have found them, then... then you

will have evidence... All the evidence you need! For only one person could have hidden them there."

"And who's that?"

"The person it so often is," Poirot said softly, "the husband Sir George Stubbs stole the pearls."

"But he can't have done that, M. Poirot! We know it's impossible."

"Oh, no," said Poirot, "it is not impossible at all! Listen and I will tell you."

(after "Dead Man's Folly", by A. Christie)

Ex. 30. Answer the following questions using the vocabulary of the text. Sum up your answers.

1. In the Witness Box

1. What is a witness? 2. What part does a witness play at a trial? 3. What is a witness for the defence? for the prosecution? 4. How is a witness sworn in? 5. Who examines (cross-examines) a witness for the defence? for the prosecution? 6. What happens if a witness is partial or lies when giving an account of the events? 7. In what case will a witness be reminded that the life of the accused depends on his evidence?

2. A Detective Story

1. What are the most famous detective-story writers? 2. Who is usually the main character in a detective story? Give the names of some detectives in fiction. 3. Why must a detective be observant, intelligent? What makes a good detective? 4. How does the author make things difficult for the detective? 5. What makes a detective story thrilling to read?

Ex. 31. Read the passage, answer the questions, using the vocabulary of the lesson and retell it.

It was very hot in the small court-room and everybody was feeling sleepy. After a tiring morning, the clerks were anxious to get off to lunch and even the judge must have felt happy when the last case came up before the court. A short, middle-aged man with grey hair and small blue eyes was now standing before him. The man had a dazed expression on his face and he kept looking around as if he was trying hard to make out what was going on.

The man was charged with breaking into a house and stealing a cheap watch. The witness who was called did not give a very clear account of what had happened. He insisted on having seen a man outside the house one night, but on being questioned further, he admitted that he was not sure whether this was the man. The judge thought over the matter for a short time and then he said that as there was no real proof, the man could not be found guilty of any crime.

He said that the case was dismissed for lack of evidence and then rose to go. The prisoner looked very puzzled. It was clear that he had not understood a thing. Noticing this, the judge paused for a moment and then the man said suddenly, 'Excuse me, sir, but do I have to give the watch back or not?'

Questions

1. What was the last case brought before the court that morning? 2. What was the prisoner like? 3. What were the charges against him? 4. What was the evidence of the witness? 5. Why was it impossible to prove the prisoner's guilt beyond any reasonable doubt? 6. What was the decision of the judge? 7. How did the man give himself away? 8. What do you think happened further?

Ex. 32. Read the following, answer the questions, and retell the passage in English.

ИСТОРИЯ ОДНОЙ ПОЧТОВОЙ МАРКИ

В Париже в июне 1892 года был найден убитым в своей квартире некий Гастон Леру. Так как деньги остались в целости, убийство с целью грабежа исключалось. Не могло быть речи и о самоубийстве.

Полиция оказалась не в состоянии решить эту таинственную задачу. Тогда к расследованию были привлечены лучшие криминалисты. Один из них еще раз основательно обыскал квартиру убитого и, наконец, нашел в тайнике альбом с марками. Кроме того, он обнаружил список всей коллекции. В этом списке была поименована двухцентовая гавайская марка, выпущенная в 1851 году для Сандвичевых островов в Тихом океане. Но как раз эта марка и отсутствовала в коллекции. В то время она оценивалась в 10 000 золотых франков.

Полицейский чиновник опросил всех парижских торговцев марками, но они заявили, что такой марки у них в продаже нет. Кроме того, он спросил их, не знают ли они какого-нибудь парижского коллекционера, который бы захотел приобрести такую марку. Все единодушно назвали некоего Гектора Жиру.

Полицейский решил познакомиться с Жиру и представиться ему в качестве заядлого филателиста. Однажды вечером криминалист завел разговор о первых гавайских марках. Он также упомянул и о двухцентовой гавайской марке и высказал мнение, что такой вообще не существовало. Тогда Жиру взял свой альбом и, торжествуя, показал эту марку.

После долгого запирательства Жиру признался в убийстве и рассказал, что Леру упорно отказывался уступить ему эту марку, хотя ему предлагалась за нее любая цена.

Злополучная марка перебывала с годами у многих владельцев. Но ни разу не была показана ни на одной международной филателистической

выставке. В конце 1963 года марка был продана аукционной фирмой в Нью-Йорке за 4 100 долларов. Ее приобрел американский торговец, который, наверняка, продаст ее за еще более высокую цену, и она окончательно исчезнет в какой-нибудь частной коллекции.

Questions

1. When did the incident described in the article occur? 2. Why did the police believe that Gaston Lerout couldn't have possibly been murdered with the aim of robbery? 3. Why could not it have been a case of suicide either? 4. Why were several leading criminologists invited to take part in the inquiry? 5. What sort of hiding place did one of them discover during a repeated search of the flat? 6. What did the hiding-place contain? 7. Why did the entry in the list describing a 2 cent Hawaii stamp put out specially for the Sandwich Islands draw his attention? 8. What did he find out in comparing the list with the actual collection? 9. How much was the missing stamp worth? 10. What was there so remarkable about the stamp? 11. What inquiries did the police officer make among the Paris stamp dealers? 12. Why did the police officer conclude that there must be some connection between the murder and a certain Hector Girout? 13. Why was Hector Girout among the first to be suspected of having committed the crime? 14. Why did the police officer believe that the best way of getting to know Hector Girout was by introducing himself as an ardent stamp-collector? 15. How did it happen that Hector Girout failed to guess the police officer's intentions? 16. How did the police offficer succeed in establishing the identity of the murderer? 17. Why weren't Girout's repeated denials of guilt taken into account by the police? 18. What evidence did the police have against him? 19. Was it direct or circumstantial evidence? 20. What charge was brought against Girout at the trial? 21. How did he account for the murder? 22. What happened to the ill-fated stamp? 23. When was it seen last? 24. What price did it fetch at the auction held in 1963?

Ex. 33. Retell the following in English.

О НЕКОТОРЫХ ПРИНЦИПАХ СОВЕТСКОГО ПРАВОСУДИЯ

Суд и другие органы правосудия решительно борятся с преступностью и имеют по закону большие полномочия для выполнения своих задач. Однако задача суда не в том, чтобы обязательно осудить человека, а в том, чтобы разобраться в деле, выяснить, кто прав, кто виноват. Только суд может признать виновным в совершении преступления и подвергнуть наказанию обвиняемого. Значит, требуется полное, непредвзятое исследование всех обстоятельств дела, как подтверждающих обвинение, так и свидетельствующих в пользу обвиняемого.

По уголовным делам истина обычно не лежит на поверхности, она

часто скрыта, и чтобы найти ее, надо проделать большую работу. Особенно тщательно необходимо проверять всякое доказательство, будь то показание обвиняемого или свидетеля. Нельзя судить о правильности или ошибочности их показаний по впечатлению.

Казалось бы, что может быть проще и яснее тех случаев, когда сам обвиняемый признает себя виновным? Однако закон говорит, что на одном сознании обвиняемого дело строить нельзя.

Интересная ситуация сложилась по одному делу об ограблении, которое рассматривалось в одном из народных судов г. Ленинграда. 16-летний школьник обвинялся в ограблении женщины. Обвиняемый сознался в этом на предварительном следствии, твердо и настойчиво повторял свое признание в суде. А защищавший его адвокат так же твердо и настойчиво утверждал, что юноша не виновен. В ходе суда выяснилось, что ограбление было совершено старшим братом. Из чувства жалости и надеясь, что суд учтет факт его несовершеннолетия, младший брат взял вину на себя. Дело против младшего брата было прекращено, а к ответственности был привлечен старший брат.

Советский народ твердо стоит на той точке зрения, что не обвиняемый должен доказать свою невиновность, а следователь и прокурор обязаны доказать виновность обвиняемого.

Soviet justice; to have the powers to fulfil one's tasks; to find smb guilty; a full and impartial inquiry into the circumstances of a case; to confirm the charges; not to be found on the surface; to check every piece of evidence; to plead guilty; an admission; to build a case on smth; to be charged with robbery; a preliminary investigation; to take smth into account; to be under age; to dismiss a case against smb; to take legal action against smb; to prove smb's guilt beyond reasonable doubt.

Ex. 34. Read and retell the following. Say whether you think the boy had really committed the crime or not. Explain the title of the story.

THICKER THAN WATER

by Henry Slesar

The police record[8] had Benjy Blesker's age down as seventeen. He looked younger. Vernon Wedge wasn't taken in[9] by it; he had seen too many innocent, baby-faced, icy-hearted killers.

When Vernon walked into the prison ward, he asked him for a cigarette.

Vernon hesitated, then offered the pack.

Benjy lit up and dropped a mask over his boyish features. "You the lawyer

[8] протокол
[9] обмануть

my old man hired?"

"That's right. My name's Vernon Wedge."

"When do I get out of here?"

"You don't, not until the trial."

"When's the trial?"

"Don't rush it," Vernon said. "We need every minute of delay we can get. Don't think this is going to be easy."

Benjy leaned back. "I didn't cut that guy," he said evenly. "I didn't have anything to do it with. I swear I didn't kill him!"

"Take it easy. I'm not making accusations, kid; that's the court's job. Now sit back and relax. I'm going over the story, from the police side, and then you can tell me where they're wrong. Every little thing, understand?"

Benjy swallowed hard. Then he nodded.

"It was ten minutes to midnight on June 21," Vernon said watching him. "You and two other guys were walking down Thurmond Street; you came out of a movie house. Kenny Tucker came out of a corner apartment building. You ran into each other, and there was a fight. The next thing that happens, you and your pals start running down the street. Kenny falls down and tries to get to his house. There were two people on the steps. They saw you running. They saw Kenny die, right in front of them. He had an eight-inch cut in his stomach..."

Benjy looked sick.

"Ten minutes later, the cops caught up with you in your old man's store on Chester Street. The knife was still in your pocket." He paused.

"I didn't cut him," the boy said firmly. "All the rest of that stuff that's true. But I don't know who cut Kenny."

"All right," Vernon said reluctantly. "So we Plead Not Guilty. I'll do everything I can to make it stick."

Vernon came to the courtroom on opening day with a heart as heavy as his brief case. Surprisingly, the first day didn't go badly.

But it was his only good day. On the second afternoon Wickers, the prosecuting attorney, started calling in the witnesses for the prosecution.

It was the third witness who did the most harm. He was a youth worker serving the neighbourhood.

"No, Benjy isn't a bad kid," he said thoughtfully. "But he had a temper. And he never forgave Kenny Tucker for the beating he gave him."

"Then, in your opinion," the prosecuting counsel said triumphantly, "this might have been murder? Not just a sudden fight, but a cold-blooded—"

Vernon was on his feet, shouting objections.[10] The judge took his side at once, but the impression on the jury was made.

The fourth day was the worst of all. Wickers, waving the knife under Benjy Blesker's nose, got him to admit that it was his, admit that he was never without it, admit that he had it in his pocket — maybe even in his hand — the night of

[10] *зд.* протест

the killing. Wickers sat down, the case of the prosecution was stated.

One more day and the trial would be over.

Monday morning came. Vernon Wedge stood up and addressed the judge.

"Your Honour, something occurred over the week end which I consider of great importance to this case. I ask the court's permission to introduce new evidence."

"What sort of evidence, Mr. Wedge?"

"It's a demonstration, your Honour. In my opinion it will clearly establish my client's guilt or innocence."

Vernon faced the jurors.

"Ladies and gentlemen. This is the knife which was in the hands of Benjamin Blesker the night of the murder. This clean, shiny knife can still tell a story of guilt or innocence. For as every biochemist knows, there is a test to show whether an object made of porous metal has ever been touched with even one drop of blood. I intend to prove once and for all whether I have been defending a boy falsely accused, or a lying murderer. I propose to put this knife in the solution. If it turns pink— you must punish him for his guilt. If it remains clear you must do what is fair, and set him free."

Slowly he brought the knife down.

"You cannot make the test," the judge said. "It's against the rules."

The jury was out less than an hour. When they returned, they declared that Benjamin Blesker was innocent.

Vernon was permitted the use of one of the rooms for a meeting with his client. It wasn't a victory celebration. The boy looked dazed and the happiness in old Blesker's face looked more like sadness.

"Now there's something we have to do," Vernon said. "Something to satisfy us all."

"What do you mean?" asked Mr. Blesker anxiously.

Vernon looked at the boy. Benjy wouldn't meet his eyes.

"I still don't know the truth and neither do you. Only Benjy here knows it."

He held out his hand.

"Give me the knife, Mr. Blesker. We're going to make the test the judge wouldn't allow. For our own sakes."

Blesker picked up the knife. He touched it thoughtfully.

"Of course," he said.

Then slowly he drew the knife across the back of his hand. Blood came up like a crimson river. He looked at the cut sadly, indifferently, and then handed the weapon to the attorney.

"Make your test," he said. "Make your test now, Mr. Wedge."

And as Vernon stared at him, he took his son's arm, and they left the room together.

Ex. 35. Use the following words and phrases in situations.

1. A Case is Tried In Criminal Court

a) a criminal case; to hold a trial; a (un)fair trial; to try a case in court; to be heard in public;

b) the jury; the foreman of the jury; the jury box; to make a decision; to return a verdict of (not) guilty;

c) Counsel for the Prosecution; to bring charges against smb; to outline the case; to hear formal evidence; to question the accused; to call the witnesses;

d) Counsel for the Defence; to defend the case; to cross-examine the witnesses;

e) a judge; to judge impartially, to be independent; to observe the law strictly; to pass a sentence;

f) the accussed; to commit a crime; to appear in court on a charge of...; to have the right of defence; to plead (not) guilty; to be acquitted; to be found innocent of the crime; to be acquitted for lack of evidence; to be convicted; to be found guilty; to be punished;

g) a witness for the Prosecution (Defence); to be sworn in; to give evidence; an eye-witness account of smth;

h) the press; to be present at the hearing; to report on the proceedings

2. Defending One's Point of View

to be anxious to prove smth; to outline one's point of view on the subject; to speak with confidence; judging by; to give powerful arguments; to be well read on the subject; to enquire into the matter closely;

to have a sensible approach to; to take into account; to respect other people's opinion; to agree with smb; up to a point; to depend on one's experience; to convince smb; to be the only possible solution; to leave no room for doubt; to succeed (in); to prove one's point.

3. Never Count Your Chickens Before They Are Hatched

to take part in a sports competition; to be anxious to win; to have no doubt whatever as to ...; to admit no possibility of failure; to be sure of one's success; to commit a mistake; not to take into account that ...;

the competing team; to be well trained; to be no denying the fact that ...;

to practise in bursts; to lack necessary skill; not to be equal to smb; to stand no chance; to have a guilty feeling; to admit one's failure.

Ex. 36. Tell the story of the pictures.

So far so good. Now, let's see what the book says on page 65...

Many happy returns of the day! And this is our little surprise...
something we've knitted with our own hands.

an inmate; a striped prison suit; to be just the right kind of present for smb; a warden; to play a joke on smb; to lack a sense of humour.

Ex. 37. Subjects for oral and written composition.

1. Tell the story as if you were a) one of the four witnesses for the prosecution; b) one of the jury; c) one of the public in court; d) a relative of Mrs Parker.

2. Write up the story as for a newspaper article.

3. Give an outline of the statements made by: a) Counsel for the Prosecution; b) Counsel for Defence.

4. Explain how it could have happened that the prisoner got away with murder.

5. Say whether you think the guilty or the innocent man was killed in the accident.

6. The class nature of justice in capitalist countries.

7. The Soviet court system.
8. The main principles of Soviet justice.
9. The role of people's assessors in Soviet courts.

LESSON NINE

Text: From "The Hotel" by Arthur Hailey.[1]
Grammar: Tenses. Voice. Subjunctive Mood. General Review.

THE HOTEL

The lobby at the St Gregory, New Orleans,[2] was becoming busier. A group of new arrivals had just come in and were registering, preceding others still checking baggage[3] that was being unloaded from an airport limousine. A small line had formed at the reception counter. O'Keefe stood watching.

It was then he observed what apparently no one else, so far, had seen.

A middle-aged, well-dressed Negro, valise in hand, had entered the hotel. He came towards Reception, walking unconcernedly as if for an afternoon walk. At the counter he put down his bag and stood waiting, third in line.

The exchange, when it came, was clearly heard.

'Good morning,' the Negro said. His voice — a midwestern accent—was friendly and cultured. 'I'm Doctor Nicholas; you have a reservation for me.' While waiting he had removed a black Homburg hat[4] revealing carefully brushed iron-grey hair.

'Yes, sir; if you'll register, please.' The words were spoken before the clerk looked up. As he did, his features stiffened. A hand went out withdrawing the registration pad he had pushed forward a moment earlier.

'I'm sorry,' he said firmly, 'the hotel is full.'

Undisturbed, the Negro replied smilingly, 'The hotel sent a letter confirming the reservation, not cancelling it.' His hand went to an inside pocket, producing a wallet with papers, from which he selected one.

'There must have been a mistake. I'm sorry.' The clerk hardly glanced at the paper placed in front of him. 'We have a convention[5] here.'

'I know.' The other nodded, his smile somewhat thinner than before. 'It's a convention of dentists. I happen to be one.'

The clerk shook his head. 'There's nothing I can do for you.'
The Negro put away his papers. 'In that case I'd like to talk with someone else.'

While they had been speaking still more new arrivals had joined the line in front of the counter. A man in a belted raincoat inquired impatiently, 'What's the hold-up there?' O'Keefe remained still. He had a sense that in the now crowded lobby a time bomb[6] was ticking ready to explode.

'You can talk to the assistant manager.' Leaning forward across the counter, the room clerk called sharply, 'Mr Bailey!'

Across the lobby an elderly man at an alcove desk looked up.

'Mr Bailey, would you come here, please?'

The assistant manager nodded and got up. As he walked slowly across, his lined, tired face took on a professional greeter's smile.

An old-timer,[7] Curtis O'Keefe thought; after years of room clerking he had been given a chair and a desk in the lobby with authority to handle minor problems posed by guests. The real authority of the hotel was in the executive offices, out of sight.

'Mr Bailey,' the room clerk said, 'I've explained to this gentleman that the hotel is full.'

'And I've explained,' the Negro replied, 'that I have a confirmed reservation.'

The assistant manager smiled broadly, his obvious goodwill including the line of waiting guests. 'Well,' he said, 'we'll just have to see what we can do.' He placed a nicotine-stained hand on the sleeve of Dr Nicholas's expensively tailored suit. 'Won't you come and sit down over there?' As the other allowed himself to be led towards the alcove:

'Occasionally these things happen, I'm afraid. When they do, we try to help.'

Mentally Curtis O'Keefe admitted that the elderly man knew his job. Smoothly and without fuss, a potentially embarrassing scene had been removed from centre stage into the wings. Meanwhile the other arrivals were being quickly checked in with the aid of a second room clerk who had just joined the first. Only a youthful, broad-shouldered man had left the line-up and was watching the new development. Well, O'Keefe thought, perhaps there might be no explosion after all. He waited to see.

The assistant manager gestured his companion to a chair beside the desk and took his own. He listened carefully, his expression neutral, as the other repeated the information he had given the room clerk.

At the end the older man nodded. 'Well, doctor,' — the tone was briskly businesslike— 'I apologize for the misunderstanding, but I'm sure we can find you other suitable accommodation in the city.' With one hand he pulled a telephone towards him and lifted the receiver. The other hand pulled out a leaf from the desk, revealing a list of phone numbers.

'Just a moment.' For the first time the visitor's soft voice had taken on a sharpness. 'You tell me the hotel is full, but your clerks are checking people in. Do they have some special kind of reservation?'

'I guess you could say that.' The professional smile had disappeared.

'Jim Nicholas!' The loud and cheerful greeting rang across the lobby. Behind the voice a small elderly man took hurried steps towards the alcove.

The Negro stood. 'Dr Ingram! How good to see you!' He held out his hand which the older man grasped.

'How are you, Jim, my boy? No, don't answer! I can see for myself you're

fine. Doing well too, from the look of you. I understand your practice is going well.'

'It is, thank you.' Dr Nicholas smiled. 'Of course my university work still takes a good deal of time.'

'Don't I know it! Don't I know it! I spend all my life teaching fellows like you, and then you all go out and get the big-paying practices.' As the other grinned broadly: 'Anyway you seem to have gotten the best of both — with a fine reputation. That paper of yours on malignant mouth tumours has caused a lot of discussion and we're all looking forward to a first-hand report. By the way, I shall have the pleasure of introducing you to the convention. You know they made me president this year?'

'Yes, I'd heard. I can't think of a finer choice.'

As the two talked, the assistant manager rose slowly from his chair. His eyes moved uncertainly between their faces.

The small, white-haired man, Dr Ingram, was laughing. He patted his colleague jovially on the shoulder. 'Give me your room number-Jim. A few of us will be getting together for drinks later on. Г d like to have you join us. No objections, I hope.'

'Unfortunately,' Dr Nicholas said, 'I've just been told I won't be getting a room. It seems to have something to do with my colour.'

There was a shocked silence in which the dentists' president went deep red. Then, his face muscles hardening, he assured, 'Jim, I'll deal with this. I promise you there'll be an apology and a room. If they refuse to put you up, I guarantee every other dentist will walk out of this hotel.'

NOTES

1. **Arthur Hailey**, a novelist, born in 1920 in Luton ['lu:tn], England. During World War Two he served in the British Air Force. In 1947 he emigrated to Canada. At present he is living in California, USA. He has written several plays as well as a number of successful books: *The Final Diagnosis* (1959), *In High Places* (1962), *Hotel* (1965) and *Airport* (1969).

2. **New Orleans**: a city in southeastern Louisiana, USA, in the heart of the Deep South.

3. **baggage** = luggage

4. **Homburg hat**: a felt hat for men — мужская фетровая шляпа

5. **convention**: a meeting, often periodical, of members or delegates, as of a political group, commercial organisation, professional association, etc. — съезд

6. **time bomb**: a bomb designed to explode at a pre-arranged time — бомба замедленного действия (с часовым механизмом)

VOCABULARY

register *vt/vi* регистрировать(ся); заносить в список to register smb's birth (one's/smb's marriage, etc.); to register at a hotel (meeting, etc.) **Phr**. register one's luggage==have one's luggage registered сдать вещи в багаж; register a letter послать заказное письмо; a registered letter заказное письмо; registration *n* регистрация

load *vt* грузить, нагружать, загружать to load a ship (a car, a truck, etc.) with smth load *n* груз

concern *vt* 1. касаться, иметь отношение к What you say concerns everybody. **Phr**. as far as I am (he is, smth is, etc.) concerned что касается меня (его, чего-л и т. п.) As far as I am concerned I can't say anything definite on the subject. 2. заботиться, беспокоиться They were greatly concerned about the future of their son. concern *n* забота, беспокойство, озабоченность The people of the world showed great concern **about** the new developments in the Middle East. It's a matter of great concern, concerning *prep* относительно, касательно He wanted more information concerning the new discovery.

exchange *vt* обмениваться); поменять(ся) to exchange opinions (views, greetings, words, glances, seats, books, etc.) with smb; to exchange smth for smth; exchange n обмен an exchange of opinions (words, etc.) **Phr**. in exchange for в обмен на He gave me some English books in exchange for French books.

stiff *a* 1. жесткий, неэластичный, негибкий, негнущийся a stiff collar, etc.; to be stiff with cold (fright, etc.) 2. натянутый, принужденный, чопорный a stiff manner (movement, greeting, smile, etc.); stiffen *vi* напрягаться, делаться жестким (о выражении лица, о движениях и т. п.) Hearing his words her features stiffened, stiffly *adv* натянуто, принужденно He smiled stiffly.

withdraw (withdrew, withdrawn) *vt* брать назад to withdraw an order (a report, an offer, an accusation, etc.); to withdraw troops выводить войска; withdrawal *n* отмена, изъятие; вывод (войск)

confirm *vt* подтверждать, подкреплять to confirm one's words (the terms, the prices, one's telegram, etc.); The X-ray confirmed the doctor's diagnosis, confirmation *n* подтверждение; подкрепление **Phr**. in confirmation of (smth) в подтверждение (чего-л)

cancel *vt* аннулировать, отменять to cancel an invitation (agreement, contract, lesson, meeting, etc.); cancellation *n* аннулирование, отмена **Phr**. make a cancellation произвести отмену, аннулировать

produce *vt* 1. предъявлять (паспорт и т. п.) to produce one's passport (one's ticket, a document, etc.) 2. производить; вырабатывать to produce goods (cars, machinery, etc.) production *n* производство; продукция. productivity *n* производительность, продуктивность productivity of labour производительность труда

explode *vt/v*i взрывать(ся) to explode a bomb (a tank, a rock, etc.) If you are careless with gas it may explode, explosion *n* взрыв

lean (leaned/leant) *vi* наклоняться, прислоняться, опираться to lean

against a wall (a tree, a fence, etc.); to lean on a table (a chair, etc.); to lean back (forward)

authority *n* 1. власть, полномочие He had no authority to make changes. 2. авторитет, влияние, вес He spoke with authority. 3. *pl*. власти, администрация the local (city, railway, etc.) authorities

embarrass *vt* смущать, ставить в затруднительное положение The long silence embarrassed her. **Phr**. be (feel) embarrassed (at/by smth) стесняться, чувствовать себя неловко; embarrassment *n* затруднение; замешательство; embarrassing *a* затруднительный, приводящий в смущение an embarrassing situation (silence, question, look, scene, etc.)

suit *vt* 1. годиться, подходить; быть удобным The arrangement suited us perfectly. We agreed to meet at six o'clock. Will that time suit? 2. итти, быть к лицу All shades of blue suit her. suitable *a* подходящий, соответствующий, годный a suitable dress (occasion, arrangement, etc.) Is the time fixed for the meeting suitable for you?

lift *vt* поднимать to lift a heavy suit-case (the telephone receiver, etc.)

cause *vt* причинять; вызывать to cause trouble (embarrassment, misunderstanding, anxiety, suspicion, pain; an accident, a discussion, etc.); cause *n* 1. причина, основание, повод You have no cause to worry. There was no cause for suspicion. Infection is a cause of many diseases. 2. дело (мира и т. п.) They are fighting for the cause of peace.:

object *vt* возражать, быть против to object to a plan (an arrangement, a postponement, a delay, etc.) I strongly object to smoking, objection *n* возражение, протест; неодобрение There was no objection to the plan. They had no objection to settling the dispute in a friendly way.

fortunate *a* счастливый, удачный a fortunate circumstance (man, etc.); to be fortunate in business (life, etc.) He is fortunate to have travelled all over the world. It is most fortunate that you have arrived today. unfortunate *a* несчастливый, неудачный, (un)fortunately *adv* к счастью (к сожалению)

assure *vt* уверять, заверять He assured us that everything would be all right. They assured us of success, assurance *n* заверение, уверенность He gave us every assurance that he would do it.

WORD COMBINATIONS

put up at a hotel остановиться в гостинице

put up smb at a hotel поместить кого-л в гостинице

check in (Am.E.)= register at a hotel прописаться в гостинице

check out (Am.E.)= leave the hotel выехать из гостиницы

first-hand report (information, etc.) сообщение, полученное из первоисточника

EXERCISES ON THE TEXT

Ex. 1. Answer the following questions.

1. Where is the scene of action laid? 2. What happened when Dr Nicholas's turn came lo be registered at Reception? 3. Why did the clerk stiffen at seeing Dr Nicholas? 4. Why did the clerk refuse to'register Dr Nicholas at the hotel? 5. Why did the clerk invite Mr Bailey over? 6. Did Mr Bailey actually have the authority to settle a matter of this kind? 7. What were Mr Bailey's duties? 8. What showed that the elderly man knew his job? 9. How did Mr Bailey propose to handle the problem? 10. What sort of arrangement did he offer to make for Dr Nicholas? 11. Why was Dr Nicholas unwilling to accept the situation? 12. Who appeared on the scene while Dr Nicholas and Mr Bailey were discussing the matter? 13. Why did Dr Ingram stress Dr Nicholas's success both as practising doctor and scientist during the talk? 14. What was the effect of what he said on Mr Bailey? 15. Why wouldn't any of the hotel clerks dare to mention the real reason for refusing to put up Dr Nicholas at the hotel? 16. What did Dr Ingram propose to do about this shameful business? 17. Do you think that the united action of the Dentists' Association will make the hotel management change its rules?

Ex. 2. Find in text the English for:

а) 1. средних лет; 2. с саквояжем в руке; 3. обменяться репликами; 4. снять шляпу; 5. застыть (о лице); 6. покачать головой; 7. перегнуться через барьер; 8. пожилой человек; 9. кивнуть головой; 10. профессиональная улыбка; 11. улаживать мелкие проблемы; 12. широко улыбнуться; 13. благожелательность; 14. пожелтевшие от никотина пальцы; 15. костюм, сшитый дорогим портным; 16. мысленно признать; 17. хорошо знать свое дело; 18. спокойно и без суеты; 19. неприятный инцидент; 20. середина сцены; 21. кулисы; 22. моложавый, широкоплечий человек; 23. жестом пригласить сесть; 24. внимательно слушать; 25. энергичным деловым тоном; 26. извиниться за недоразумение; 27. приобрести резкость (в голосе); 28. громкое и бодрое приветствие; 29. протянуть руку; 30. самому судить о чем-либо; 31. преуспевать; 32. вызвать споры; 33. ожидать с нетерпением; 34. похлопать по плечу; 35. к сожалению.

б) 1. вестибюль, холл гостиницы; 2. группа вновь прибывших; 3. зарегистрироваться; 4. проверить багаж; 5. сгружать багаж с машины; 6. небольшая очередь; 7. регистратура; 8. предварительный заказ на место в гостинице, «бронь»; 9. отрывной блокнот с бланками для регистрации; 10. «свободных номеров нет»; 11. подтвердить заказ на место в гостинице; 12. аннулировать заказ; 13. постоялец; 14. кабинеты администрации; 15. получить место и ключ от номера; 16. подыскать подходящее жилье; 17. снять телефонную трубку; 18. список телефонов; 19. номер в гостинице; 20. поместить в гостинице.

Ex. 3. Give the four forms of the following verbs.

hold, lean, stiffen, withdraw, reply, shake, inquire, nod, try, admit, ring, teach, grin, rise, deal.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBS

Ex. 4. Study the following preposition phrases; a) recall the sentences in which they are used in the text, and b) use them in sentences of your own.

third **in** line; select **from**; glance **at**; lean **forward** (**across** smth); **with** authority; lead **to**; check **in/out**; **with** the help **of** smth/smb; gesture smb **to** a chair; apologize **for**; hold **out** one's hand; see **for** oneself; **from** the look **of** smb/smth; a good deal **of**; a paper/report **on** smth/smb; look **forward to**; **by** the way; the pleasure **of** introducing smb **to** smb; think of; pat **on** the shoulder; put **up** (**at**)

Ex. 5. Fill in the blanks with prepositions or adverbs.

A. 1. The management had another clerk to help the receptionist check ... the new arrivals and check ... the old guests. 2. He was last ... a long line, and ... the look ... it he was unlikely to get a good seat ... the show. 3. The sign ... the doctor's reception room read: "Admission ... request only." 4. His recent paper ... the new developments ... dentistry was a sensation. 5. Selecting a book ... a pile ... front ... him the librarian held it ... ... the boy: "Here, that's what you want." 6. I see no cause... his displeasure, the matter was settled ... his own terms. 7. The assistant manager has no authority ... matters that have to do ... accommodation, you'd better speak ... the manager. 8. As far as I know him, he'd rather put... ... a hotel. 9. People might offer you half a stamp-collection... exchange... this one stamp. 10. If they are really concerned ... his future and want him to be prepared ... the hardships of life, they shouldn't make things too smooth ... him 11. He spoke ... such assurance that we couldn't but believe him. 12. The young actress was nervously waiting ... the wings ... her turn to go ... the stage. 13. He held ... a thin hand that I shook, then gestured ... a chair: "Please, sit... ." 14. She leaned far ... ... the window ... an effort to see the leaving car. 15. They were late ... the show as their taxi was held ... ... the heavy traffic ... the afternoon rush. 16. Everybody must have noticed how embarrassed she was ... the unexpected question. 17. You'd better not approach him, he's concerned ... a difficult problem that needs all his attention. 18. She only seems stiff ... manner but she is the dearest person, when you come to know her closer. 19. The nights ... the mountains may be very cold, so you'd better take something suitable ... cold weather, too.

B. There are well over 12 million Negroes... the U.S.; that is, more than the whole population ... Canada. Almost 10 million ... them live ... the so-called Southern States.

There is segregation... the South. ... buses the front seats are reserved ... white men, Negroes sit ... the back. ... every train there are Jim Crow cars, cars reserved ... Negroes, usually just behind the engine so that they should get a fair amount ... smoke, while the rest ... the train is reserved ... white passengers. Negroes are excluded ... restaurants, hotels, cinemas, hospitals and many other public places. They are excluded ... many shops and even when the white owner accepts their money he doesn't allow them to try ... hats, suits and gloves.

... the North there are no Jim Crow cars and Negroes are often employed together ... white people, usually doing rough, underpaid jobs. But they are unable to get an apartment anywhere except ... Harlem.

They have to pay fantastic prices ... a room ... the overcrowded slums, they cannot hire rooms ... hotels. The owner ... a restaurant will say ... a Negro that all the tables are reserved, or if a Negro succeeds ... finding a place, he will instruct his waiter not to serve him. If he allowed a Negro to eat ... his place, he would lose many white clients.

During the war, the Negroes were allowed to serve ... the U.S. armed forces, but they served in separate units and lived ... separate barracks. The only exception ... the segregation rules was that German and Japanese bullets were not marked: " ... Whites Only."

(after "How to Scrape Skies" by G. Mikes)

Ex. 6. Give the English for the following phrases, using the preposition "by" in its different meanings. Use the phrases in sentences of your own.

I. дом у реки; машина у ворот; касса у входа; стол у окна.

II. пройти мимо магазина; сидеть у костра; стоять возле кого-л; войти в дом через парадную дверь; проникнуть в помещение через окно.

III. а) судить по внешности; определить по акценту; узнать по голосу;

б) по праву; по интуиции; инстинктивно; по какому-л принципу; по опыту; по привычке; по чьей-л теории; по моим часам; по закону.

IV. картина Репина; трагедия Шекспира; бумага, подписанная главой фирмы; кофе, экспортируемое Бразилией; работа, выполненная от руки (вручную, машиной, силой ветра, водой, паром, при помощи дистанционного управления).

V. а) поездом; самолетом: автобусом; морем; по суше;

б) извещать письмом (телеграммой); посылать почтой; сообщать по радио; связаться по телефону (телеграфу);

VI. схватить за руку; потянуть за рукав; держать за плечо.

VII. врач по профессии; инженер по образованию.

VIII. случайно; по счастливой случайности; ошибочно.

IX. постепенно; шаг за шагом; страница за страницей; пункт за пунктом; день за днем; по одному.

X. к концу недели; к вечеру; к 20 мая.

MISCELLANEOUS PHRASES

учить наизусть; называть друг друга по имени; определять время по солнцу; поставить часы по сигналу; читать при свете лампы (свечи); при лунном свете; быть потрясенным (испуганным) новостью; по разрешению врача; на 3 см. короче (длинней); увеличить (снизить) цену на 20 коп.; во что бы то ни стало; никоим образом.

EXERCISES IN LEXICOLOGY

Ex. 7. Paraphrase the following sentences, using the prefix ",w-" „tilth the words in bold type according to the model.

Model: 1) He went on a holiday and didn't **do** his work.
He went on a holiday **leaving** his work undone.
2) You'd better not **lock** the door.
You'd better leave the door **unlocked**.

1. He can't have gone away without settling his affairs. 2. She rose from the table never touching her dinner. 3. He never answered my letters. 4. You'd better not cover the table, it looks nice as it is. 5. Some things are better not said. 6. The poet died never finishing the poem. 7. The secretary forgot to sign the papers.

Ex. 8. Fill in the blanks with the verbs "unload, unpack, untie, unbutton, undo" in the correct form.

1. The passengers stood watching the luggage ... from the luggage car and put on the truck. 2. On receiving a new package of books the librarian got down to ... them. 3. The man ... the collar and felt much better. 4. What is done cannot be ... . 5. The child's fingers were stiff with cold, he had trouble in ... the scarf.

Ex. 9. Paraphrase the following sentences using a noun with ihe suffix "-ity, -ty" instead of an adjective. Make other necessary changes.

Model: It is not at all **necessary** to set out so early.
There is no **necessity** in setting out so early.

1. With the rush of tourists it was hardly **possible** to reserve a room in a hotel. 2. He may come, but I am not quite **certain**. 3. The foreman spoke in **authoritative** tones. 4. What is your secretary **responsible** for? 5. The young engineer looks an **able** man. There is no denying it. 6. They are **safe** now. 7. How many cars does your plant **produce** a year? 8. There is no denying that your friend is an **honest** man.

Ex. 10. Give words of the same root in Russian. Compare the meaning.

register, select, convention, dentist, authority, nicotine, ootential, scene, gesture, companion, special, reputation, colleague, fortune, muscles, guarantee.

Ex. 11. Give the meaning of the phrasal verbs and the corresponding nouns.

1. The new arrivals lined up at Reception. Almost at once several of them left the line-up and went to have a cup of coffee at the coffee bar. 2. His car was held up by the traffic and the wait seemed endless. As he was to find out the hold-up had been caused by an accident in one of the by-streets. 3. The plane took off beautifully. The crowd that had gathered to watch the take-off cheered. 4. The delegation walked out of the conference. The walk-out was later described by the papers as the only possible course of action the delegation could have taken under the circumstances. 5. The actress made up her face and the make-up changed her beyond recognition.

Ex. 12. Translate the following into English, using a suitable phrasal verb from the list below, and making any necessary changes.

L i s t : put off (2); put down (2); put up with; put up (at); put on; put away; put aside; put back;

1. Разговор пришлось отложить до более подходящего случая. 2. Он отказывался мириться с небрежным отношением к работе со стороны кого бы то ни было. 3. Она записала только те фамилии и адреса, которые могли ей понадобиться в дальнейшем. 4. Приехав в город, он решил остановиться в гостинице. 5. Сразу было видно, что все ее равнодушие напускное. 6. Неудача не обескуражила молодого ученого. 7. За несколько лет ему удалось скопить (отложить) необходимую сумму денег для покупки автомашины. Ему всегда хотелось иметь машину. 8. Перечитав старые письма, она снова убрала их. 9. Пролистав книгу и не найдя нужных сведений, я поставила ее обратно на полку. 10. Брось книгу и займись делом.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 13. Fill in the blanks with a suitable word in the correct form. Translate the sentences into Russian.

to assure; assurance; authorities; to cancel; cause; to cause; concern; to concern; to confirm; to embarrass; embarrassment; to exchange; to lean; to object; stiff; objection; to suit; suitable; to withdraw.

1. The doctor assured the patient's relatives that there was no ... for worry and things were going as smoothly as he could only wish for. 2. The clerk at the travelling agency ... me that everything would be taken care of, including luggage delivery. 3. The incident ... a lot of discussion. 4. Everything about the

new job ... me fine. 5. The boy ... to being treated like a child. 6. We talked the man into ... his charges and settling the matter out of court. 7. The girl... over to her companion and started whispering excitedly in his ear. 8. Unused to speaking in public, the young man did his best to hide his ... .9. Nobody seemed to have any ... to the arrangement and it took us but a few minutes to conclude the business. 10. There was so much ... in the man's voice that I calmed down at once. 11. The development of new districts is the responsibility of the town planning ... . 12. For some reason or other the trip was .... 13. A careful study of the circumstances ... our worst suspicions. 14. After ... the usual smiles and greetings they finally got down to business. 15. The clerk was clearly ... by the request but saw no way of refusing it. 16. The speaker pointed out that the matter was of great importance and, as he saw it, ... all those present. 17. She spent the last few days in town shopping around for things... for wear in the distant northern village where she was going to work. 18. I was somewhat put off by his ... manner at first. To tell the truth, I'd been looking forward to a warmer welcome.

Ex. 14. Paraphrase the following, using words and word combinations from the text. Make all other necessary changes.

as far as smb is concerned; assurance; authority; to cancel; to concern (2); to confirm; to embarrass; fortunately; to object; objection; to put smb up; to suit; suitable; to withdraw.

1. The **quiet firmness** in the speaker's voice showed he knew what he was talking about. 2. The travelling agency clerk telephoned to the client to inquire if the order **stood as it was** or there would be some changes. 3. The notice on the station wall read that **there would be no** trains between three and five that afternoon on account of repairs to the tracks. 4. The chairman of the committee gave careful attention to **whatever** the members **had to say against** the arrangement. 5. **Lucky thing**, we had made reservations at the local hotel beforehand. 6. Such stories are not **fit** for children's ears, if you ask me. 7. What makes your friend think he's got the **right** to give orders around here? 8. Direct questions about herself always **made her uneasy**. 9. As to me, you can do as you like. The matter has **to do with** you alone. 10. He didn't seem to **have anything against** the matter in principle, all his remarks **dealt with** details. 11. The exchange of opinions proved most useful and finally a decision was reached that **satisfied** everybody concerned. 12. He had to think fast for if he failed to give a definite answer by Thursday morning at the latest the offer could be **taken back**. 13. Planning to spend a couple of days in that town I wrote a friend asking if he could **let me stay** at his place.

Ex. 15. Speak on the following topics. Use the words and phrases given below.

1. In the Hotel Lobby

in the heart of the Deep South; New Orleans; the St. Gregory; a hotel for whites only; a group of new arrivals; to arrive by plane; to check one's baggage; to watch the baggage being unloaded from the airport limousine; to precede smb; to form a line; at the reception counter; to register at a hotel; to fill out a form; to sign one's name; to be checked in;

2. The New Arrival

Doctor Nicholas; a Negro; middle-aged; to arrive from the midwest; well-dressed; in an expensively tailored suit; a black Homburg hat; valise in hand; to speak with a midwestern accent; a cultured voice; to arrive for the dentists' convention; to do important scientific research; to make a report on malignant mouth tumours; to have a large practice; to lecture at the University; to have a fine reputation; to do well;

3. The Exchange at the Reception Counter

Dr Nicholas: to walk in unconcernedly; to be third in line; to wait patiently for one's turn; to give one's name; to have a reservation; to be shocked by the refusal; to keep oneself in hand; to produce a letter from the hotel management confirming the reservation, not cancelling it; to try to prove one's point; not to accept the explanation;

Clerk: to look up; to stiffen; to withdraw the registration pad; an embarrassing situation; to refuse to check smb in; to apologize; to shake one's head; to be firm; to follow the instructions; to allow smb to register at a hotel; strict rules concerning smb; to turn the case over to the assistant manager;

4. The Assistant Manager Takes Up the Matter

to have no real authority; to handle minor problems posed by guests; an elderly man; an old-timer; to have a good deal of experience; to know one's job; to take on a professional greeter's smile; smoothly; without fuss; to remove a potentially embarrassing scene from centre stage into the wings; a smooth manner; to gesture smb to a seat; to attend to a matter; to offer to find other suitable accommodation; not to dare to disobey one's orders; to arrange for smb's speedy departure; to get rid of an unwanted guest; to offer to make inquiries; to lift the receiver; a list of telephone numbers;

5. Dr. Nicholas Refuses to Take It Lying Down

to stand on one's rights; to make a complaint about smth; to speak sharply; to insist; to demand an explanation; a painful experience; to refuse to put up with such unfair treatment; to be determined to have it out with smb; to inquire

about the reasons; to realize; to have to uo w^th the colour of one's skin;

6. Dr. Ingram Appears On the Scene

President of the Dentists' Association; a small elderly man; white-haired; to greet smb warmly; to speak highly of smb; to joke; to have the pleasure of introducing smb to the convention; to look forward to seeing smb; an unexpected development; a hard blow; to be beyond smb; to be unable to get over the shock; to promise to take steps; to put smth right; to assure smb; to deal with the matter; to be determined; not to permit smb to get away with it; to walk out of the hotel.

SPECIAL DIFFICULTIES

Ex. 16. Translate the following sentences, using the verbs "lift, pick up, raise" according to the sense.

1. Для разгрузки товаров с корабля применяют особые, машины, которые могут **поднимать** несколько тонн за раз. 2. **Поднимите**, пожалуйста, с пола карандаш. Кто-то, видимо, случайно уронил его. 3. Чемодан оказался таким тяжелым, что я с трудом мог **поднять** его. 4. Не может быть, чтобы она **подняла** такой шум из-за пустяков. 5. Услышав телефонный звонок, он **поднял** трубку и ответил «Алло, слушаю вас». 6. Ребенку не терпелось **поднять** крышку коробки и посмотреть, что внутри. 7. Мальчику было так стыдно, что он не мог **поднять** глаз.

Ex. 17. Fill in the blanks with. nouns "cause, reason" according to the sense.

1. There are very good ... to believe that Ann is ill, though we don't know yet the ... of the illness. 2. My brother had to postpone his journey for family ... . 3. The ... of the quarrel between the two men must have been a misunderstanding. 4. There is no ... to suspect that the man is untruthful. 5. They are building a tunnel through the rock. That is the ... for the rock being exploded. 6. Carelessness in handling gas is often a ... of explosions. 7. He refused to explain the ... for his absence. 8. The child's poor health was the ... of the parents' anxiety, but after the medical examination it became evident that there were no ... for worry.

Ex. 18. Translate the following sentences, using "cause, reason" according to the sense.

1. Хотя и не было особой **причины** для смеха, но они смеялись от души. 2. Он очень невнимателен. Это **причина** всех его несчастий. 3. Нет **причины** опасаться, что Петр подведет нас. Он никогда не нарушал своих обещаний. 4. К сожалению, теперь трудно установить, что явилось **причиной** несчастного случая. 5. Странно, что она отказалась объяснить

причину своего внезапного отъезда. 6. Не принимайте ее жалобы близко к сердцу. Она часто жалуется без **причины**. Такой уж она человек.

Ex. 19. Fill in ths blanks with "happy, lucky, fortunate" according to the sense.

1. His face brightened up at the ... news. 2. You seem to have been born under a ... star. 3. The boy's success at school made his mother .... 4. It ought to be considered a most ... circumstance that I met you when I needed you most. 5. "Seven" is generally considered to be a ... number. 6. It was most ... that the wind changed and the boat could reach the shore safely. 7. Though the man was ... in business yet he was far from .... 8. They were very ... in their married life. 9. I'll be ... to accept your invitation because it's not everybody who is so ... to have such a ... (nance to go and see the exhibition with you as a guide.

Ex. 20. Translate the following sentences, using "happy, lucky, fortunate" according to the sense.

1. Какое событие вы бы назвали самым **счастливым** в вашей жизни? - Мне **посчастливилось** присутствовать на открытии выставки современной живописи. 3. Мой товарищ очень хорошо отвечал на экзамене. Он говорит, что ему достался **счастливый** билет. 4. Как жаль, что вы упустили такую **счастливую** возможность. 5. Посылать открытки друзьям с пожеланием **счастливого** нового года — хорошая традиция. 6. Если бы не **счастливое** обстоятельство, мне бы никогда не довелось побывать в этих местах. 7. Его осенила **счастливая** догадка.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 21. Fill in the blanks with missing auxiliary verbs, retell the passage in reported speech.

Ada Trimball wrote Walter Hughes a note. "... come. Mother and I ... love to see you. I ... not going to tell her you ... coming but ... save your visit for a surprise. So please pretend that you ... just dropped in."

On the afternoon of Walter's visit Ada could not help telling her mother he ... coming. It was a small, but complete triumph. "He wrote me and asked if he could come, and I said of course." "Why ... n't you tell me? What was behind that?" Mrs Trimball's anger ... hardly controlled. "How ... you know I want to see him?" "You can always be upstairs with a headache." "Ridiculous! I wish when you ... having people to my house you ... tell me."

"I ... telling you now. But why this strong dislike towards Walter? I ... never heard you say a word against him before. Stay upstairs, if you ... n't want to see him."

"Oh, you miserable fool!" said Mrs Trimball.

She recovered her calmness before Walter's arrival.When he entered the

sitting-room she gave him her hand, but he said: "... n't I deserve* a kiss?" She put up her cheek and he kissed her.

"... you like tea, or ... you really prefer** a drink? said Ada Trim-ball.

"If there is tea, I ... rather have that. I limit myself to two drinks before dinner," he said. "Well, this is like old times."

"Where ... you live now? Colorado?" said Constance Trimball.

"Denver. I have ... living there since the war and I guess I ... really settled there."

"I ... get the tea things," said Ada Trimball, leaving them to themselves.

"I ... always heard that you have to get used to the altitude in Denver . ... that true?"

"It ... true. How ... you?"

"I ... very well, thanks. ... n't you surprised to see me?"

заслужить предпочитать

at all. Alice Ryder's in Mill Pond, so you... turn up there soon-later."

Ryder? I ... n't seen her in nearly twenty years."

(after "A Cold Calculating Thing" by John O'Hara.)

Ex. 22. Fill in the blanks with "should" or "would", give two variants if possible, note the difference, translate the sentences into Russian.

1. The tourist asked if he ... be able to exchange dollars for pounds before crossing the border. 2. The tourist asked if he ... exchange dollars for pounds before crossing the border. 3. I was not sure whether I ... influence his choice for I didn't know what was best for him. 4. I wasn't sure that the time ... suit them. 5. He didn't know yet whether he ... go there by train or plane. 6. He didn't know if she ... have any objections to the arrangement. 7. We asked the clerk at the desk if we ... register before occupying the rooms. 8. We asked if the clerk at the desk ... register us. 9. The manager told the secretary that he ... start receiving visitors at three. 10. The manager told the secretary that she ... send out the invitations. 11. Finally I realized that I couldn't just sit in this man's office forever. So I asked him what to do, I mean, what I ... do.

Ex. 23. Practise the following according to the model.

M o d e l: I haven't been home for seven years.

It is seven years since **I have been home**.

1. I haven't taken a holiday for five years. 2. I haven't seen him for ages. 3. She hasn't had a letter from him for a year. 4. I have heard nothing from him for a very long time. 5. He hasn't felt so fine for weeks. 6. I haven't enjoyed myself so much in years.

---

* заслужить

** предпочитать

Ex. 24. Translate the attributive clauses into English using the Past Perfect Continuous form, explain why this form must be used.

1. He lit a cigarette and then returned to the table (за которым сидел). 2. She put down the book (которую читала). 3. He again picked up the photograph (которую рассматривал). 4. The visitor (который сидел в углу) suddenly jumped to his feet. 5. He handed me the newspaper (которую читал). 6. It was not long before she started humming again the song (которую пела). 7. Hearing the telephone ringing he threw away the cigarette (которую курил) and rushed into the hall. 8. After the telephone talk he again sat down before the TV set to see the film (который он смотрел).

Ex. 25. Translate the following sentences into English according to the model, watch the use of tenses.

M o d e l: Не успел он сказать двух слов, как все рассмеялись.
He **had not said two words (he had hardly said)** two words when everybody burst into laughter.

1. Не успел поезд тронуться, как в вагон вошел контролер. 2. Геологи не прожили там и недели, как пошли дожди. 3. Не успели мы войти в зал, как свет погас. 4. Едва писатель произнес свое имя, как его окружили журналисты. 5. Едва он завернул за угол, как встретил своего старого приятеля. 6. Она не прочла и страницы, как заснула. 7. Я не сделал и двух шагов, как пошел сильный снег. 8. Едва докладчик произнес несколько слов, как раздались голоса протеста. 9. Не успел он отказаться от этого предложения, как пожалел об этом.

Ex. 26. Use Passive voice in the following sentences according to the model

M o d e l: The shop is under repair.
The shop **is being repaired**.

1. The question is still under consideration. 2. These patients are under constant observation. 3. The problem which is under discussion is of great interest to many people. 4. The new treatment of the disease is not practised yet, it's still under study. 5. "How did the case end?" "It's still under review." 6. "Did he tell you who was under suspicion?" 7. You can't see the palace now. It is under reconstruction.

Ex. 27. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

A. 1. It's fifteen years since I ... home (to be). 2. Did you tell him we ... in the morning? (to leave) 3. Times ... since we were young (to change). 4. "Do you want to go home?" "I suppose it's time we ... about it" (to be thinking). 5.

He came back with the good news that the suit case ... and ... to the railway station (to find, to return). 6. The place always looked unsettled as though the family ... just or ... to leave (to move in, to be preparing). 7. When his mother fell ill he gave up his practice to take care of her so that she ... her wish which was that she ... to a hospital, (to have, not to send). 8. Remembering things which he ..., it occurred to him that he not ... a truthful picture of what ... (to say, to give, to take place). 9. I could feel we ... (to look at). 10. It will be the first vacation I ... in years (to take). 11. She wished she ... in the journey (to include). 12. I ... away for a year and a half (to be). 13. The kid didn't speak while his father ... (to shave); he knew that shaving was a delicate act and if you ... (to interrupt) you ... (may cut) yourself.

B. Mr. Cust (to sit) very still. His breakfast (to lie) cold and un-tasted on his plate. A newspaper (to put) up against the teapot and it was this newspaper that Mr. Cust (to read) with interest.

Suddenly he (to get up), (to walk) to and fro for a minute then (to sink) into a chair by the window. He (to cover) his face with his hands with a sigh.

He (not to hear) the sound of the opening door. His landlady, Mrs. Marbury, (to stand) in the doorway.

"I (to wonder), Mr. Cust, if you — why, whatever is it? You (not to feel) well?"

Mr. Cust (to raise) his head.

"Nothing. It's nothing at all, Mrs. Marbury. I (not to feel) very well this morning."

Mrs. Marbury inspected the breakfast tray.

"So I (to see). You (not to touch) your breakfast. Your head (to trouble) you again?"

"No, at least, yes ... I — I just (to feel) a bit low."

"Well I am sorry, I'm sure. You (not to go) away to-day then?" Mr. Cust (to jump) up abruptly.

"No, no I have to go. It's business. Important. Very important." His hands (to shake). Seeing him so excited, Mrs. Marbury (to try) to calm him.

"Well, if you must — you must. You (to go) far this time?" She (to pick up) the paper that (to lie) on the floor.

"Nothing but this murdering business in the paper nowadays," she (to say) as she (to glance) at the headlines before putting it back on the table. "Gives me the creeps, it does. I (not to read) it."

Mr. Cust's lips (to move) but no sound (to come) from them.

"Doncaster — that's the place he is going to do his next murder," (to say) Mrs. Marbury. "If I (to live) in Doncaster and my name (to begin) with a D. I (to take) the first train away, that I would. I (to run) no risks. What you (to say), Mr. Cust? Why, Mr. Cust, you do look bad. Hadn't you better have a little drop of something? Really, now you oughtn't to go travelling to-day." Mr. Cust (to pull) himself together.

"It is necessary, Mrs. Marbury. I always (to be) punctual in my business appointments. People must have — must have belief in you! When I (to promise) to do a thing, I (to carry) it through. It's the only way to get on in business."

"But if you (to be) ill?"

"I (not to be) ill, Mrs. Marbury. Just a little worried over different personal matters. I (to sleep) badly. I (to be) really quite all right."

His manner (to be) so firm that Mrs. Marbury (to gather) up the breakfast things and (to leave) the room.

(after "The A.B.C. Murders" by Agatha Christie)

Ex. 28. Test translation.

1. Обмен мнениями оказался очень полезным. 2. Вполне понятно, что изменения, внесенные в расписание работы учреждения, касаются всех его сотрудников. 3. Еще трудно сделать какие-либо определенные заключения относительно новой модели машины. Она требует проверки и детального изучения. 4. Портовые власти Ливерпуля были озабочены положением, вызванным забастовкой докеров. 5. К сожалению, нам пришлось взять назад свой заказ на продажу нам запасных частей, так как предложенное фирмой время поставки Для нас не подходило. 6. Убедительно просим вас подтвердить телеграммой наш телефонный разговор с вами относительно условий контракта. 7. Спектакль отменили из-за болезни актера, исполняющего главную роль. 8. Напрасно ты обидел товарища, не разобравшись в чем дело. Я бы на твоем месте извинился и взял свои слова обратно. 9. Замечания редактора не вызвали никаких возражений. 10. Не было никаких возражений против того, чтобы тов. Иванова назначили руководителем экспедиции. У него большой опыт работы и, к тому же, он умеет обращаться с людьми. 11. На дверях вагонов электропоездов обычно есть надпись: «Не прислоняться». 12. Замечание было неуместным, и всем стало неловко. 13. Казалось, что она была чем-то смущена. 14. Я не нашелся, что сказать. Мне никогда раньше не приходилось бывать в таком неловком положении. 15. Взрыв был вызван небрежным обращением с газом. 16. Врач заверил нас, что нет причин для беспокойства. 17. Как только вы приедете в город, дайте нам знать, в какой гостинице вы остановились.

PRECIS WRITING

Ex. 29. a) Read the passage; b) Write 3-5 questions covering the basic points of the passage; c) Give a title to the passage and write a precis.

I was shown into the waiting-room which, as I had expected was full. Any waiting-room—especially a dentist's, as this was—is not the best place in the

world to spend an afternoon. No matter how hard a dentist tries to make his waiting-room look pleasant, it always has an atmosphere of its own. There is that smell that reminds you of a hospital. A small table in the centre is covered with very old and torn magazines; the curtains are faded and the armchairs have a sunken look about them.

This waiting-room was no exception. I took my seat and decided to pass the time watching the people around me.

A little man beside me was turning over the pages of a magazine quickly and nervously. It was hard to understand what he was looking at, for every three minutes or so he would throw the magazine on the table, seize another, and sink back into his chair. Opposite me there was a young mother who was trying to keep her son from making a noise. The boy had obviously grown tired of waiting. He had placed an ash-tray on the floor and was making aeroplane-noises. Near him, an old man was fast asleep, and the boy's mother was afraid that sooner or later the boy would wake the gentleman up. Meanwhile, the little man beside me kept sighing loudly. At last, he got up, walked towards the door and began impatiently to examine the pictures on the wall. Soon, growing tired of it, he took another magazine from the pile on the table and dropped into his chair again. Even the boy had become quiet and was now sleeping in his mother's arms. There was a deathly silence in the room as the door opened and a nurse entered. The people looked up expectantly, then settled down again as the next lucky patient was led out of the room.

SPEECH EXERCISES

Ex. 30. Retell in narrative form.

"Excuse me, gentlemen," a voice said behind Dr. Ingram as he and Dr. Nicholas were leaving the lobby of the hotel. As they turned, a camera clicked. "That's good," he said. "Let's try it once more," and the camera clicked again.

The manager came hurrying up saying: "You are not allowed to take pictures..."

Dr. Ingram asked: "Are you a newspaper man?"

"Good question, doctor," the man with the camera said. "I wish my editor heard you, he's of a different opinion, but today he'll change his mind, when I send him these pictures."

"What paper?" asked the manager suspecting the worst, but hoping it wasn't anything important.

"New York Herald Tribune."

"Good." The dentists' president said. "They'll make the best of it. I hope you saw what happened."

"You might say I got the picture," the newspaper man said. "I'll need a few details from you, so I can spell the names right. First, though, I'd like another

picture outside the hotel — you and the other doctor together."

Dr. Ingram seized Dr. Nicholas's arm. "It's the way to fight this thing, Jim. We'll drag the name of this hotel through every newspaper in the country."

Dr. Nicholas nodded slowly.

As they were moving away Dr. Ingram was saying, "I'd like to do this fairly quickly. As soon as we have your pictures I intend to start pulling our convention out of this hotel. The only way to hit these people is where they feel it most—financially."

(after "Hotel" by Arthur Hailey)

Ex. 31. Answer the following questions using the active vocabulary. Sum up your answers.

1. A Hotel

1. What are hotels for? 2. What makes a hotel look different from other buildings in a city? 3. In what part of a city are the better hotels situated? 4. What does the inside of a hotel look like? 5. What is in the lobby? 6. What is Reception for? What are the duties of the reception clerk? 7. What services does a hotel offer to its guests? 8. What do prices for a room depend on? 9. Would you rather stay at a hotel or at your friend's when in a strange city?

2. Checking in

1. When do people stop at hotels? 2. When is a reservation made? How is it made? 3. What must you do on arrival? 4. How are people checked in? What papers must they have with them? 5. Why are the guests requested to leave their keys at Reception each time they leave the hotel? 6. When is it difficult to get a room at a hotel? 7. Is it the duty of the hotel management to find other accommodation in the city for a guest they can't take in?

3. A Congress

1. What problems does a biological (oncological, etc.) congress deal with? 2. Why are congresses held? How often are they held? What does it depend on? What has the importance of a certain branch of science got to do with it? 3. When does the Preparatory (Organisation) Committee start its work? What are its duties? 4. Why is it important that the delegates should know the programme beforehand? 5. What language does a delegate use when making his report? 6. Why are there special booths for translators? 7. Why are there radios (radio receivers) built into the chairs of the delegates? 8. What are earphones for? 9. What makes the work of a congress successful?

Ex. 32. Read the passage, анзиг the. questions, using the vocabulary of the lesson and retell it.

A Colorado farmer finished his work for the day and turned toward the house, where supper was waiting. In the dark autumn sky he noticed the lights of an airplane. It was United Air Lines Flight* Number 629, eleven minutes out of Denver and heading for Portland, Oregon, with thirty-nine passengers and five crew members.** Suddenly there was a terrible explosion. It was 7.03 P.M., November 1, 1955. The farmer standing in his yard had witnessed one of the most shocking mass murders in the annals of American crime.

When news of the tragedy reached Denver, only one man knew that murder had been committed that night. Only one man knew that a time bomb had been ticking in an old suitcase when it was loaded on the plane. The man was Jack Gilbert Graham, aged twenty-three, who once told a neighbour, "I'd do anything for money."

Jack Graham had driven his mother Mrs. Daisy King, to the Denver airport to put her aboard Flight 629, the beginning of a long-planned journey to visit a daughter in Alaska. He carried her valise and her old suitcase from the automobile to the ticket counter to bs weighed.*** The luggage was thirty-seven pounds over the sixty-six pound limit.

An airline ticket agent suggested (to Mrs. King that she might save $27 by lightening her luggage and mailing part of her clothing.

Mrs. King turned to her son. "Do you think I'll need all this?"

"Yes, Mother," he assured her. "I'm sure you will need it."

Mrs. King hesitated a moment and then nodded. While she was paying the overweight charge, her son filled out two insurance policies for $37,500 each and two others for S 6,250 each. Mrs. King signed three of the policies but for some reason Jack didn't get her signature on one for $37,500. Perhaps the ticking of the time bomb was beginning to sound in his ears and he was becoming panicky. His mother's plane was behind schedule and time was running out.

Flight 629 arrived eleven minutes late. For Jack Graham there were twelve more agonizing minutes while the plane sat waiting for a late passenger. At last the door of the plane shut behind the late passenger, and at 6.52 P.M. the big ship took off.

Questions

1. What tragedy occurred in November, 1955? 2. Who happened to witness the accident? 3. What had caused the explosion? 4. How was the accident later described by the press? 5. How was the crime prepared? 6. Where was Mrs.

---

* рейс

** члены экипажа

*** взвешитвать

King going? 7. Who brought her to the airport? 8. Why did the ticket agent suggest that Mrs. King mail part of her clothing? 9. What remarks did mother and son exchange on the matter of luggage? 10. Why did Jack object to the luggage being opened? 11. What did Jack do while his mother was paying the overweight charge? 12. Why did one of the insurance policies remain unsigned? 13. Why was Jack becoming panicky? 14. What would have happened if the flight had been cancelled? 15. What facts concerning Jack came to light during the inquiry? 16. What confirmed the suspicions of the police that it was Mrs. King's son who was responsible for the tragedy?

Ex. 33. Read the following, answer the questions. Retell the passage in English.

ЕСЛИ ТЫ НЕГР...

... Расизм продолжает оставаться одной из характерных черт американского общества. Это вынуждены признать сегодня в Вашингтоне. Специальная комиссия, созданная после острых расовых столкновений в США в 1967 году, пришла к выводу в своем докладе, что Соединенные Штаты «являются страной глубоко расистской».

Условия жизни цветного населения Америки ухудшаются из года в год. В гетто американских городов, в непригодных для жилья помещениях живут негры, мексиканцы, пуэрториканцы. Здесь чувствуется острый недостаток школ и больниц.

Побывавшая недавно в США колумбийская писательница Мария Исабель де ла Вега отмечает в своей книге «Расизм в США»: «Гетто — это тюрьма, где негр — не человек. Ему отказывают в праве на человеческие чувства, за ним не признают способности к интеллектуальной деятельности и даже способности страдать».

Автор доклада о положении в штате Миссисипи, представленного одной из подкомиссий сената США, отмечал, что он был поражен условиями жизни негритянского населения в этом штате. «Когда я отправлялся в Миссисипи, — говорит он, — мне рассказывали, что существует план истребления негров, но этому я не хотел верить. Сейчас, когда я все увидел своими глазами, я верю».

Цветной в сегодняшней Америке — последний человек. Его берут на работу последним и увольняют первым. Для цветных оставляют самые тяжелые и хуже оплачиваемые виды работы. Они практически лишены возможности продвигаться по службе.

Questions

1. What remains a characteristic feature of life in present-day America? 2. What conclusion did a special US Congress committee come to concerning the causes of racial unrest in the country? 3. What are the living conditions of the

coloured community? 4. What is life like in the ghettoes? 5. How does the Columbian writer Maria Isabel de la Vegas describe the position of a black person in the USA? 6. What were the impressions registered by a US Senator in a report concerning the black community in the state of Missisippi? 7. What convinced him that there was a plan for the extermination of the black population in that state? 8. Why is the coloured population especially hard hit by unemployment? 9. Why do the coloured people often say about themselves that they are the last to be hired and the first to be fired? 10. What are the chances of promotion for a coloured person?

Ex. 34. Retell the following in English.

1. ЖЕЛАННЫЙ ГОСТЬ

Прежде чем выехать в Даллас на встречу с читателями, один известный американский писатель позвонил в гостиницу и спросил, может ли он приехать с собакой.

Хозяин отеля ответил:

— Я не видел собаки, которая засыпала бы в постели с горящей сигарой в зубах и портила бы мебель. Нет собаки, которая, уезжая, увозила бы с собой полотенца и наволочки. Поэтому я с удовольствием приму вашу собаку!

a welcome guest; Dallas; a towel; a pillow case.

2. НА ВСЕ ВКУСЫ

Настоящий хозяин отеля обязан учитывать вкусы своих гостей. Этот факт не подлежит никакому сомнению. Впрочем, у одного австрийского дельца желание угодить гостям приняло несколько странные формы. В холле своего альпийского отеля он приказал повесить большое объявление. На нем написано: «Убедительная просьба к американским туристам не возвращаться в номер позже двух часов ночи, к шведским—не вставать раньше шести утра, к итальянским — не кричать после десяти вечера. К сведению туристов из Великобритании, с собаками въезд в отель запрещен».

Неизвестно, советовался ли хозяин с социологами перед тем, как повесить это объявление. «Антиреклама» привлекла огромное количество туристов: от желающих остановиться именно в этой гостинице буквально нет отбоя.

a hotelkeeper; an Austrian businessman; Alpine; to put up a notice; to enjoy enormous popularity.

Ex. 35. Read and retell the following story.

THE HOSPITABLE TAXI-DRIVER

(an episode from Charlie Chaplin's "Autobiography")

That evening when I arrived in New York, every hotel was filled. After driving round for over an hour, the taxi-driver a rough-looking fellow of about forty, turned and said: "Listen, there is no sense in trying to get into any hotel at this hour, and you're unlikely to find any other accommodation, so you'd better come home to my place and sleep there until the morning."

"That's very kind of you," I said, feeling embarrassed, and introduced myself.

He was surprised, and smiling broadly said: "My wife will get a kick* out of this."

We arrived somewhere in the Bronx** and entered one of the ordinary-looking houses. He led me to a back room where there was a large bed, in it a boy of twelve, his son, was sleeping. "Wait," the driver said, then he lifted the boy and put him over to the edge of the bed making room for me. Then he turned to me, "Get in there."

I was going to refuse, but his hospitality was so touching that I could not refuse. He gave me a clean night-shirt and I climbed into bed carefully for fear of waking or disturbing the bov.

I never slept a wink.*** In the morning when the boy got up and dressed, through my half-closed eyes I saw him give me an indifferent look and leave the room. A few minutes later he and a young lady of eight, evidently his sister, came into the room. Still pretending to be asleep I saw them staring at me wide-eyed and excited. Then the two of them left.

It wasn't long before I heard a whisper in the passage, then the driver gently opened the door to see if I was awake. I assured him that I was.

"We've got your bath ready," he said. "It's at the end of the passage." He had brought a dressing-gown and some slippers**** and a towel. "What would you like for breakfast?"

"Anything," I said apologetically.

"Whatever you want — bacon and eggs, toast and coffee?"

"Wonderful."

They timed it perfectly. The minute I finished dressing, his wife came into the room with a hot breakfast. There was little furniture but a centre table, an armchair, and a sofa; a couple of photographs of family groups hung on the wall over the sofa. While eating breakfast alone I could hear the noise coming from a crowd of children and grownups outside the house.

"They are beginning to know that you're here," smiled his wife, bringing in

---

* kick (*sl*): *here* pleasure

** one of the five boroughs of New York

*** не сомкнул глаз

**** домашние туфли

the coffee. Then the taxi-driver entered, all excited. "Look," he said, "there's a big crowd outside and it's getting bigger. If you let those kids get a look at you, they'll go away, otherwise the Press'll get on to it and you're sunk."

"By all means, let them come in," I replied.

And so the children came in, giggling,* and walked around the table while I drank my coffee. The taxi-driver outside was saying: "All right, don't make a fuss, line up, two at a time."

The next day the driver, in a stiff collar, and his wife, all dressed up, came to visit me at the Ritz. He said the Press had been bothering him to write a story for the Sunday papers about my staying at his house. "But," he said, "I wouldn't tell them a thing without your permission. After all it's up to you."

"Go ahead," I said.

Ex. 36. Use the following words and phrases in situations. Equality of Nations in the Soviet Union

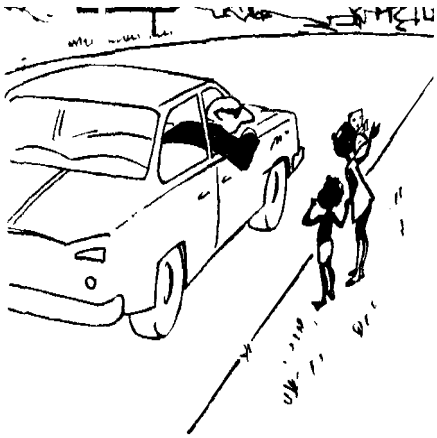
A. the October Socialist Revolution; to open a new era in the history of mankind; to found the first socialist country in the world; to build up a socialist society; to put an end to all forms of exploitation of man by man; to unite equal nations and peoples of the USSR into one big friendly family; the "Declaration of the Rights of the Peoples of Russia"; to be published on November 16, 1917; to run as follows...; to promote the principles of equality and sovereignty; the right of nations to self-determination; to guarantee the free development of national minorities; the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics; to be set up on the initiative of V. I. Lenin in December 1922; to be based on principles of complete equality; to unite 15 Union Republics.

B. a Socialist Republic; to have one's own Constitution, legislative organs of power; to have the right to a free economic, political and cultural development; to enter into direct contacts with foreign states and conclude agreements and exchange diplomatic representatives with them; to make great progress in the development oi national culture; to set up higher educational establisments in Union Republics; speedy economic and cultural development; to be a base for establishing genuine equality between nations.

Ex. 37. Tell the story of the picture.

the Deep South; to have been driving for hours; to ask the way; to put up at a hotel; the colour bar.

* хихикая



The hotel, sir? Turn right, go as far as the prison, then turn left, past the police station and another prison, then you'll see a movie house with a "White Only" sign, move straight on till you get to the Black district, then turn left.

Ex. 38. Subjects for oral and written composition.

1. Tell the story as if you were: a) Dr Nicholas; b) Dr Ingram; c) the receptionist; d) Mr. Bailey; e) a guest who happened to witness the scene.
2. Give character-sketches of a) Dr Nicholas; b) Dr Ingram; c) Mr. Bailey.
3. Write a summary of the text.
4. The struggle of the coloured community in the USA for its rights.
5. The causes of the Civil War in the USA. Say whether the victory of the Northerners over the troops of the Confederation brought freedom to the Negro population in the true sense of the word.
6. Explain why an episode of the kind described in the text would be altogether unthinkable in the Soviet Union.
7. Write a letter to a hotel making a reservation, and then another confirming your reservation.
8. Describe your stay at a hotel.

LESSON TEN

Text: "A Vote of No Confidence" from "No Love for Johnnie" by W. Fienburgh[1]
Grammar: Verbals. General Review.

A VOTE OF NO CONFIDENCE

Byrne arrived in Marshfield an hour before the meeting was due to start. He wondered why Drake, the chairman, had thought it so important that he should be present.

He let himself into the local Party office, a shop in the High Street which had been turned into an office during the election in 1950. There was a photograph of himself on one of the walls taken nine years ago which advertised:

Mr. John Byrne, your new M.P.,[2] will attend at[3] these offices from 6.30 p.m. onwards every Friday evening. Bring your problems to your new Labour M.P.[2] He will solve them for you.

Perhaps that was the trouble, he thought. He had intended to be present every Friday evening when he was elected, for a year he had attended regularly. Every Friday he had interviewed a couple of dozen constituents about their housing problems, their pensions and a lot of individual problems.

After a year he started to make excuses. He could not find houses for people when the houses did not exist, and in any case these constituency problems were better dealt with by letter. What was the point in spending every Friday evening in the dirty office, when there was so little he could do to help the people who waited patiently to see him?

He decided that they had called him in order to make him promise to attend more regularly in future.

I must win them back, he thought, for if he lost Marshfield he had lost everything — no seat, no right of entry to the House of Commons.[4]

Jimmy March, the Party secretary, entered the room with his pile of agendas and started to place them on each of the chairs. He was, too, obviously avoiding Byrne, whom he must have noticed.

"Hello, Jimmy," Byrne called cheerfully, "always on the job."

"Oh, hello."

Byrne could feel the hostility in the emphatic way March moved round the room.

"I hear there's likely to be a spot of bother tonight," Byrne said.

"Perhaps."

"Of course, I'll be along more regularly on Fridays in future now we're in Government."[5]

"It'll be a change to see you," March said indifferently.

The door opened again and Charlie Drake, the chairman, came into the room, anxiously.

"Glad you're here, Johnnie," he said, shaking Byrne's hand.

"I got your message, what's wrong?" Byrne asked.

"I'm none too sure. Some of them want to move a vote of no confidence in you."

"Damn it, they've only just elected me."

"I know, I know. One or two of them weren't keen even then."

"But what have I done? There hasn't been time to do anything since we got back."

"They've got hold of something."

"Are you with me?"[6] Byrne asked anxiously.

There was no reassurance in Drake's voice, although he did nod his head. "Oh, yes ... but I'm only the chairman. I've got to go with the will of the meeting."

One by one the committee members came in. Some of them smiled and nodded to him, but too many of them either did not want to catch his eye or were intentionally avoiding him. Annoyance gave way to fear. This was serious. There was obviously a prearranged plot on hand, and most of the younger people knew about it and were behind it. The older members of the committee sensed the atmosphere, but were unaware of the details. Whatever had started the crisis,[7] he had to depend on the old hands against the youngsters. So his obvious tactic was to play for their support.

Drake was nervous, he showed it in the way the table shook when he rose and rested his hand on it.

"We'd better make a start," he said.

Ted Collins jumped to his feet in the far back corner.

"This is it,"[8] Byrne thought. "This is the start."

Collins said: "I gave you notice that we wanted to discuss a vital matter concerning our Member. We can do it or we can wait. But to my way of thinking it would be better to get on with it."

There was a growl of "hear-hears."[9]

"I'm in your hands," Drake said weakly, "but it's not right. This should come at the end."

"Now," Byrne thought, "I'd better make a move." He stood up.

"I agree with Ted. I don't know what you want to discuss but let's get on with it."

He sat down. One up to him.[10] They could not now accuse him of trying to hide behind the rules.

"All right,"said Drake, "but don't take too long about it, Ted. We've a lot of business to get through."

Now that Ted Collins had the floor" he seemed to grow in Byrne's eyes. He was quietly confident and very sure.

"Mr. Chairman, Comrades, I don't particularly enjoy the task which lies before me. But it has been brought to my notice that our Member has recently been involved in a series[12] of incidents in the House of Commons which amount to a direct betrayal of the cause for which we all worked so unselfishly at the recent election. What I want to say is this. This so-called Socialist Government which we just elected is about to start on a programme of repression in the Middle East,[13] on a plan to use British troops, our lads, lads from Marshfield perhaps, in a wicked imperialist adventure in the Middle East. This right-wing[14] Government which we struggled to elect, has given orders to support the Sheikh of Masran[15] in suppressing the democratically elected assembly.

"Where does our Member come into this? I will tell you. He was to raise the matter on the floor in the House. A large group of fellow-members were ready to support him. But what happened? The man we sent to Westminster[16] to safeguard democracy betrayed the workers of Masran. He let down his comrades in the House,[4] because when the time came to approach the Prime Minister, before the eyes of the whole country, our Member was hiding somewhere.

"I say this, we can have no confidence in a man who is not prepared to stand up for his principles. We cannot put our trust in a turncoat. He has let democracy down. He has let us down. I move."[17]

He sat down.

Sarah Robson jumped to her feet. "I'd like to second the motion,[18] Mr. Chairman. This isn't the first time our Member has failed us. How often have we seen him here in the last year or two? Time after time people have stopped me in the street and complained that they have written to the Member and had no reply."

Byrne knew he had to answer to this.

The broad, full, self-important figure of Alderman[19] Raymond Glen rose to speak.

"I don't like to say this, but blunt speaking is my motto. You all know me. I'll say to a man's face what others say behind his back. I'm afraid our Member has got a bit too big for his boots.[20] He'll do well to remember that we public figures owe everything to the people who put us there."

Byrne rose firmly. He dared not allow another speech against him.

"What is the basis for this attack?" he asked. "That I talked to the Prime

Minister and tried to get him to change his mind on Masran? And I can say this, knowing that I can trust you, that the Prime Minister gave me firm promises which were satisfactory, as time will show." Then, his words became emphatic, almost sincere. "The Prime Minister took me fully into his confidence. All will be for the best, I make no apology for what I have done."

He was sticking his neck out too far,[21] he thought. But if troops were sent to Masran he could always say that the P.M.[22] had deceived him, gone back on his word and let him down.

"Now I come to the more serious part of our friendly discussion, the charge that I have ignored the constituency. Let me tell you this. During the past year I have addressed ninety-two public meetings up and down the country as my contribution to defeat the Tories." He invented the figures as he went along. He had learned from experience that it was always more effective to give the exact figures—provided, of course, no one was in a position to check your figures. But as he spoke he knew that he did not sound convincing, and he suddenly understood that they did not trust him. I've lost, he thought. I'm beaten.

"Vote," someone shouted.

Charlie Drake looked round anxiously.

"In view of the Member's explanation, does Mr. Collins wish to withdraw his motion?"

"No," an uncompromising reply from the back.

'Then we'll have to vote. Those in favour of the vote of no confidence in our Member."

Drake counted slowly. "One, two ... thirty-one, thirty-two, thirty-three. Against."

Five hands went up. There were no abstentions.

Charlie Drake was speaking.

"This is a very serious decision. And it can't do the Party any good coining so soon after the election. Let's leave it like this, we've made our decision—now let's say to our Johnnie here that he's on trial. Are you agreed?"

"Agreed," they said, once they had made their point.

Byrne wanted to thank them, to say something, to promise to behave himself. But he could not. Everything in the room was swimming in front of his eyes. It had been a narrow escape. Yet he should have seen it coming.

Following the election he had concentrated too much on his step-by-step progress in Parliament. He had been too ambitious. For years his mind had been constantly busy with the problem: if I take this line, how will it influence my position in the Party? What are my chances? What initiative can I take to push me a half-inch[23] further towards the Ministerial office and the Ministerial car? He would have to be more careful in the future.

NOTES

1. **Wilfred Fienburgh** (1919-195S), English writer. During the war ha took part in the Normandy Invasion. After the war he became a trade union official. In 1951 he was elected Labour M.P. for North Islington. Hr died in 1953 after a car accident. A few days before his death he sent the manuscript of *No Love for Johnnie* to a publishing house; it was published in 1959.

2. **M.P.** Member of Parliament.

Labour M.P.: Member of Parliament from the Labour Party.

3. **attend** may be followed by at to indicate the place where one attends or is to attend. E.g. It was requested that he attend at the office at 10 a.m. next Thursday.

4. **the House of Commons** == **the House** палата общин

the House of Lords == **the Lords** палата лордов

5. **in Government**: in power — у власти

6. **Are you with me**=Are you on my side? Will you support me?

7. **crisis** ['kraisis] as many other Greek words absorbed into the language (basis, thesis, analysis, etc.) keeps its Greek plural form: crises ['kraisi:z] (bases, theses, analyses, etc.)

8. **This is it**: *here* — началось

9. **hear! hear!** *int*. An expression of support for the speaker's words, loosely corresponding to the Russian: правильно говорит

10. **One up to him**: one point in his favour

11. **to have (take) the floor**: to address a meeting, to speak in debate

12. **series**: a number of; one form is used lor both the singular and the plural

13. **the Middle East**: Ближний Восток

14. **right-wing**: reactionary — правый, реакционный Compare: left-wing — левый, прогрессивный

15. **Sheikh of Masran**: ruler of Masran (an imaginary Arab state)

16. **Westminster**=Palace of Westminster, seat of British Parliament

17. **to move**=to make a motion: to make a formal request or proposal at a meeting — вносить предложение

18. **to second**: to support a motion. No motion will be voted upon unless it is seconded

19. **Alderman**: one of the senior members of a city or county council

20. **to be too big for one's boots**: to pretend to be more important than one is in fact

21. **to stick one's neck out (too far)**: to expose oneself to danger

22. **P.M.**: Prime Minister

23. **inch**; дюйм (==2,5 см) a unit of length used before decimalisation (десятичная система) was officially introduced in Britain in February 1971

VOCABULARY

elect *vt* выбирать, избирать (голосованием) to elect a representative (committee, etc.); to elect smb chairman (secretary, delegate, etc.); He was elected deputy to the local Soviet, election *n* выборы; general election(s) всеобщие выборы; election campaign предвыборная кампания **Phr**. hold an election проводить выборы, elector *n* избиратель; (*Am*.) выборщик; electoral *a* избирательный an electoral system

avoid *vt* избегать, сторониться, уклоняться to avoid smth/smb (doing smth); to avoid difficulties (an accident, a person, etc.) He avoided answering my question.

vote *vt* голосовать to vote for (against) smb/smth The meeting voted on the proposal point by point, vote *n* 1. голосование **Phr**. put to (the) vote 2. голос to give one's vote to smb; to have the right to vote 3. вотум, решение vote of (no)confidence вотум (не)доверия. voter *n* избиратель

confident *a* уверенный a confident look (manner, smile, answer, etc.); to be confident of success (victory, one's future, etc.); confidence *n* уверенность, доверие to have much (little, no, etc.) confidence in smb/smth He spoke with confidence, confidential *a* конфиденциальный, секретный confidential information (correspondence, etc.); a confidential report (paper, visit, etc.)

keen *a* 1. острый, проницательный (взгляд и т. п.) a keen look (interest, mind, intelligence, sense of humour, etc.) 2. страстно желающий, увлекающийся чем-л to be keen on smth (doing smth) He is keen on football. He was keen on winning the game.

aware *a* (*used only predic*.) сознающий, знающий, осведомленный to be aware of danger (crisis, the situation, etc.) He was aware of danger = He was aware that there was danger.

support *vt* 1. поддерживать to support a party (a sports team, a proposal, etc.); to support smb in his plans (ideas, work, etc.) 2. содержать (семью) He has a family to support, support *n* поддержка They spoke in support of his plan.

betray *vt* 1. изменять, предавать to betray a secret (smb's interests, one's friends, etc.); to betray smth/smb to smb. 2. выдавать, подводить His voice betrayed him. betrayal *n* измена, предательство

selfish *a* эгоистичный, корыстный a selfish person (aim, etc.); selfish interests, etc. unselfish *a* бескорыстный, самоотверженный; selfishness *n* эгоизм

struggle *vi* бороться to struggle for peace (freedom, independence, equal rights, etc.); to struggle against smb He struggled to succeed in business, struggle *n* борьба a revolutionary (political, hard, successful, etc.) struggle

trust *vt* доверять(ся), полагаться (на кого-л); вверять, поручать to trust smb with a task (job, etc.) He can be fully trusted, trust *n* доверие, вера **Phr**. have (put) trust in smb

owe *vi* быть должным кому-л, быть в долгу перед кем-л to owe smb money (a book; an apology, an explanation, etc.) How much do I owe you? He owes much of his success to his friends.

sincere *a* искренний a sincere person (remark, look, etc.); sincere interests (feelings, intentions, etc.); insincere *a* неискренний, sincerity *n* искренность

deceive *vt* обманывать, вводить в заблуждение His fine words deceived nobody, to be deceived in one's hopes (expectations, etc.)

favour *n* одолжение, услуга Will you do me a favour? **Phr**. in favour of smb/smth в защиту, в пользу кого-л/чего-л He spoke in favour of the arrangement. They were all in favour of continuing the discussion.

escape *vi/vt* спасаться, убегать, избежать (опасности, смерти и т.п.) to escape from a burning house (a sinking ship; prison, etc.); to escape danger (punishment, death, prison, etc.) to escape notice (memory, (one's) attention, etc.); escape *n* бегство It was a narrow escape. Ему Удалось избежать опасности чудом.

defeat *vt* побеждать, наносить поражение to defeat the enemy (smb's plans, etc.); to suffer a defeat потерпеть поражение

influence *n* влияние, воздействие to have much (little, no, etc.) influence on/over smb/smth; to be under smb's influence; influence *vt* оказывать влияние, влиять (на кого-л); influential *a* влиятельный an influential person, etc.

WORD COMBINATIONS

make excuses искать предлог, оправдание
play for smb's support добиваться чьей-л поддержки
give way to уступать (дорогу и т. п.); сменяться (о настроении)
on hand имеющийся в распоряжении, в наличии, налицо
give notice предупредить (официально)
make a move делать ход, действовать
get smth through довести что-л до конца
bring to smb's notice доводить до чьего-л сведения
amount to равняться, сводиться к чему-л
let smb down подводить кого-л
stand up for smb/smth выступать в защиту, в поддержку кого-л/чего-л
go back on one's word отступиться от своего слова
in view of ввиду, учитывая

EXERCISES ON THE TEXT

1. Answer the following questions.

1. What had been John Byrne's intentions on election? 2. Why did he start avoiding his duties by his constituents in his second year as M.P.? 3. What excuses did he make? 4. What did Byrne realise as he watched the committee members come in? 5. Who was first to take the floor? 6. What complaints were

there against the M.P.? 7. Why was Byrne suddenly seized with fear? 8. Why couldn't he afford to hear out all the committee members who wished to speak? 9. What did Byrne have to say in his defence? 10. Why did Byrne sound unconvincing? 11. What motion was put to vote? 12. How did the voting go? 13. What decision was finally taken by the meeting? 14. Why was it a narrow escape for Byrne? 15. What actually accounted for Byrne's indifference to the needs of his constituents? 16. What had been Byrne's real aims in getting elected to Parliament? 17. What lesson did Byrne draw from the experience?

Ex. 2. Find in the text the English for:

А) 1. за час до начала собрания; 2. войти (открыв дверь своим ключом); 3. жилищная проблема; 4. в любом случае; 5. вернуть чье-либо доверие; 6. чувствовать враждебность; 7. намеренно избегать кого-л; 8. заранее подготовленный заговор; 9. полагаться на кого-л; 10. добиваться чьей-л поддержки; 11. вскочить на ноги; 12. вопрос чрезвычайной важности; 13. предпринять маневр; 14. очко в чью-л пользу; 15. оказаться замешанным в ряде инцидентов; 16, отдать приказ; 17. отстаивать свои принципы; 18. прямота высказываний; 19. сказать в лицо; 20. говорить за спиной; 21. возомнить о себе; 22. дать кому-л твердые заверения; 23. нарушить слово; 24. знать по опыту; 25. точные цифровые данные; 26. проверить цифровые данные; 27. звучать неубедительно; 28. добиться своего.

Б) 1. выборы; 2. член парламента от лейбористской партии; 3. избиратели; 4. избирательный округ; 5. место (в парламенте); 6. палата общин; 7. повестка дня; 8. прийти к власти; 9. председатель; 10. внести предложение о вотуме недоверия; 11. подчиниться воле собрания; 12. получить слово; 13. сделать запрос в парламенте; 14. внести предложение; 15. поддержать предложение; 16. общественный деятель; 17. спять предложение; 18. голосовать; 19. подсчитывать голоса «за» и «против»; 20. воздержавшийся (при голосовании); 21. министерский портфель (пост).

Ex. 3. Give the four forms of the following verbs.

deal, win, lose, feel, shake, hold, nod, catch, rise, hide, grow, lie bring, raise, betray, sit, stop, reply, owe, stick, find, beat, withdraw, agree, swim.

Ex. 4. Study the following chart. Paraphrase the sentences given below and translate them into Russian.

whatever — все что; что бы ни какой бы ни; чтобы ни; независимо от того, что любой, какой бы ни, совершенно
- anything that
- no matter what
- any
- at all

1. **Whatever** had started the crises, lie had to depend on the old hands against the youngsters. 2. **Whatever** reasons she may give, they can only be excuses. 3. The man can be fully trusted, there is no doubt about it whatever. 4. **Whatever** doubts she had about the arrangement, she thought she'd rather keep them to herself. 5. Everybody voted in favour of the proposal, there was no objection **whatever**. 6. You'd better keep your promise whatever happens. 7. **Whatever** attitude he may take 'n this matter it won't change our plans in the least. 8. **Whatever** she wore was in good taste. 9. You may read **whatever** you find suitable for yourself. 10. He gave all his attention to **whatever** he was doing. 11. You may say **whatever** you like about her, she. doesn't care. 12. **Whatever** the difficulties, he never complained.

Ex. 5. Translate the following sentences using " whatever".

1. **Чем бы** он **ни** занимался, он всегда доводит дело до конца. 2. **Каковы бы ни** были ее сомнения, это не должно повлиять на ее решение. 3. **Что бы ни** случилось, вы можете быть уверены, что он не потеряет голову. 4. **Что бы ни** говорил лектор, все представляет большой интерес для студентов. 5. У них не было **никаких** сомнений, что опыт пройдет успешно. 6. **Все, что** стало известно о луне в свете последних открытий, имеет огромное значение для науки. 7. На переговорах надо отстаивать свою точку зрения **независимо от того, какую** позицию займет другая сторона в этом вопросе. 8. Ему придется принять их условия, **каковы бы** они **ни** были. 9. Пьеса, к сожалению, не произвела на нее **совершенно никакого** впечатления. 10. **Какова бы ни** была цель его визита, мы всегда рады видеть его.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBS

Ex. 6. Study the following phrases and a) recall the sentences in which they are used in text; b) use them when retelling the text.

interview smb **about** smth; by letter; **in** (the) future; one **by** one; give way **to** fear; on hand; be **behind** smth (*fig.*), to be unaware **of**; play **for**; jump **to** one's feet; get **on** with; get **through** (some business); bring **to** smb's notice; be involved **in**; amount **to**; **at** the election; start **on** a programme; let smb/smth **down**; confidence **in**; stand **up for**; put trust **in**; say **to** smb's face; basis **for**; take **into** one's confidence; **for** the best; go **back on** one's word; **in** view **of**; **in** favour **of**; concentrate **on**; busy **with**.

Ex. 7. Fill in the blanks with prepositions or adverbs.

A. 1. ... view ... the approaching conference the organisation committee is busy ... all kinds of arrangements. 2. He found it difficult to concentrate ... the work with so many people around. 3. Are you brave and honest enough to say

right... his face what you are saying ... his back? 4. It was much easier to deal ... the problem ... letter than face the angry customer and account ... all the things that ought to have been done but never had. 5. The actress's indifference gave way ... pleasure as soon as the man introduced himself as a reporter and said that he had come to interview her ... her latest successful film. 6. There was hardly anything to say ... support ... his plan. 7. Let him do the work alone, it will give him confidence ... himself. 8. ... first they couldn't make ... who was ... the plan. 9. How could she have let them ...! They put ah their trust ... her. 10. His betrayal was brought ... our knowledge only recently. 11. Having got lost ... a strange city once, I never leave the hotel now without a city-plan. 12. The young worker can be trusted ... the work, he won't spoil it. 13. With so much work ... hand I can hardly think ... going ... a holiday now. 14. He is sure to stand ... ... his friends ... any circumstances. 15. She did not answer the question ... once. She was evidently playing ... time. 16. I regret to say his help did not amount ... much. 17. When the old woman got ... the bus, a young man sitting next ... the door jumped ... his feet and offered her his seat. 18. The boys continued playing football unaware ... the rain. 19. If he promises something he'll never get back ... his word. 20. He was proud to have been taken ... their confidence.

B. Opening the envelope Dave pulled ... a printed form:

"The Chicago Great Midland Railroad Company no longer needs the services of Mr. David Spaas as carbuilder. Mr. Spaas will report... the office ... once and hand ... the keys."

... moment Dave could not think what to do next. Surprise gave way ... anger. He had expected many kinds ... attacks, but he had not expected this; how much easier it was ... them to deal ... his case ... letter. He searched his mind trying to remember if he had made any mistakes ... the job that could have given them an excuse, even a thin one, to fire* him. He could think ... nothing. He put the letter ... his pocket and walked over ... Halsted Street ... breakfast.

Dave sat ... the corner and waited ... Uncle Jennison who'd most likely soon be coming ... a cup of coffee. He knew Jennison could be trusted ... his case. He would stand ... him.

When Uncle Jennison came ... Dave waited while he filled his cup, then came over ... his table. Uncle Jennison stared ... him, his cup half raised ... his lips. "I've got something ... you," Dave held ... his letter.

"They sent you this?" Jennison asked.

"Does that surprise you?"

"No, boy. I expected it. I saw it coming."

"Suppose you come ... ... the office ... me now, Jennison, and tell them you're going to fight ... me, support me."

Uncle Jennison shook his head. It amounted ... a refusal. He did not want to be involved. "I can't do it. I can't do it, Davey. They should have told you."

"Told me what?"

---

* уволить

"That you're no longer a member ... this union. Now I can say nothing ... your defence or ... your favour, either."

"What are the charges they made ... me?"

"Belonging ... the Communist Party."

"Why didn't you tell me sooner? You've let me ... . And I've put all my trust ... you. I might have had a chance to defend myself." Dave's voice betrayed his excitement.

"They wouldn't have given you the chance, boy."

(after "The Great Midland" by A. Saxton)

Ex. 8. Give the English for the following phrases, using the preposition "under" in its different meanings. Use the phrases in sentences of your own.

I. а) под домом, под полом, под крышей, под мостом, под деревом, под зонтом; уволить

б) под водой, под землей;

в) книга подмышкой, песок под ногами.

II. под командой, под руководством, под управлением.

III. при (данных, таких) обстоятельствах, при обстановке (условиях).

IV. согласно договоренности, по условиям договора, по соглашению, согласно закону.

V. на рассмотрении, на обсуждении, на ремонте.

VI. под впечатлением, под подозрением, под наблюдением.

MISCELLANEOUS PHRASES

статья под заголовком; писать под псевдонимом; жить под чужим именем; родиться под счастливой звездой; несовершеннолетний; дети, моложе 16 лет; находиться под чьим-л влиянием; под покровом ночи.

EXERCISES IN LEXICOLOGY

Ex. 9. Read and translate the following. Give the meaning of the prefix "pre".

1. In the course of the pre-war five-year plans, as a result of socialist industrialization, Moscow was transformed into a great industrial centre. 2. The local museum is reported to have received an impressive collection of exhibits belonging to pre-historic times. 3. The pre-view of a film is always a very important event. 4. Their course of action seemed to be predetermined. 5. He suspected that there was a prearranged plot on hand. 6. It looks as if you had a prejudged opinion of the man.

Ex. 10. Recast the following using verbs with the suffix "-ize(ise)" instead of the words in bold type. Make other necessary changes.

1. Following the victory of the Great October Socialist Revolution industrialization of the country's economy became one of the most important tasks of the Soviet people. 2. Productivity of labour largely depends on mechanization and automation. 3. Computers seem to have made a revolution in technology. 4. What are the characteristic features of the economy of developing countries? 5. In order to sell their goods sellers will place advertisements in newspapers and magazines. 6. Realization of their plan turned out to be no easy thing under the circumstances. 7. Recognition came late in his literary career. 8. He didn't object to criticism provided it was fair.

Ex. 11. Recast the following using adjectives with the suffix "-ous" instead of the words in bold type. Make other necessary changes:

1. The **seriousness** of the situation couldn't be denied. 2. The tourists were aware that the mountain climb was full of **danger**. 3. Her trembling hands betrayed her **anxiety**. 4. A person who is filled with **ambition** always works hard. 5. His sudden disappearance from town was a mystery. 6. The rain which **continued** for days on end delayed the construction of the bridge. 7. The book "Childe Harold's Pilgrimage" (1812) brought Byron immediate **fame**.

Ex. 12. Paraphrase the following using verbs instead of the nouns in bold type.

1. You may put your **trust** in the man, he won't let you down. 2. He thought he'd better make a **move** for the door before the bus stopped. 3. Two **counts** were necessary before he was certain of the figures. 4. What are the **charges** against the man? 5. In his efforts to win he depended on his friends' **support** and **help**. 6. Don't waste time. You'd better make a **start**. 7. It was a remarkable jump. The sportsman set a new record. 8. The man had a keen **sense** of danger. 9. She greeted me with a cheerful **smile**.

Ex. 13. Translate the following sentences into Russian. Make sentences with the phrases in bold type.

1. Mechanization in agriculture went **hand in hand** with its modernization. 2. It was a **step by step** progress towards the aim he had set himself. 3. They reminded him about his promise **time after time** but he always had an excuse. 4. They were seen to walk along the street **arm in arm**. 5. The items on the agenda were taken up **one by one**. 6. Once she started on her favourite subject there was no stopping her. She would talk **on and on**. 7. **Little by little** he was coming to realize the importance of his professor's words.

Ex. 14. Give words of the same root in Russian. Compare the meaning.

pension, individual, emphatic, serious, atmosphere, crisis, lactic, nervous, start, programme, repression, imperialist, adventure, democracy, democratical,

assembly, public, figure, basis, attack, ignore, contribution, position, compromise, concentrate, initiative, ambition.

Ex. 15. Replace the words in bold type by a suitable phrasal verb from the list.

look smb up, let smb down, get on with smth, give smb away, get through with smth, stand up for smth, put off.

1. He is a good fighter the kind of man who will **defend** his principles to the last. 2. Her disappointment was obvious; it was her trembling lips that **betrayed** her. 3. Though the task was far from pleasant, there was no other way but to **start** with it. In fact, the sooner he **finished** it, the better. 4. That he should have **failed** a friend was unthinkable. 5. We hoped that our friend would **visit** us some time later in the evening. 6. The matter was all-important and could not be **postponed**.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex 16. Fill in the blanks with a suitable word in the correct form. Translate the sentences into Russian:

to avoid, aware, to betray, confidence, confident, defeat, to elect, to escape, favour, to influence, keen, to owe, selfish, sincere, sincerity, to struggle, to support, support, to trust, trust, to vote.

1. All the committee members ... in favour of the proposal. 2. There was no reason to doubt the girl's ... in wishing to help. 3. The words were out before he could check them. Now there was no way of ... embarrassment. 4. His ... at the championship was something he still had to get over. He remembered his trainer saying that it would never do to be too ... of one's success. 5. As it was, the man could produce no evidence in ... of his accusation and agreed to withdraw it. 6. If you wish for my true opinion, I'm not very ... on detective stories, they never seem to amount to much. 7. From long years of experience he had learned to … nobody's judgement in such matters but his own. 8. The young scientist ... much of his success to the professor who had always ... him whole-heartedly in whatever he did. 9. He had certainly been most ... in his intentions, but what actually came of his efforts is quite a different matter. 10. The students had met to ... someone as their representative on the committee. 11.1 made another effort but it was hopeless. It looked as if the name had ... my memory completely. 12. The doctor walked on, lost in thought, and it was several minutes before he became ... of what was happening around. 13. My friend explained that the information had been given him in ... and he just couldn't see himself betraying the ... put in him. 14. The young man's manner clearly ... his emotion. He was asking no ..., he said, he was demanding his rights. 15. ... people seldom have friends. 16. The boat was ... against a heavy wind. 17. It was useless trying to ...

the girl. Her mind was made up.

Ex. 17. Paraphrase the following, using words and word combinations from the text. Make all other necessary changes.

to escape smb's notice, a narrow escape, to be keen on smth (2), to defeat, to influence, to play for smth, to give way to, to avoid.

1. **First she laughed and then she cried**, as it often happens with people who are overexcited. 2. **He was all but killed in the accident**. 3. Her words **had no effect on me**, as I had made my choice and would stick to it whatever happened. 4. It seemed funny that in all my walks about the city **I had never noticed** the house before. 5. There was no **getting away from** the truth; it was staring him in the face. 6. The speaker was obviously **trying to win** the support of the audience. 7. The man had always been **ambitious for** success. 8. He had lost the game, but he was not **beaten** yet. There was still plenty of fight in him. 9. He was a man of broad interests, **fond of** many things and especially music.

Ex. 18. Speak on the following topics. Use the words and phrases given below.

1. John Byrne, Labour MP, Arrives In Marshfield

to get a message; to request smb's presence; to hurry down; to let oneself in; to take a look around; an election poster; to advertise smb; to intend to do smth; to interview constituents; housing problems; individual problems; to come to the conclusion that; to deal with smth by letter; no point in doing smth; to make excuses; to ignore one's duties; to wonder about the message; to make a guess; to win back one's constituents; not to afford to lose one's seat in Parliament;

2. The Committee Members Show Their Attitude

Jimmy March: the Party Secretary; to carry a pile of agendas; avoid smb obviously; to be hostile in one's attitude to smb; to show one's hostility; to make sarcastic remarks;

Charlie Drake: the chairman; anxious; nervous; to be faced with an unpleasant task; to have no reassurance to offer smb; to express the general attitude; to go with the will of the meeting; not to promise support; to wonder about the best way to handle the matter; not to be keen on smth; to find smth embarrassing;

Committee members: to smile and to nod to smb; to avoid smb intentionally; to avoid catching smb's eye; the younger members; to be behind the plot; the older members; to sense the atmosphere; to be unaware of the details;

3. Byrne Senses Danger

an experienced politician; to take in the situation at a glance; to realise smth; a prearranged plot on hand; to give way to; to fight down panic; to play for smb's support; to play the game carefully; to watch one's step; to deny everything;

4. The Heart of the Matter

Ted Collins: to take the floor; to express the general opinion of the meeting; to make a statement concerning a vital matter; to be eager to get on with smth; to be supported by the meeting; to make an accusation; to ask smb to account for' his line of action; to be involved in a series of incidents; to amount to direct betrayal of the cause; to support a program of repressions; a wicked imperialist adventure; to support a reactionary regime in suppressing a democratically elected assembly; to be expected to safeguard democracy; to betray smb; to have no confidence in smb; not to stand up for one's principles; to call smb a turncoat; to refuse to put one's trust in smb; to let smb down; to expose smb fully; to move a proposal;

Sarah Robson: to support the charges; to have more proofs; to wish to clear up the matter with smb; to ignore the needs of the constituents; serious complaints; to second the motion;

Alderman Raymond Glen: blunt speaking; to be one's motto; to say smth to a man's face; to get too big for one's boots; to owe smth to smb; to remind smb of his duties;

5. Byrne Decides It is Time to Act

to rise firmly; not to dare allow another speech against himself; to think feverishly; to look for a reasonable explanation; to talk smoothly; to account for the incident; an imaginary meeting with the Prime Minister; to invent smth on the spot; to take smb into one's confidence; to give firm promises; to realise that one is sticking his neck out too far; to think of all the possibilities; to make smb responsible for smth; to accuse smb of smth; to deceive smb; to go back on one's word; to invent further explanations; to answer the charge about ignoring the constituency; to make one's words sound emphatic, almost sincere; to address public meetings; to make one's contribution to the defeat of the Tories; to invent the figures; to learn from experience; to be effective; to be in no position to check the figures; not to sound convincing; to have a sense of defeat; to deceive no one;

6. The Matter is Put to the Vote

to be on the agenda; to move a proposal; to second the motion; to refuse to withdraw one's motion; a vote of no confidence; to vote by a show of hands; to count the votes; to vote in favour of (against); an abstention; the chairman; to

sum up the general opinion; to put smb on trial;

7. Byrne Draws His Own Conclusions

a narrow escape; to suffer shock, to be overconfident, selfish, ambi tious; to have no principles; to aim at a successful political career; to be prepared to pay any price; to betray the interests of the constituents; to ignore the needs of the constituency; to promote one's selfish aim; one's true ambition; one's step-by-step progress in Parliament; not to change; not to be influenced by smth; to take the warning; to be more careful in the future.

SPECIAL DIFFICULTIES

Ex. 19. Fill in the blanks with "avoid" or "escape" according to tin sense. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. The best way to ... influenza during a flu epidemic is to ... crowd* 2. He wondered how that particular detail could have ... his attention.

1.

3. She usually walked home from the office to ... the rush hour crowds in the underground. 4. She's a very observant person, nothing ever seems to ... her notice. 5. As usual the boy had got away with his tricks and ... punishment. 6. The title of the book ... my memory. 7. Only when the car had passed did he realise how close he had been to danger and how lucky he was in ... it. 8. Several times the Gadfly had narrowly ... being caught by the police. 9. He didn't ask any personal questions ... embarrassing his visitor. 10. For some time now he had been ... our company. 11. There could be no mistake about the hissing sound, it was gas ... from the container. 12. They say that the only way to get the best of an argument is to ... it.

Ex. 20. Translate the following sentences using the verbs "to choose" or "to elect" according to the sense.

1. Собрание единодушно выбрало тов. Иванова председателем студенческого научного общества. 2. Из всех предложенных тем он выбрал именно эту, т. к. проблема развития жизни на земле его всегда очень интересовала. 3. Не так-то легко выбрать в подарок подходящую книгу. Здесь надо учесть и вкус, и интерес, и, даже, возраст. 4. Кого выбрали делегатом на профсоюзную конференцию от вашей группы? 5. Если бы ей предложили начать сначала, она бы выбрала ту же самую профессию — профессию учителя. 6. Нашего профессора выбрали депутатом в местный совет.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Verbals (Revision)

Ex. 21. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of a verbal (gerund, participle or infinitive).

A. 1. (a) I heard the door behind me ... (b) The gates were ... only twice a day. (c) I waited for the door ... (to open). 2. (a) She didn't answer him, suddenly ...of her brother's warnings, (b) I don't like ... him of his duties, (to remind) 3. (a) The town has changed to a ... degree. (b) The first moment he was so much ... that he couldn't speak, (to surprise). 4. (a) Nobody noticed the ... look on her face. (b) I don't want you ... her by any word or action, (c) Her ... remarks were not left unnoticed. (to hurt). 5. (a) Nobody would listen to the stories ... by him so many times, (b) Michael was amusing Kate by ... her little stories about some of the guests, (to tell). 6. (a) I don't mind ... I am hungry. (b) All the students ... to the sports society were expected to take part in the competition, (c) ... his mistake he felt much easier, (to admit). 7. (a) She spoke in an ... voice, (b) She definitely looked ... (to annoy).

B. 1. I felt the weight ... from my shoulders, (to lift). 2. It was not the sort of thing ... over the telephone, (to say). 3. He watched passengers ... and ... the train, (to enter, to leave). 4. They watched the ship ... (to load). 5. He didn't give her time to answer questions ... to her. (to put). 6. I won't waste time in ... to the point, (to come). 7. He looked around the room with a ... eye. (to practise). 8. After ... a few words with the stranger she understood that he was a foreigner, (to exchange). 9. He heard the sound of the dinner table ... (to set). 10. I was not sorry ... the interview with the visitor, (to spare). 11. She didn't like ... direct questions and on such occasions she usually lied. (to ask). 12. He moved steadily ... neither left nor night, (to look). 13. His arms were beginning to feel the strain of ... two heavy bags. (to carry). 14. He took the decision without ,.. me. (to consult). 15. He showed no surprise as though he were used to ... like that. (to treat). 16. "Can you remember ... terribly happy?" (to be). 17. You have been really kind. It makes me ... ashamed for what I said to you earlier this evening, (to feel). 18. He denied ... in the matter, (to concern). 19. They were very angry at ... to leave. (to tell). 20. He was keen on ... the prize, (to win). 21. He is coming. There is no ... trouble, (to avoid). 22. He avoids ... money, (to borrow). 23. Would you mind ... me a favour? (to do).

Ex. 22. Paraphrase the following sentences so as to make them simple.

1. I suggest **that we should exchange opinions on the matter**. 2. Everybody expected **that the meeting would be cancelled on account of the chairman's illness**. 3. He looked at her for some minutes **and didn't speak**. 4. **If we put our heads together**, we might solve the problem. 5. I wouldn't say such a thing **if I weren't sure**. 6. He looked **as if he were a professor**. 7. I remember **that he confirmed the arrangement**. 8. **Before she said anything** she hesitated for just a minute **as though she were choosing her words**. 9. She took his arm and insisted **that he should dance with her**. 10. She could feel

how her heart was beating fast. 11. There was a period of silence **which was broken only by coughs**.

Ex. 23. Complete the following.

1. Closing his eyes, he ... 2. While listening to the report, the people in the hall ... 3. Having walked about two hours we ... 4. When asked, the boy ... 5. Having been in the country for only a course of weeks, we ... 6. If properly used, the machine ... 7. Taking the floor, the chairman...

Ex. 24. Translate the following sentences into English. Make use of the suggestions in brackets.

1. Он изложил свою точку зрения настолько ясно и логично, что мы не могли не поддержать его (couldn't help). 2. Нам очень хотелось бы встретиться с этим художником (to be keen on). 3. Его сильная рука схватила меня и не дала мне упасть (to save from). 4. Избегая встречи со мной, он тем самым показал, что чувствует себя виноватым (to avoid). 5. Мы с нетерпением ждали встречи с этим замечательные ученым (to look forward to). 6. Он очень хорошо улаживает такие дела (to be good at). 7. Никто не возражал против включения этого вопроса в повестку дня (to be against). 8. Собрание не могло обвинить председателя в том, что он нарушил процедуру голосования (to accuse of). 9. Они уговорили его дать два концерта в нашем городе (to talk into). 10. Его можно простить за то, что он не узнал вас (to excuse for). 11. Он не сознавал, что был болен (to be unaware).

Ex. 25. Test translation.

1. Школьный выпускной бал всегда является торжественным событием. 2. На собрании нам предстояло выбрать новый состав комитета. Никаких возражений не было, и все проголосовали за это предложение. 3. На все вопросы докладчик отвечал очень уверенно. Было очевидно, что он хорошо осведомлен по данному предмету. 4. Она сознавала всю серьезность создавшегося положения. Надо было принимать срочные меры. 5. Если бы не поддержка товарищей, ему бы не добиться таких хороших результатов. Своим успехом он во многом обязан им. 6. Она хорошо знала, что в трудную минуту всегда может рассчитывать на поддержку друзей. 7. Мне кажется, что нельзя полностью доверяться человеку, который избегает трудностей и боится ответственности. 8. Напрасно вы сомневаетесь в ее искренности. Она всегда говорит то, что думает. 9. С ним можно быть вполне откровенным. Он уже не раз доказал, что ему можно доверять. 10. Ей доверили очень ответственное задание, и можно быть уверенным, что сна с честью с ним справится. 11. Очень жаль, что такая важная деталь ускользнула от вашего внимания. 12. Как

случилось, что команда, за которую вы болеете (которую вы поддерживаете), потерпела поражение? Может быть, члены команды были слишком уверены в успехе? 13. Выступления товарищей были явно не в его пользу. Они подвергли его поведение резкой критике. 14. Она старалась говорить спокойно, чтобы ке выдавать своего волнения. 15. Он не раз подводил нас своими пустыми обещаниями. Теперь его слова уже никого не могли ввести в заблуждение. 16. Ей было обидно, что она ошиблась в своих надеждах.

PRECIS WRITING

Ex. 26. a) Read the passage, b) write 3-5 questions covering the basic points of the passage, c) give a title to the passage and write a precis.

The British State is a capitalist state. Not only is economic power firmly in the hands of the capitalist trusts, the entire constitutional and state apparatus remains firmly in their hands no matter which government rules. The British constituticnal system is one which has developed over the years as an expression of the rule of capitalism and for the protection of the capitalist social order.

Traditionally the Tory Party is the business men's party. In fact, however, the Labour Government also administered the country in the interest of big business. It functioned as the second party of capitalism in the so-called traditional British two-party system.

Despite the democratic rights won by the struggles of the people the real power in Britain is concentrated in the hands of the great trusts and banks and the tiny section of rich property owners. They control the land, industry, finance and trade. The State is their state, the judges, the higher civil servants, the diplomats, the generals and the police chiefs are drawn from their social circles. They own the newspapers, dominate the broadcasting system. Democracy under present conditions is restricted for the majority of the people by the power and the privilege of the wealthy few.

The trusts and the state apparatus become one at all imporlant and commanding points. The directors of the trusts, landowners and bankers, staff the Cabinet, Parliament* and Lords,** and sit in the key positions of the State. Men of their social class staff the state apparatus, the armed forces, the police and the judiciary. And when the top-ranking men in these positions reach retiring age they formally join the trusts as directors of highly-paid servants. Their political instrument for controlling the state is the Tory Party.

(after "The British Political System" by J. Gollan)

---

* Parliament (here) the House of Commons

** Lords = the House of Lords

SPEECH EXERCISES

Ex. 27. Answer the following questions using the active vocabulary. Sum up your answers.

1. A Meeting

1. How often are meetings held in your group? What does it depend on? 2. What kind of arrangements are made? 3. How do you let people know of the day and time of the meeting? What is done in case a meeting is postponed or cancelled? 4. What can the reason for a postponement be? 5. What are the duties of a chairman? 6. Who usually takes the minutes* at your meetings? Why is it necessary that minutes should be taken? 7. How many points (items) are there on the agenda as a rule? 8. What do you do if you want to take the floor? 9. How long are you allowed to speak in debate? 10. In what case is a vote taken? 11. What happens if there is an equal number of votes for and against a motion?

2. The General Election

1. What is the voting age set by the Constitution? 2. What are the purposes of the election campaign? 3. How often are elections to the Supreme Soviet held in our country? 4. What is a constituency? 5. How are candidates chosen to the local Soviet (the Supreme Soviet)?

3. The Day of the Election (Polling Day)

1. Why is it necessary that voters should be registered before Polling Day? 2. How long are Polling stations open on Polling Day? 3. What does the inside of a Polling station look like? 4. How does a Polling Clerk check the names of the voters? 5. What does he hand to the voters? 6. What is a ballot box for?

Ex. 28. Read the article from the "Morning Star", answer the questions, using the vocabulary of the lesson, and discuss it.

I'VE JOINED THE PARTY WTOCH FIGHTS FOR SOCIALISM

by Norman Munnery

The struggle of the miners and the Upper Clyde workers has shown that by determination and working-class solidarity, the actions of those whose only concern is personal greed**, can be effectively checked.

During the past 11 years of Labour Party membership, I have seen the disappointment of the few true Socialists who struggle to change its bourgeois ideology to one of Marxism Leninism. Their efforts, I am sure, could be better spent organising within the Communist Party.

---

* протокол

** личное обогащение

For this past year as a member of the Labour group on the Brighton Council I have been constantly struggling against the reactionary elements controlling that group.

Time and again I have had to vote for motions that betray hopes of the working class by their revisionism, while Marxist ideology has been suppressed.

From out of this personal struggle has come an increasing awareness of the role of the Communist Party, not only in the constituencies and in the factories, but also within the student movement of which I am part.

Having recognised this, I have been able to join those comrades who have dedicated themselves* to the Socialist struggle as opposed to a political career which has nothing to do with the true needs of the working class.

I shall continue to represent my electors as a member of Brighton Council and in doing so hope that I can influence the ideology of the Labour group.

The working-class movement is growing in strength, with victories behind us we are confident of greater victories ahead.

(Abridged)

Questions

1. How long has the author been a member of the Labour Party? 2. What conclusion did he come to as a result of his experience as member of the Labour Party? 3. What conviction does the author express in the opening paragraph of his statement? 4. What facts does the author give to prove his point? 5. What has the successful strike action of the miners and Upper Clyde workers shown? 6. What did he come to realise concerning the role of the Communist Party? 7. Why did he decide to give his support to the Communist Party? 8. How does he see his duty as member of the Brighton City Council? 9. What gives him confidence in the Communist Party?

Ex. 29. Read, the following. Answer the questions. Retell the passage in English.

БРИТАНСКАЯ ДЕМОКРАТИЯ В ДЕЙСТВИИ

Каким образом в Англии, где преобладает рабочее население-на выборах может побеждать партия консерваторов, партия крупно, го капитала? Почему рабочий сплошь и рядом голосует за классового противника, капиталиста?

Посещение предвыборных собраний в Англии в какой-то мере дает ответ на этот вопрос.

... Дело было в Далвиче, одном из пригородов Лондона. В здании местной школы выступали трое кандидатов в члены парламента: консерватор, лейборист и либерал.

Собрание походило на вечер вопросов и ответов: кандидатам, си-

* посвятить себя

девшим рядом с председательствующим на небольшой эстраде, задавали из публики вопросы: на каждый из них все трое отвечали по очереди. Благодаря такой процедуре, особенно наглядно проявилось поразительное сходство между избирательными лозунгами соперничающих партий.

Одним из первых задали вопрос о путях обеспечения мира. Каждый из трех кандидатов ответил, что его партия ставит интересы мира превыше всего. Консерватор уверял: его партия больше других озабочена тем, чтобы на переговорах четырех держав была достигнута полнейшая договоренность. Призывая собравшихся голосовать за тори, он воскликнул: «От этого зависит мир во всем мире!» Но два других парламентских кандидата клялись в своей приверженности к миру почти в тех же самых выражениях.

Такое же единодушие кандидаты обнаружили и в области внутренней политики. Из публики спросили о пенсиях старикам. Оказалось, что каждый из кандидатов безусловно стоит за увеличение пенсий и будет считать это чуть ли не главной своей задачей. Задали вопрос о местном транспорте, который оставляет желать много лучшего, все трое обещали добиваться улучшения автобусного сообщения в Далвиче.

Иными словами, стоило закрыть глаза, и вы уже не могли сказать, кто сейчас отвечает на вопрос: консерватор, лейборист или либерал.

Неудивительно, что рядовому англичанину -ірудно разобраться, что к чему, тем более, что обещания обычно остаются обещаниями.

Questions

1. What meeting did the author attend in Dulwich? 2. Who had been invited to speak at the meeting? 3. What did the author come to understand while listening to the questions and answers? 4. What could be said of the election programs of the rival parties? 5. Why was it next to impossible to tell the difference between the election platforms of the candidates? 6. How was the first question concerning the ways of safeguarding peace answered by each of the candidates? 7. What assurances did the Tory candidate give? 8. What did the Labour and Liberal candidates swear to? 9. What accounted for the exceptional unanimity of the three candidates on internal matters? 10. What did they promise concerning old-age pensions? 11. What other problems were raised at the meeting? 12. What conclusions did the author come to?

Ex. 30. Retell the following in English.

ДЕПУТАТЫ СЛУЖАТ НАРОДУ

Борьба за построение коммунизма неотделима от всестороннего развития социалистической демократии, укрепления Советского государства, от дальнейшего совершенствования всей системы политической

организации общества.

Политическую основу нашего социалистического государства составляют Советы депутатов трудящихся. Как отмечал В. И. Ленин, Советы являются непосредственной организацией самих трудящихся, обеспечивающей самое широкое их участие в управлении государством.

Советы представляют наш славный рабочий класс, колхозное крестьянство, трудовую интеллигенцию, все нации и народности СССР. Советы отражают социальную структуру советского общества, его нерушимое единство, монолитную сплоченность, дружбу и братство народов СССР.

Положение депутата в нашем обществе определяется прежде всего тем, что он уполномочен народом участвовать в осуществлении Советами государственной власти, выражать его волю и интересы. Незыблемой основой всей деятельности Советов и их депутатов является политика Коммунистической партии, борьба за ее неуклонное осуществление.

Важнейшая особенность Советов как органов народного представительства состоит в том, что они органически сочетают в себе черты государственных и общественных организаций. Это предопределяет и характер деятельности депутатов, которые осуществляют свои полномочия безвозмездно, не порывая с производственной или служебной деятельностью.

to be inseparable from; to ensure smb's participation in running the state; on the broadest possible scale; to represent smb; to reflect; indissoluble unity; monolithic solidarity; fraternity; to be authorized; continued struggle for the implementation of; to combine; to get no remuneration for the performance of one's duties; to carry on with one's ordinary job.

Ex. 31. Read and discuss the following. Speak on the reaction of the people to the Labour Government's decision to ban the May Day demonstration.

MAY DAY 1951

after Jack Lindsay

Thousands of people from the Square* were moving on down Whitehall**. At once the police began pouring from the side streets where their vans were drawn up by dozens. Detachment after detachment came pushing out and hurrying up as the people moved on. Mounted police galloped up and drove their horses again and again into the mass, riding right on to the packed pavements. Once Jane found herself pressed so hard against some traffic rails

* Square: Trafalgar Square, so called to commemmorate the victory of the British won under Admiral Nelson against the French and Spanish on Oct. 21st, 1805 in the battle of Trafalgar Cape. The most prominent feature of the Square is the Nelson column set up in 1840. It is a place where people usually gather for political meetings and rallies.

** Whitehall: a street lined with Government offices, leading from Trafalgar Square into Parliament Street.

that she grew afraid of being badly hurt, then a little later down the road she was thrown painfully against a door-knob. Some glass gave way and a woman cried out. The police on foot or on horse, were driving the people back from the roadway. There were cries of "Peace not war, scholarships not battleships!"

As they reached about two hundred yards down Whitehall, scores of police rushed out of Scotland Yard* and tried to stop the advance. The people pressed on sweeping the police aside. Jane had a startling sense that she and the others were the defeated people of a land occupied by an enemy whose alien soldiers wore the blue police uniforms. It would have surprised her to hear the policemen speak English.

Several buses turned in from the Strand.** "Make 'em*** chariots of peace!" a lad shouted, and many of the demonstrators ran and piled into them. Police came running after and tried to drag the invaders off. Jane saw two men lying in the roadway with police leaning over them, but the successful bus-stormers waved and shouted inside, and others ran to join them. One bus, jammed in the road with mounted police ahead, pulled up. Several more demonstrators ran from the pavement and climbed in, with police dashing in the rear and clutching coat-tails. The conductor ran down the bus stairs and stood in the way of the police who tried to board.

"This isn't a Black Maria!****" he shouted. "Out you go!" Three policemen seized him and pulled him out. He fell against the side of the bus, and when he came up, his face was cut and bruised. His cup had been knocked off, and Jane saw that he was an elderly man, nearly bald. The driver now got down out of his cabin to protest, another group of police ran at him and ordered him to return to his cabin and drive on. He produced his trade union badge and waved it to the people on the pavement, who cheered back. The police told him that unless he climbed straight into his seat he'd be arrested. He put his badge back, wiped his nose, adjusted his coat, and very slowly began getting up into the cabin.

All the while the people, repeatedly attacked by the mounted police, were coming nearer and nearer to 10 Downing Street.***** The Prime Minister's house was thickly cordoned off by more detachments of police...

"It just strikes me," someone said in strong cockney****** tones, "that Mister Ratly Attlee* is a bit afraid of the British people."

Now there was a pause. Some of the leaders who had spoken in the Square

---

* Scotland Yard: a street near Trafalgar Square. The Metropiltan Police headquarters, the New Scotland Yard is in Victoria Street.

** the Strand: an important street between Fleet Street and Trafalgar Square.

*** 'em *(sl.)*: them

**** Black Maria: a car, formerly painted black, used to take arrested persons to and from prison.

***** Downing Street takes its name from George Downing whose name was linked with a series of betrayals. He had served in Cromwell's army. He built a street of houses, naming the street Downing Street. Two of the houses 50 years later became No. 10.

****** cockney: characteristic of the speech, manner, behaviour, etc. of lower-class Londoners.

* Attlee, Clement Richard, the then leader of the Labour Party and Prime Minister. "Ratly Attlee": a rhyming nickname showing the contemptuous attitude of the speaker.

conferred with police officers, insisting on their right to hand in a letter protesting against the ban.

Jane tried to edge away towards the Abbey[**] and after a while the crowd thinned. She walked faster. A running man bumped into her from behind, dodged round the other side of two men who were standing in conversation, and disappeared. A pair of policemen took hold of one of the talkers and dragged him out into the roadway. Jane watched in hesitation, then she stepped out after the group. The man was loudly protesting while one of the policemen told him to shut up or he'd make things worse for himself. His arms were twisted up behind his back and he was being pushed with lowered head towards a van. Jane followed. "Please there," she called in a weak voice, unheard. Then she forced herself to hurry; she came up and caught one of the policemen's sleeves.

He shook her hand off and turned fiercely. "What do you want?"

"That wasn't the man," she said in sinking tones. With an effort she raised her voice. "That wasn't the man you chased."

"You keep out of this," said the policeman, "or you'll be taken along too."

"You've got the wrong man," she repeated more boldly, angry as well as afraid. The second policeman made signs to some others ahead. She felt that if she turned and ran, she'd be arrested at once. So, more out of fear than courage, she went on to a group of policemen, among whom she had caught sight of an inspector. "I want to protest", she said breathlessly. "Those men of yours there arrested the wrong man."

"How do you know?" he asked coldly.

"I saw them. I saw the man they wanted get away."

"I suggest that it is just as likely that you have made the mistake. What are you doing here?"

She grew confused. "I'm doing nothing. I just happened to see..."

He was about to reply, but another high-ranking official came up and drew him off. She was about to follow, but a sudden conviction of helplessness seized her and she wanted only to escape. Not till she was going down into Westminster tube did she realise that if her socialist friend Jill had been in her place she'd have demanded to have her name taken as a witness.

Ex. 32. Use the following words and phrases in situations.

I. The Election Meeting

a) to hold a meeting, in connection with, the coming elections, to attend, to nominate candidates for election to the district Soviet, the chairman, to open the meeting, to announce the agenda, to emphasise that ..., to promote the democratic principles of the Soviet electoral system, a country of true (genuine) democracy, to have the right to elect and be elected, to take part in governing the state;

[**] Abbey: Westminster Abbey

b) to take the floor, to propose smb candidate to the district Soviet, to speak highly of smb, to be worthy of smb's trust, to be authoritative, to justify the confidence placed in smb, to work unselfishly;

c) to put to vote, to vote in favour of smb, to adopt a resolution, to declare the meeting closed.

2. At a Students' Meeting

to arrange the meeting, vital problems, to elect smb chairman, to open the meeting, to announce the agenda, to contain a number of points (items), to move to adopt the proposed agenda, to raise no objections, to give smb the floor, to speak on the first point, to fix the time limit, to allow 15 minutes, to have other motions, to put the matter to vote, to count the votes, to be in favour, to move that ..., to pass over to the next item, to second the motion, to cover all the items on the agenda, to elect a committee, to work out a resolution, to adopt the resolution, to close the meeting.

Ex. 33. Tell the story of the picture.

<table>
<tr><td>
</td><td rowspan="2"> </td><td>to puzzle over smth; the true meaning of the initials; a demand for higher pay; to think smth to be unfair; to come out of the taxpayer's pocket.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Actually, it's short for More Pay!</td></tr>
</table>

Ex. 34. Subjects for oral and written composition.

1. Tell the story from the point of view of a) John Byrne; b) one of the younger committee members; c) one of the older committee members; d) the chairman of the committee; e) one of the constituents.
2. Give a character-sketch of John Byrne.
3. Say why in defending himself John Byrne decided to play for the support of the older committee members.
4. Speak on the attempt made to expose John Byrne and his selfish aims and give your opinion as to why it all came to nothing.
5. Describe some of the methods John Byrne may have used during the election

campaign to deceive the electors into voting for him.

6. Elections in the Soviet Union.
7. The rights and duties of Soviet MPs.
8. Soviet MPs truly serve their people.

Index to the Vocabulary Sections

(Numerals Refer to Lesson Numbers)

accident 2
account 7
accuse 8
acquit 8
act 5
admit 7
after all 4
against 6
aim 7
all the rest of it 7
all but 8
amount (to) 10
annoy 4
anxiety 8
appoint 7
apologize 3
as it is 4
assure 9
attend 1
attitude 7
at a loss 2
authority 9
avoid 10
aware 10
be at smth 8
beforehand 8
belong 2
beside oneself (with) 1
besides 3
betray 10
beyond 7
borrow 4
bother 7
break down 2
bring to smb's notice 10
burn 1
cancel 9
can't help doing 1
care 2
case 5
cause 9
certain 1
charge 6, 8
charming 4
check 7
check in/out 9
circumstance 8
clear one's throat 1
close 2
come round(to) 7
comfort 6
commit 8
complain 5
concern 9
conclude 7
confident 10
confirm 9
connect 3
constant 7
convince 7
cure 5
dare 7
deal 1
deceive 10
deck 3
defeat 10
defend 8
delay 7
deliver 2
demand 5
deny 7
depart 6
depend 8
detail 3
develop 5
direct 5
dismiss 8
doubt 2
draw smb's attention 7
drop 2
due 7
elect 10
embarrass 9
employ 1
equal 4
exchange 9
exhibit 3
explode 9
escape 10
establish 7
evidence 8
experience 7
expose 7
fail 2
fair 7
fall in (out of) love 6
favour 10
fear 4
feature 8
final 3
fit 1
fit smb into some place 4
fix 7
flat 6
fcr a while 1
for the sake of 1
fortunate 9
fresh 3
fresh from 7
fuss 4
get away with 7
get down to smth 3
get hold of 3
get in touch (with) 3
get over smth 6
get rid of 1
get smth through 10
give notice 10
give up 3
give way (to) 10
go back on one's word 10
good will 4
go wrong 2

guess 7
guilt 8
had better 4
handle 7
have a word with smb 7
hesitate 5
hire 5
hit a blow 5
impress 3
include 4
indifference 1
in high (lew) spirits 2
in no time 1
in view of 10
influence 10
innocent 8
inquire 5
in spite of 6
in the name of 2
in the shade б
insist 5
intelligent 4
intend 5
introduce 3
innocent 8
inquire 5
in spite of 6
in the name of 2
in the shade 6
insist 5
intelligent 4
intend 5
introduce 3
judge 5
keen 10
keep from doing smth 3
lack 8
lean 9
let smb down 10
lift 9
load 9
loose 1
lost in thought 5
made to measure 1
make a good doctor, etc. 6
make a move 10
make both ends meet 1
make excuses 10
make out 8
make sure 7
manage 1
mild 1
mood 7
nasty 3
nearly 1
now and then 3
obey 2
object 9
observe 7
occasion 6
occur 4
offer 3
on board a ship 2
on foot 2
on hand 10
on top of all 1
one by one 4
opinion 7
opposite 5
ordinary 4
ought 4
owe 10
pain 5
particular 1
patience 3
permit 7
pick up 1
pile 4
play for smb's support 10
point 2
possible 3
postpone 3
power 7
practice 5
presence of mind 5
pretend 7
produce 9
prove one's point 7
pull up 2
punish 8
purpose 5
put off 3
put smb off 4
put smth right 2
put up at a hotel 9
put up with smb/smth 7
puzzle 3
realize 3
register 9
remarkable 10
repair 2
request 5
respect 5
responsible 7
risk 1
room 4
rough 5
run 2
rush 1
satisfy 1
save 1
selfish 10
sense 4
separate 6
serve 1
set off 5
set up 5
settle down 4
shake 1
sharp 1
shortly before 1
sight 5
sign 3
sign 5
since 4
sincere 10
single 3
sink 2
slight 8
so far 7
so far as 7
slow down 2
solve 3
spare 7
spread 5
stand up for smb/smth 10
stick 2
stiff 9

strict 8
struggle 10
success 5
suffer 5
suggest 3
suit 9
support 10
suspect 4
swear 8
talk art (business, etc.) 3
talk smb into (out of) doing smth 3
take oneself in hand 7
take pictures (of) 3
take up 3
taste 1
tear 1
tear oneself away 2
tell 7
temper 4
terms 5
the other day 1
throw light (on) 5
treat 4
treat 5
trial 8
trust 10
try on 1
turn 3
turn up 4
upside down 5
use 1
vote 10
waste 2
wet through 1
wish 2
withdraw 9
within 3
witness 8
worry 2
worth 3
would rather 1

Reference Vocabulary

abstention *n* — воздержавшийся *(при голосовании)*
actual *a* — фактический, действительный
affirmative *a* утвердительный
agenda n повестка дня
aid *n* помощь
alcove *n* альков, ниша
along with *prep* вместе с
ambitious *a* честолюбивый
amount *n* количество
assume *v* напускать на себя *(вид, важность и т. п.)*
back and forth *adv* назад и вперед
badge *n* значок
bar *n* брусок, кусок металла
bargain *v* торговаться
bedclothes *n*. постельное белье
belted *a* опоясанный
beneath *prep* под, ниже
blunder *n* грубая ошибка
blunt *a* прямой, откровенный
bonnet *n* капот *(автомобиля}*
bottom *n* дно
bowler *n* котелок *(мужская шляпа)*
briskly *adv* оживленно, живо
brutal *a* животный
bucket *n* ведро
brute *n* животное *(груб.)*
bulge *v* выпучиваться *(о глазах)*
cage *n* клетка
casually *adv* небрежно, между прочим
cavity *n* отверстие; полость
channel *n* канал
(the) chemist's *n* аптека
clutch *v* схватить
coffin *n* контейнер, хранилище
column *n* столбец *(газетный)*
compromise *n* компромисс
consistent *a* последовательный
contain *v* содержать, включать
constituency *n* избиратели *(в совокупности)*; избирательный округ
constituent *n* избиратель *(проживающий в определенном избирательном округе)*
contribution *n* вклад
corpse *n* труп
crush *v* (с)мять
current *n зд.* эл. ток
dazed *a* удивленный, пораженный
deaf *a* глухой
debt *n* долг
design *v* конструировать; моделировать
develop *v* проявлять *(пленку)*
disease *n* болезнь
doorway *n* вход в помещение; дверной проем
drag *v* тянуть, тащить
draught *n* сквозняк
drown *v* утонуть, топить(ся)
enormous *a* огромный
exaggerate *v* преувеличивать
examination *n* осмотр *(врачебный)*
executive *a* исполнительный; административный

exist *v* существовать
extremely *adv* чрезвычайно
fairly *adv* довольно; сносно
feather *n* перо *(птицы)*
fingernail *n* ноготь
fission *n* расщепление, распад
fist *n* кулак
film *n* пленка *(фотографическая)*
film-holder *n* кассета
forearm *n* предплечье
frequent *a* частый, часто повторяющийся или встречающийся
gate *n* калитка, ворота
gountlet *n* рукавица *(шофера)*, краги
gaze *n* взгляд
gearbox *n* коробка скоростей
genuine *a* подлинный, настоящий
glance *v* взглянуть
grand *a разг.* восхитительный, великолепный
grape *n* виноград
grasp *v зд.* понять
grin *v* ухмыляться
groan *n* тяжелый вздох, стон
growl *v* рычать; ворчать
hail *v* окликать, звать
hermit *n* отшельник
hold-up *n* остановка, задержка *(в движении)*
hole *n* дыра
honeymoon *n* медовый месяц
hostility *n* враждебность
image *n* образ
impartial *a* объективный, беспристрастный
innocent *a* наивный, невинный
involve *v* затрагивать
jovially *adv* весело; радушно
kid *(coll.) n* ребенок
lapel *n* отворот, лацкан *(пиджака)*
lead *n* свинец
level *n* уровень
lightning *n* молния
liven *v* оживить(ся), развеселить(ся)
lobby *n* прихожая, вестибюль
lounge *n* кают-кампания
lump *n* ком, крупный кусок
malice *n* злоба
malignant tumour злокачественная опухоль
meanwhile *adv* тем временем
menace *n* угроза; опасность
mentally *adv* мысленно, умственно
merry *a* веселый
message *n* поручение, миссия
minor *a* незначительный; второстепенный
miracle *n* чудо
motto *n* девиз, лозунг
mud *n* грязь
mumble *v* бормотать
mystery *n* тайна, *зд.* детектив
news-stand *n* газетный киоск
nod *n* кивок
oar *n* весло
obvious *a* очевидный
officer *n* должностное лицо
oil-burner *n* керосинка, керогаз
old-timer *n* старожил
onwards *adv* вперед, впереди
pad *n* блокнот
pigskin *n* свиная кожа
physician *n* врач, доктор
pile *n* атомный реактор
plot *n* заговор; интрига
polish *v* натирать, полировать
pop out of one's head вылезать из орбит *(о глазах)*
porter *n* носильщик
pose *v* поставить *(вопрос)*
post *n* столб
potential *a* потенциальный, возможный
piecede *v* предшествовать
prescription *n (мед.)* рецепт
pretty *adv зд.* изрядно
principal *n* начальник
produce *v* делать, изготовлять; производить
promotion *n* продвижение, выдвижение
probably *adv* вероятно
protective *a* защитный
puff *n* дымок, клуб дыма
quay *n* мол, причал
recover *v* выздоравливать
relax *v* отдыхать, расслабляться
remain *v* оставаться
remove *v* стирать; устранять, удалять
remote *a* отдаленный; дистанционный
reply *n* ответ
rescue *v* спасать
reveal *v* открывать, показывать

ridiculous *a* нелепый, смехотворный
rock *n* скала
roof *n* крыша
roll up *v* скатывать, закатывать *(рукава и т. п.)*
row *v* грести *(на лодке)*
rub *v* потирать
safeguard *v* охранять, гарантировать
second-hand *a* подержанный; поношенный
seize *v* хватать, схватывать
shriek *n* пронзительный крик, визг
sidewalk *n* тротуар
sigh *v* вздыхать
silly *a* глупый
slug *n* брусок, кусок металла, *зд.* стержень
smart *a* нарядный, модный
smash *v* разбить
smoothly *adv* гладко
so-called *a* так называемый
solid *a* крепкий, прочный
squeal *n* пронзительный крик
stain *n* пятно
stammer *v* заикаться
state-room *n* каюта первого класса
stealthily *adv* украдкой
stout *a* полный, тучный
strip *v* раздевать(ся)
striped *a* полосатый
suppress *v* подавлять *(восстание и т.п.)*
substance *n* вещество
surface *n* поверхность
sweat *n* пот
swing *n* взмах
tailor *n* портной
thigh *n* бедро
tight *a* узкий, тесный *(об одежде)*
track *n* ж.д. колея, рельсовый путь
trick *n* хитрость, обман
truck *n* багажная тележка
turncoat *n* ренегат, перебежчик
troops *n pl* войска
tweed *n* твид
twin *n* близнец
valise *n* саквояж, чемодан
vital *a* существенный, *(жизненно)*важный
wave *v* махать *(рукой)*
whip *n* кнут
whisper *v* шептаться
whistle *v* свистеть
wholesome *a* здоровый, полезный
wreck *n* крушение *(поезда, парохода)*
wicked *a* злой, нехороший, *зд.* подлый
window-blind *n* занавеска
windscreen *n* переднее стекло *(автомашины)*
wings *n pl* кулисы
wipe *v* вытирать
worsted *a* шерстяной
wretched *a* неприятный, ужасны